TRAVELS INTO MUSCOVY, PERSIA,
And PART of the EAST-INDIES.
CONTAINING,
An Accurate Description of whatever is most remarkable in those Countries.
AND EMBELLISHED

With above 320 Copper Plates, representing the finest Prospects, and most considerable Cities in those Parts; the different Habits of the People; the singular and extraordinary Birds, Fishes, and Plants which are there to be found: As likewise the Antiquities of those Countries, and particularly the noble Ruins of the famous Palace of Persepolis, called Chehelminar by the Persians. The whole being delineated on the Spot, from the respective Objects.

To which is added,

An Account of the Journey of Mr. Isbrants, Ambassador from Muscovy, through Russia and Tartary, to China; together with Remarks on the Travels of Sir John Chardin, and Mr. Kempfer, and a Letter written to the Author on that Subject.

In Two VOLUMES.

By M. CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.
Translated from the Original FRENCH.

VOL. I.

LONDON:
M. DCXXXVII.
Orbis Iannae clarissimi et insignissimi Canepi
Hortus Apollinis non longo aris hucusque
Dextrae hac illa est quem qua sua saccula narrant
Ingenio melius poetae et vulgo suo est
Ioseph. Beschiensis.
I have no intention to pre-engage the Reader's Approbation of these Travels, by a studied Preface; and think it sufficient to declare, that nothing will be found here, but what I have seen with my own Eyes, and have examined with the utmost Attention and Care; without introducing any Particulars that have been published by other Travellers, on the same Subject, unless it be to point out their Errors, by those Remarks which are inserted at the close of this Work, with relation to the celebrated Ruins of the ancient Palace of Persepolis. I, however, have been careful not to derogate in the least from the personal Merit and Judgment of those illustrious Travellers in every other respect; but it will be evident that they have omitted many remarkable things, and misrepresented others, either through Negligence, or for want of Skill in designing; or, lastly, because they did not continue long enough upon the Spot, to consider those stately Antiquities in a sufficient manner.

I must observe, with respect to Russia, that the Baron Herbertstein, together with Olearius, and the Earl of Carlisle, Ambassador from England at the Court of Muscovy, as likewise Allion, and several others, have published very entertaining Accounts of that Country, they yet have not afforded the curious all the Satisfaction they require; because the Authors were not permitted to draw the least Sketch of the Places and fine Antiquities which are to be found in those Parts. I am the first Stranger who ever obtained that Privilege from his Czarian Majesty; and I flatter my self that I have spared no Pains to improve that Favour to the best Advantage. This will be evident from the Plans I have drawn of the principal Cities of that Empire, as likewise of its Buildings, and the finest Prospects in its Provinces; so all which I have added the Habits, Manners, and Customs of the various People who live under the Government of that potent Monarch. I have likewise related the great Changes and Improvements which have been made by that Prince, together with a number of other Particulars that never came to the Knowledge of those who have written before me.
The Author's Preface.

I might say much the fame of Persia, and the august Ruins of the ancient Palace of Persepolis, of which several Travellers have published Descriptions, without a due Examination of what they saw. For which reason their Accounts have more the Air of a Romance, than of any Reality, or complete Knowledge of those fine Antiquities, which is not to be obtained without Pains and a peculiar Application of Thought; and when these are wanting an Author must inevitably fall into Errors, and lead others into the same. Pietro della Valle, and Don Garcia de Silva de Figueroa, Ambassador from Spain at the Court of Abbas I. King of Persia, are the first who have treated of these famous Ruins with any Solidity. And yet it evidently appears, by the Relation the former has given of his Travels, and by the Account which the latter has published of his Embassy, that neither of them continued long enough at Chelminar, to examine and trace out all the Antiquities and Curiosities of that Place, with the Circumstances that was requisite, and therefore we need not be surprized, if they express themselves in a superficial manner, and sometimes at random, on that Subject. It appears, however, by the Remarks of the learned Isac von Flissen on Pomponius Mela, that be intended to make use of the Relation published by Don Garcia de Silva, and likewise of the Writings of the Ancients, in order to discover what conformity may be found, between the ancient Palace of Persepolis, and the Ruins of Chelminar, from their Descriptions of both; but he died before he could execute that Design.

I shall not enlarge on the Errors committed by these Authors, lest I should be taxed with an Inclination to recommend my self at their Expense, and to set off this Account of my Travels, by decrying those of others. Persons of Judgment and Taste will know what to determine concerning us, by comparing our several Performances, and therefore I shall only add, that the Authors from whom I differ, were not long enough upon the Spot, to be capable of making a just and accurate Description of those numerous and majestic Ruins; and they, perhaps, might want those Lights and Abilities, which alone can enable Persons to form a true Judgment of such things as these.

As my only View, when I entered upon these Travels, was to be as sedulous as possible in my Survey of those noble Antiquities, all the Difficulties that opposed themselves in my way, together with the Dangers to which one must needs be obnoxious
The Author's Preface.

on such occasions, did but animate me the more. I may like-
wife declare, that I have been altogether industrious to afford the
Public, and especially Persons of Taste, as much Satisfaction as is
consistent with my small Abilities. To which I may add, that I
have made it an indispensible Law to my self, not to deviate
in any respect from the Truth, merely to give an ornamental
Air to this Work, in which there are no Facts but what are
related with the strictest Veracity. Nor do I assume any Merit
to my self, from the extraordinary Expences I have been at to
embellish this Edition of my Travels, and facilitate the Com-
prehension of the Particulars they contain. The Reader may
judge of my proceeding, by the Number and Beauty of the
Plates distributed through the whole Work, and which are
executed with all possible Justice and Accuracy. I can affirm
too, that I have drawn with my own Hand, and immediately
from the Life, all the Plates now presented to the Public, with-
out having recourse to any ancient Authors who have described
Persepolis and its Antiquities, and without adding or diminishing
any one Particular. The Reader therefore may rest assured,
that the whole is conformable to those Originals which are still
to be found on the Spot.

I, however, am not so vain as to think my self infallible,
and therefore had the Precaution to communicate my Work
to such Persons as had a competent Judgment in whatever
relates to Antiquity. My Plates and Descriptions were fa-
voured with their Approbation, and they were pleased to think
that I had placed in their full and proper Light, those Ob-
jects which had been hidden in Obscurity for the Space of two
thousand Years. The same Persons, whose Modesty will not
permit me to name them, have also been so good as to compare,
at my request, the Plates exhibited in this Work, with those
Descriptions of the ancient Palace of Persepolis, that are to
be found in the Writings of Herodotus, Xenophon, Diodorus
Siculus, and Strabo; and they have declared them to be conform-
able to the Relations of those celebrated Writers. This
Circumstance afforded them so much Satisfaction, that they
have given themselves the trouble to enrich my Work with sever-
al Remarks on those superb Ruins.

It, however, is well known, that when an Author presents
a Book to the Public, he exposes himself to the Censure of such
as take pleasure in depreciating whatever is above their Capa-
city. I therefore thought my best method of imposing Silence
on Persons of that turn, would be to strengthen my Situation,
The AUTHOR's PREFACE.

by several Fragments of Stone, on which a variety of Figures and Characters are impressed; and particularly by one side of a Window, represented in Plate 137, and which is now to be seen in the Cabinet of Curiosities belonging to his serene Highness Anthony Ulrick, Duke of Brunswick-Lunenburg; and likewise by the Figure exhibited in Plate 142, which Figure is now in the Possession of Mr. Witfen, Burgomaster of Amsterdam. I have the others in my own House.

I have added to this Work, for the Satisfaction of the Public, a Series of the Kings of Persia, who have governed that Empire, from the Destruction of Persepolis, to the present time; together with the Origin of those Princes and the Order of their Succession.

I have been the less particular in the Affairs and Description of the Indies, because they are well known, and have been treated of by several before me. If, however, have related all that passed there in my time, together with those Particulars of which I was an Eye Witness; and this I have done with the same Sincerity and Exactness I observed, with respect to the other Countries through which I passed.

Upon the whole, I am not so vain and partial to my own Capacity, as to flatter myself that I shall please every Reader; but shall think myself sufficiently happy if I obtain the Approbation of competent Judges; and I shall not fail to improve any Opportunity they will afford me of rectifying any Errors that as yet may happen to have escaped my notice.

THE
THE

TRAVELS

OF

CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

By the way of Muscovy and Persia into the East-Indies, and to the coast of Malabar, the island of Ceylon, Batavia, Bantam, and other places.

CHAP. I.

The Author's resolution. His departure from the Hague, and arrival at Archangel.

I THINK I cannot better begin the account of these travels, than by returning thanks to God, who by his divine favor and protection has enabled me to go through them, as well as the former, in which I spent nineteen years with all the satisfaction imaginable.

Upon my return to the Hague, I felt myself animated with a desire of paying a second visit to distant countries, that I might maturely consider the people and their manners; and to undertake a second voyage to the East-Indies, by the way of Muscovy and Persia. This design was very displeasing to my friends and relations; who remonstrated to me the consequences and inconveniences of such a project; but the violence of my inclination, added to the success of my former enterprise, prevailed over all considerations whatever.
whatever. I reflected within my self, that I was much more advanced in years, and indeed with greater experience than I had been before, and concluded I should be now better qualified to make observations and remarks; and the care I had taken, upon my return, to consult with men of learning and curiosity, persuaded me I might possibly make discoveries of greater importance than I had been able to make in my former travels. Elated with these hopes, I carefully visited and examined several collections of rarities, and learned how to keep all sorts of birds, beasts and fishes in spirits, and to prepare them so as to bring them home without decaying. I resolved also to paint after life many productions of the sea, as well as flowers, plants, fruits and the like. But all this was by no means preparatory to the main design; my chief purpose was to search into the antiquities of the countries in my way, and thereto to add such reflections as might occur; to survey the religions, manners, customs, policies, government and dress, and whatever might be remarkable in practice at the births, marriages, and burials of the various nations who possess those distant countries: In a word, to examine into the soil and cities of the fame, with all the accuracy I could, that I might be able to make a faithful report concerning all these things upon my return home.

1701.

I departed from the Hague, the eighth of July 1701, in order for Amsterdam, where I flt till the thirtieth, and at four in the afternoon, the next day, I reached the Texel, by the ordinary conveyance. I was there informed, that the Oudenard, a man of war, commanded by Captain Roemer Flak, who was to convoy the Ruffia fleet, had weighed from thence at nine that morning, with five or six merchants' men bound for Archangel. The ship I was to go in, not being yet arrived, I went to meet her, and got on board of her upon the first of August, at 1701, ten in the morning. She was a fine flyboat, called the John Baptif, had eight guns, and eighteen men, and was commanded by Gerard Bais of Sardam. We tripped it with a west south west wind to get into the Texel, where we dropped anchor before it was noon. We weighed from thence, upon the second, at nine in the morning, and by one in the afternoon we were out at sea; our pilot now left us, and I gave him some letters for my friends. We steered away north west and by north, till it was night, when we hauled more to the northward, and altered our course for north north west; and made nine or ten sail, some bound to Holland, and others to the eastward. At midnight a calm fell upon us, and continued till the morning of the third of this month. About noon a small breeze sprang up at west south west. Upon the fourth, at break of day, the wind freshened, and we steered away north and by west; the weather was very variable, and we saw several ships shipping different courses. Upon the fifth, the wind was at north, and north and by west, and we met with several ships, some of which were fishermen from Greenland, who acquainted us with what luck they had had that season. The same occurrence fell out the next day. Upon the eighth, the wind came about to the west, and it being very fine weather, we made a display of all our canvases. But the wind shifting about to the south, and south east, we stood away to the north eastward, and towards night had got up with the nearest islands of Norway, without knowing any thing of the matter, the weather was so thick and rainy. Upon the ninth, we were in 61 degrees of northern latitude, and the weather still continued thick. Wandering about thus in this sea, we saw a fort of large fish commonly called billem, with a sharp pointed head. We afterwards saw of other forts called potiskopen; these had large heads and swam about the ship,
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

1701. Ship, ten times as big as a porpoise, as large as our boats, and proportionably broader than long, and no where to be found but in the northern seas: After several changes of the wind and weather, the sea being sometimes smooth and sometimes rough, it cleared up. Upon the sixteenth, about seven in the morning we made land, being the rocks or mountains that lie nearest on the northern coast, and in our maps, called Liefert; they are indifferently high and separate from each other, as may be seen in the plate No 1.

When we had borrowed pretty near upon these hills, I drew the rest of the island, with the other points that stretch out, where I took notice of other smaller rocks which seemed to be joined to this same island, which was about two or three leagues distant from us. You may see it in No 2. We then proceeded quietly enough, with some ships we had fallen in with by chance, and from time to time we saw fishes of half the length of our ship, thick in proportion, and with prodigious heads. There are some of them said to be something like a shad, as we were told by persons who had seen them dead. We there also saw a kind of birds not very different from our ducks, or divers, but they are smaller with a sharp bill, black above, and white beneath. This night and the next day being the seventeenth, we had a thick fog and rain. About eight a clock we fell in with a ship, who left Hamburgh upon the thirtieth of July, and was bound to Archangel. The fog still continued and prevented us from seeing the land which was not far from us; but the heavens clearing up, we had sight of it. As we proceeded, we came into the latitude of 72 degrees 36 minutes north near the land of Loppe, and a high rocky mountain to the south east of us. There we found a French ship, whose Master came aboard of us. As he could speak nothing but French, and there was no body in the ship that understood him but myself, I was his interpre-

ter. He told us, he had been five months from Bayonne, that he had been a Greenland voyage, and that he was upon his return home; that he had taken nine whales, and the last of them not above 4 or 5 leagues from the place where we were; and that he hoped to meet with more upon that coast; asking us whether or no we had seen any. Our Master having been very strange civil to him, he added, that one of the whales he had taken had teeth five inches long; that he had afforded thirty two calves of blubber, and that he had filled seven and a half with the fat he took from behind his neck. He assured us, it was not the first time he had met with the like; that they refined this fat in Bayonne, to send it into foreign parts; that it was of wonderful efficacy to clear the complexion of women, and give them a certain bloom of youth; that it was a most excellent remedy in many cases, and that there was a great deal of money got by it. He would also have persuaded us, the Basques were the first that undertook a voyage to Greenland. We met with several other ships in this place, and held on our course in the evening, with the weather very uncertain. Upon the twentieth, about eight in the morning, we reached within 6 or 7 leagues of the Isle of Loppe, which bore the south east of us; but we saw it not, Loppe, the weather was too thick and gloomy. Upon the twenty fourth, the fog was so thick, that we could hardly see from one end of the ship to the other. Upon the twenty fifth, we were in the latitude of 72 degrees 24 minutes; in the evening it fell calm, and in the night we had a very great fog, during which one of our seamen took a great falcon, which had settled upon our ship; but it was taken, and would never eat. The fog and the rain still continuing, we did not make land till the twenty eighth. When we had got to the northward of Lamentis, the weather grew fair, and we had a favourable wind at south south west, which gave
The Travels of

1701. gave us great pleasures at this time, and particularly as we could have made no use of it, if the fog had continued, for fear of the land. The land we had to steerboard of us was the Russian Lapland, commonly called the firm land or continent of Lapland. It contains a ridge of hills of no very great height, and nearly equal; they are not far from the shore, of a rufflet colour and the foil is naught. In many parts of these hills you may see patches of snow, which gathers in hollows where it never melts. A calm taking us upon the twenty ninth, we dropped an anchor that we might not drive. But a breeze at east springing up a little while afterwards, we shaped our course south easterly, and came in with the land, having several fail of ships in sight. Upon the thirtieth, we entered the White Sea, whose waters are clearer than thole of the Ocean, which as you stand in for the coast of Russia, are of a foul muddy green because of the rivers which fall thereunto. Having passed the hilly coast we came to another more upon the level, partly covered with copie wood, and about a league off. About eight of the clock we came up with the Isle of Crofis, which is very rocky, and not far from the main land. This isle is full of crofis, which you discover as you steer in with it. When we had got clear of this coast, we made the land of Russia, steer ing away south west and by south, to the eastward of us leaving Cape Gris, which shoots out a great way into the sea. Towards the evening, we saw seventeen ships at anchor upon the coast, and about eleven we added to the number, together with two English ships, and came to an anchor in three fathom water, before the river of Archangel, about 10 leagues from the town. Upon the thirty first, in the morning, we found we were 21 ships in all; 11 Dutch, 8 English, and 2 Hamburgers, the ships which failed from the Texel before we did, being of the number. The weather being perfectly favourable, we only waited for pilots to go into the river; but they were so long ere they came, that one of the Hamburgers resolved to pilot himself; which he soon repeated, for he ran bump ashore upon the larboard side of the river. We were not at all surprized at this, being told the Moscovites had taken up all the sea-marks, for fear of the Swedes, who had appeared at the mouth of the river some weeks before, and alarmed all the neighbourhood. The English also grew quite uneasy at this delay, and towards morning weighed with six ships; but two of them running likewise aground, the other four gave over the attempt. But their pilots coming to them, in the afternoon, they went up the river, followed by a small vessel of our country, who happily escaping all danger, came to an anchor before certain meadows, by the favor of fine weather. The land there is full of small trees, and stretches out on both sides towards the river, forming a crestment, as appears by No 3. Upon the second of 2 Sept. September, we had all of us pilots, excepting one English ship, and about eleven of the clock, we got under fail, steer ing away to the eastward. We went over several flats where we had not above 15 or 16 foot water, and dropped anchor about three of the clock near the meadows, about 6 leagues from Archangel, the hay being then in heaps upon the ground. The English, and the rest came to in this place as well as we, none being allowed to lie nearer the town, whither every Captain must repair in person. I therefore embarked with some others about five of the clock, designing to take the shortest way among the islands; but it happened that we soon lost ourselves. We began to despair of success in our attempt, when meeting with a small vessel, under the care of a Moscovite, we begged of him to take charge of us as a guide, night coming on, and the weather thick and gloomy; for we had, as I believe, steered the compass
Rivière d'Archange.

Tentes des Samoïdes.
compass three times round, though we had no less than four Captains in the vessel with us. At length we discovered the beacon of one of the islands, near to which we found a Russian bark at anchor. It was now midnight and rained hard, so that we resolved to stay here till day-light, it being too dark to see our way to the shore; besides, there was not water sufficient for us so to go; if there had, we should have landed, and made a fire in the woods. At day-break we proceeded on our way, and about six of the clock reached the New Dwinko, about three leagues from the city. Here we stopp, it not being permitted to advance any farther, without leave of the commanding Officer of the place. There are but few houses at this place, where they were raising some forts, for fear of surprize from an enemy. Here also they were getting ready three branders, and a chain of ninety fathom, thick as a man's arm, to obstruct the Swedes, who had been every day dreaded, since their last expedition. I had time to make a draught of the place, whose houses are at some distance from the river as appears by the plate. The commanding Officer appearing at last, entertained us with a glass of brandy, and gave us leave to go on. We departed immediately, and upon the 9th arrived at Archangel, about nine in the morning. I went to lodge with a countryman of mine, called Adolphus Bovabuifen, who informed me the Swedes had appeared in these parts, a little while before, with three men of war, one fly-boat, two galliots, and a snow, intending to destroy the village of Mostega, ten leagues off. That they had certainly gained their end, if a Moscovite, called Karpetien, who served them as pilot, had not diverted them, by representing, it would frustrate their designs upon Archangel. Upon this they came, with English colours, before the mouth of the river, where they entered with their galliots and the snow, having first seized another Moscovite to serve them as an interpreter. Upon the 15th of June they got the length of the New Dwinko, about seven in the evening; but were vastly surprized upon being received with some discharges of cannon, the thing they least expected. This obliged them...
The travels of

1701. The ship that continued at the mouth of the river for want of a pilot, would now have come out, but had the misfortune to run aground in the attempt. The next day it blew a great gale, and there was no going near to save any of the goods, and the gale increasing, she opened so suddenly, that, in less than half an hour, she had 7 foot water in the hold. It was as much as her hands could do to save themselves with their cloths, by the help of certain ropes, and a small vessel; but they could get out none of the cargo, which chiefly consisted of tobacco. She was one of the finest ships that had ever been seen in these parts. She carried 400 loads, and was bored for 40 guns, though they mounted but 18, and had but 30 men on board. She sunk so much in a short time, that the sea washed over her. Her name was the Resolution, and she was commanded by Captain Brains. The Hamburg, mentioned before, and who ran aground upon the last of August, must it is likely have undergone the same fate, if they had not taken the opportunity of fair weather, to get out her lading, and set her afloat again; for the place where she struck, was still more dangerous than where the Englishman was lost. To conclude, having escaped these dangers, we got happily into our port, by the favor of the tide.

CHAP. II.

A description of the Samoëds. Their manners, their habitations, and way of living.

Upon the eleventh of this month, I went up the river with my friend, to go to a country house he had, about 2 or 3 leagues from the city. In our way, we landed at a wood, where we saw some of the people called Samoëds, which in the Russian tongue, signifies, man-eaters, or people that devour one another. They are almost all wild, and stretch along the sea coast quite to Siberia. Those, we now saw, were
1701. to the number of 7 or 8 men, and as many women, and were divided into five different tents; and had by them 6 or 7 dogs tied to as many flakes, who made a furious noise at us as we drew towards them. We found them, both men and women, employed in making of cars, and bowls to throw water out of boats, as also little chains, and things of this kind, which they fell in the city and among the ships. They have leave to take what wood they want, for these ufs, out of the forests. They are short of stature, and particularly the women, who have very small feet. They are of a fawbaw complexion, disagreeable to look at, having almost all of them long eyes, and bloated cheeks. They have their language peculiar to themselves, though they also understand the Raffian, and are all clad alike in skins of the reindeer. They have an upper garment which hangs from the neck down to the knees, with the hair outermost, and of different colours for the women, who by way of ornament, add slips of red and blue cloth. Their hair, which is very black, hangs about their ears like that of the savages, and from time to time, they cut it by tufts at once. The women indeed do up a part of theirs, to which they hang small round pieces of copper, by a fillet of red cloth, to give them something of an air. They wear also a fur cap, white within, and black without. Some of them have their hair dishevelled like the men, and then it is difficult to distinguish them from the men, who very seldom have any beard, except a little upon the upper lip, which may, perhaps, proceed from their strange kind of diet. They wear also a kind of waistcoat and breeches of the same skin, with boots almost all white, in which the women differ from the men in nothing but lifts or slips of black upon theirs. The thread they use is made of the fines of beasts. Instead of handkerchiefs or towels, they use very fine raiseings or saw-duft of birch, which they are never without, to wipe them when they sweat, or at meals, by way of a little cleanliness. Their tents are made of the bark of trees, sewed together in long slips, which hang down to the ground, and keep out the weather. They are, however, open at top, to let out the smoke, and therefore black there, though they are every where else yellow or reddish, being kept up by poles, whose tops appear above the rest of the tent. The way into these their habitations is about 4 foot high, and covered with a great patch of the same bark, which they must lift up to go in and out, and the fire burns in the middle of them. They feed upon the carcasses of oxen, sheep, horses and other carrion they find on the high roads, or that may be given them; or upon the guts and garbage of the same which they boil and eat without either bread or salt. While I was with them, I observed a great kettle upon the fire, full of these dainties, which none of them thought it worth the while to skim, tho' the pot never wanted it more. The tent also was full of raw horse-fleth, a horrid sight! Having taken thorough notice of all these things, I drew the design you see, No 4. While I was about it, they gathered round me, and looked upon me with an air of some understanding, and as if they liked the thing. In one of these tents, I saw a child, about eight weeks old, lying in a cradle, or trough rather of yellow wood, not very unlike the lid of a box. This cradle had a half hoop at the head, and was hung by two ropes upon a pole. It was covered over with a grey cloth, tent fashion, but open at top, and at the side, to take the child out and put it in. The child was wrapped up in cloths of the same colour, and bound about the breast with ropes or cords, as also about the middle and the feet, but its head was bare, as well as a part of the neck. As handsome as these people are in themselves, this child was agreeable enough, and even pretty white. Not having time enough to make an end
1701. of my work, and some of the women and children being abroad in the woods, I thought it best to leave it undone, till I should return; so that we proceeded on our way, and in a little time afterwards came to my friend's country house.

While we were here, they brought us several sorts of turnips, of various colours, and surprizing beauty. Some of them were of purple, like our plums; grey, and white, and yellowish, traced with a red like our vermillion, or finest lake, and more pleasant to the sight than the carnation. I painted some of them in water-colours upon paper, and sent some of them to Holland, in a box of dry sand, to a friend, who was a lover of such rarities. These I had painted, I brought with me to Archangel, where they could not believe they were copied from nature, till I produced some of the originals themselves; a certain sign they have there no curiosity in things of this kind. You have a representation of them in number 5.

Upon the thirteenth I returned to the Samoeds, and drew the inside of one of their tents, which I opened on both sides for that purpose. I had a friend with me, and three women by me, one of which I got to hold the cradle as I would have her, in the presence of her husband, as you may see in number 6.

These tents are commonly full of skins of the rein-deer, which they use to fit upon, and to sleep upon. And this, together with their manner of dressing their victuals, which for the most part is nothing but carriion, causes an intolerable stench. My friend, who sat by me, while I drew the child and the cradle, was so violently affected by it, that he bled at the nose, and was obliged to go out, tho' we had taken care to prepare ourselves with brandy and tobacco. Nor can it be at all surprizing, for these people even in themselves smell very ill, which I attribute partly to their food and to their natiness.

I got, as soon as I could, out of so filthy a place, and directed them to 1701, to come to me to Archangel, with one of their handsomest women, and to let her be as fine as they could in their way, that I might draw her picture. They promised me they would, and were as good as their word. I painted her as you see her in No. 7. They are drest in skins of the rein-deer, adorn'd with streaks of white, grey, and black. This woman was drest'd out as a bride, and was very neat from head to foot, according to their fashion. She kept her eyes continually fixed upon mine, and seemed so pleas'd with what I was doing, that another woman, who came with her, grew jealous at it, and was angry I would not likewise paint her picture: but the first had given me too much trouble for that, besides, I intended to paint her husband. His winter drest was what I thought most proper for me to draw, and I therefore desired him to appear in that. His upper garment was one piece of skin, to which the cap he wore on his head was joined. He put it on and off like a shirt, so that nothing appeared of him but the face, his gloves being also of a piece with the rest of his habit: and indeed, he had looked more like a bear than a man, had it not been for the sight of his face. His boots were fastened below the knee: but this drest was so hot, as well as the stove of my room, that he was obliged to pull it off several times, and to go out and refresh himself with a little air.

He is represented, No. 8, with a gut in his hand, to shew what they feed upon. You see several others by him, and the head of a horse fed. This is, because he had had that day given him a horse that was dying, which he sent home to the woods, with inexplicable joy; he then killed him, fed him, and sent me his head to paint. But he was not very willing to favor me with this present; for these heads are in as high esteem with them, as a calf's head is with us. This horse was about thirty years old, and yet he
1701. was pretty fat; and the man talked of him with as much pleasure, as we do of an ox in our parts. I at the same time painted one of his rein-deer, and at his feet I placed his bow and arrows, with the points out of the quiver, as the custom is with them. They wear it upon their back, tied to them with a buckle and a strap or thong, which comes over the left shoulder. On one side of him you see what the rein-deer feed upon, which is a white moss; we shall have occasion to speak of it hereafter. The head of the deer, in particular, I drew bigger than the rest, the better to shew all the parts and features of it.

As I lodged in a ground room, I made the Samoed come in to me with his fledge, drawn by his rein-deer, and painted him in that view, to shew how those creatures are harnessed.
These fedges are commonly 8 foot long, and 3 foot 4 inches broad, and rise up before after the manner of our skates. The driver sits cross-legged, and before him is a small board rounded at top, and another tho' a little higher, behind him. In his hand he holds a long rod, with a knob at the end of it, wherewith to quicken the pace of the deer. At the end of the fedge are two round pieces which turn like a twivel, over which the harness is passed, from thence between the legs of the creature, and from thence to the neck, where it is fastened to a collar. The rein, which he holds in his right hand, is tied to a strap which goes about the head of the deer. But as I was desirous to examine still farther into the nature of this harness, and to make some farther observation upon the motion of these creatures, I got this Samoed to prepare two fedges with two rein-deer to each, and we went upon the ice and crossed the river several times. I even got out of the fedge to take an exacter notice of things, and to make a sketch of what was before me; upon which I perceived my Samoed had not rightly fitted the fedge he drove into my room. You may see it represented in No. 9.

Upon the river I observed that the horsetf fled from the sight of the rein-deer, and the Samoeds, whether harnessed to fedges or not. The same may be observed in the city, and it may sufficiently evince the fear these creatures have of this people. The rein-deer run with a swiftness surpassing that of horses, regardless of the road, whether it be beaten or not; they go with an equal pace wherever they are directed by the driver, hurrying along with their nose in the air, and their horns on their back. They never sweat, but when they are tired, they loll out their tongue on one side, and when they are much heated, they pant like dogs. They have three sorts of darts, to take them with. The first have but one point like common darts, the second have two, and the third are very sharp before, and something like a wedge, and may be seen in the quiver in the plate. They call them Streli; the Russians call them Sterla; a bow they call a Loach. When they go out to hunt the squirrel, they use another kind of darts, blunt at the end, like a pear which they form of wood, or bone, or horn, to kill them without hurting the skin or the fur which would lower the price of them. They hunt the rein-deer in the winter-season, and for that purpose provide themselves with a kind of wooden skates, about 8 foot long, and half a foot broad, which they fasten to the foot before and behind with a strap. Thus fixed they will ski across the snow and mount the hills at an incredible rate. These skates are lined at bottom with the skin of the rein-deer, to prevent them from sliding backwards, and to help them to stop as they go up the hills. In their hands they have a long staff, with a small kind of shovel at the end, with which they throw snow at them to drive them towards the place where they have prepared their toiles for them, when they are too far off to hit them with their darts. At the other end of this same staff they have a small ring about four inches diameter, with cords crossing each other, chequer fashion, with which they rope themselves from time to time, the point of the staff which goes through this ring and a little beyond it, making its way into the snow, where the ring stops it. When they have driven their prey into the nooks, where they are taken as it were in nets, they run and dispatch such as cannot free themselves. They then dispel of the skins either by the way of sale, or reserve them for their own use, as has been said, and feed upon the flesh. Nor do they reap less advantage by those they breed up tame, selling a part of them, and keeping the rest to draw their fedges in the winter. When a wild male has coupled with a tame female, they kill the fawn, which in three or four days time would infallibly take
his hands. Sometimes unable to bear with the anguish of his wounds, irritated by the saltiness of the water, he jumps out again upon the ice, and is there slain. His flesh serves for food, and his skin cloths the hunter, who sells his oil. It also sometimes happens that the seal being wounded and hurrying into the water, the man, unable to get rid of the line about his middle, is drawn in after him, and there comes to a miserable end. They have much the same fright as for taking of the rein-deer, creeping along in the skin of that animal, in the midst of such of them as are tame, till they are near enough to dart them; but they must be mindful to keep to leeward of them; for this creature being indued with a very nice sense of smell, would in an instant discover them; and thus they attain their end, and get good prizes for themselves into the bargain.

I was told all this by the Samoëd woman who came with her husband when I drew her picture. She was the prettiest and most agreeable of all I had seen of them; and I endeavored to be fair with her, to get whatever else I might desire to know, out of her: and towards which, nothing proved so effectual, as a flock of brandy I had, which the women in this country fuddle with as freely as the men, and till they can stand no longer. This is what happened to the woman we are now speaking of, and she was so wonderfully pleasing to her husband, as that he had to have split his sides with laughing at it. After she had got upon her feet again, she began to cry most bitterly, it just then coming into her head that she was childless, tho’ she had brought four into the world. This was interpreted to me by the mistress of the house; reflections of this kind will sometimes arise in the mind when the person is in liquor. Talking with her, one day, upon the subject of children, she informed me of their manner of disposing of them after death, in which there is something very remarkable.
markable. When a child at the breast, where they keep it for a year, happens to die without having tasted of meat, they wrap it up in a cloth and hang it to a tree in the woods. As their manners and customs are widely different from what of the kind is to be found in other nations, I made it my business to inquire as much after them as possible. As soon as a child is born, they give it the name of the first creature that comes into their tent, whether man or beast; or of the first they meet with in going abroad; nay, it is no uncommon thing with them, to impose on it the name of whatever they happen to see first after the birth, whether river, tree, or outh Elle. Children that die after they are a year-old, are put into the earth between planks or boards. When they have a mind to marry, they look out for a woman they like, and bargain for her with her nearest relations, just as we buy a horse or an ox. They give for a wife two or three or four rein-deer, which are commonly reckoned at 15 or 20 Florins a-piece; a sum equivalent to which is sometimes paid, according as the agreement happens to be. Thus they take as many wives as they can maintain, tho’ there are among them who are contented with one. When a wife no longer pleases them, they have nothing to do but to send her back again to her friends or relations that sold her, and they are obliged to take her again, the husband standing to the loss of the purchase he gave for her. I have been told there are other Samoéd that inhabit along the sea coast and in Siberia, who marry in the same manner, and sell their wives when they no longer like them. When their father dies or their mother, they keep their bones and never bury them; and I have been informed by eye-witnesses, that they even drown them when they are very far advanced in years, and of no further use. In short, when a man is dead, they dress him just as when he was alive, put him into a pit, and cover him over with earth; and then, upon a tree, they hang up his bow, his quiver, his ax, his hatchet, his kettle, and whatever else was in use with him while he lived. In the same manner they bury their women.

Having thus informed myself as to their customs and manners, I wanted to know what might be their belief, and their religion. To this purpose, I went with my friends to a Samoéd, whom I regaled with some brandy, to put him into a good humour, for without that they are very mute, and care not to speak. At that instant I called to mind, that in scripture it is said, The beaten without the knowledge of the law, did nevertheless by the light of nature fulfill the law; and thence I concluded this people might possibly have some knowledge in this respect. Having asked him some questions upon this subject, he told me, he believed in a heaven and a God, whom they called Hayba or Deity; that they were perfunctory in their religion, there was nothing greater or more mighty than God; that every thing depended on him; that Adam, the common father of all mankind, was created by God, or proceeded from him, but that his descendants neither went to heaven or to hell. That all who did well would be seated in a place above hell, and enjoy the happiness of paradise, and feel no pain. They nevertheless worship their idols, adore the sun and moon, and other planets, and even certain beasts and birds, just as the whim takes them, or just as they expect to get any good by them. They have a sort of a piece of iron before their idols, to which they hang a number of sticks of the thickness of a knife-handle, the length of a finger, and sharp at one end, whereby they intend to represent the head of a man, and by little holes to express the eyes, the nose, and the mouth. These small sticks are wrapped in skin of the rein-deer, and thereto they hang the tooth of a bear, or wolf, or some such thing.
1701. They have among them a person whom they call Siaman, or Koedisnyck, which signifies a priest, or a magician, and they believe this man can foretell the good and evil that is to happen to them; whether or no they shall be lucky in the chase; whether persons sick shall recover again, and much more of the kind. When they want him to tell them any thing, they fend for him, and putting a rope about his neck, they pull it so hard that he falls down for dead. At the end of some time he begins to move, and comes by degrees to himself again. When he is going to foretell any thing, the blood starts out of his cheeks, and flops when he has done; when he begins again, it runs afresh; and this I was assured by persons who had oftentimes been eye-witnesses of it. Under their garments these magicians wear plates of iron, and rings of the same, which make a frightful noise when they come in: But those who live in these parts have no such thing; they only wear a net of cat-gut or ought else, to which they fasten the teeth of all sorts of creatures. When one of these Koedisnyckes happens to die, they raise him a monument of timber, close on all sides, to keep out the wild beasts. Then they lay him out thereon, dressed in his best array, and place his bow, his quiver, and his hatchet by him. To this monument they tie a rein-deer or two, if the deceased had been possessed of any in his life-time; and there they leave them to starve, if they cannot get loose and make their escape. All this, which I had from people who live in those parts, was confirmed to me by a Russian merchant, called Michael Offalyk, whom I invited for that purpose, knowing he had crossed Siberia, both winter and summer, in his way to China, and that he had travelled that way for fourteen years together. He was a man about sixty years old, found of mind and body, and told me these Samoeds spread along on all sides to the great rivers of Siberia, such as the Oby, the Jenisia, the Lena, and the Amur, which fall into the great ocean. The last of them is a limit to divide the dominions of Muscovy from those of China, and therefore these people never cross it. Between the rivers of Lena and Amur are the Tatars, who are Tartaars, and the Lamootees, who feed upon re-in-deer like the Samoeds; they are to the number of 30,000, or thereabouts, bold and warlike. Towards the sea-coast there is another nation they call Jacegories or Joggere. These Others are in all respects like the Samoeds, and dress after the same manner, and live in tents. Like dogs they devour the guts and garbage of all sorts of creatures quite raw; and all these people speak different languages. There is also a fourth kind of them called Karakies, from the country they inhabit, and who live after the manner of the Samoeds. To these also may be added a fifth, called Sugeties, who slit their cheeks, and put in bones of the narwhale to help the fear which they esteem an ornament. Among these, the men wash themselves with the urine of the women, and the women with that of the men. They pass for very wicked wretches, and are reported to be deep in magic: And indeed they boast of it, and always carry about with them the bones of their Fathers for such uses. But what is still more extraordinary, they worship the Devil, and prostitute their wives and daughters to the strangers that happen to be among them; a civility they deem to be absolutely due to strangers. How wide is the difference between the manners of these nations and those of the Europeans! The Russian who informed me of all these things, told me farther, that after a five or six weeks journey, beyond where these people inhabit, he met with a sixth sort towards the sea-coast, and that they were called Lavatik Sugeties, or Coachant Sugeties, from their lying or sitting in their tents during all the winter season. They are made of the skin of the narwhale, and are covered with snow
1701. for five months in the year. They provide quantities of the whale, which they dry, and never go out till spring. They say, that some years ago, the Samoeds of these parts had a trick of wounding the cattle of the Moscovites between the small ribs, or in the ear, with a very fine iron, upon which the poor creatures languished for a time and then died, to the great joy of these people who had them to eat. But being discovered, many of them were seized, who were hung up, some by the legs, and others by the middle, as an example to the rest. Notwithstanding the terror this must have given them, they began again last winter, and some of them were locked up for it; but they made their escape, leaving behind them only a little child, which the Governor of the province took care of, and had it baptized into the Russian church.

While I lay here, I was also informed, that about seven years ago they had discovered an island to the left of China, and that it had been brought under the Czar’s subjection, tho’ it required at least a year to travel between that and Moscow. That it abounded with fables and other furs; that it was not as yet known but it might also afford other commodities of value, and that the inhabitants were just like those we have been talking of.

Upon the eighteenth of September, we had a violent storm which blew off the roofs of several houses. I was then at dinner with the Sieur Houtman, little dreaming of what was to come to pass; but going out of the house, there fell several timbers and planks close by me, and made me hurry into the house again. As those in the house had been sensible of nothing of the kind, they were surprized at what I told them, and somebody going up to the garret, found most of the roof demolished, and we returned our thanks to God for my preservation.

Upon the twenty-fifth, about noon, there arrived 500 dragoons from Moscow, in four barks. It was upon a Sunday, and every body ran to the water side; and as every one had his best cloaths on, it was a sight agreeable enough.

Our last ships departed on the Departure fourteenth of October for Holland, and got happily to sea, except the White for Holm. Eagle, who ran ashore by the meadows. They were obliged to take out half her loading to get her afloat again; and even that would not have saved her, if the weather had been less fair than it was. Upon the nineteenth she got out to sea with the rest.

---

C H A P. III.

A Description of Archangel. Abundance of Provisions. Revenue of the Customs, &c.

1701. About a mile and a half to the westward of Archangel, the Czar has a fine and pleasant yard, by itself, for building of ships. All shipping that go and come pass by it. There were several at anchor, waiting for others to make up a fleet homeward bound, when I drew the prospect in No. 10. This dock-yard is distinguished by the letter A. At a point of land in the river, you may observe a ship with her decks unlaid. The village hard by, at the letter B, is called Strambel.

The city of Archangel is in the north-western parts of Moscovy, and lies to the north-eastward of the Dwina, which falls into the sea about six leagues lower. It lies along the banks of the river, and may be upwards
wards of two miles long, and about three quarters of a mile in breadth. The chief building is the palace, which is of free-stone, and divided into three parts. The foreign merchants have their goods and some apartments in the first, which is to the left as you come up from the river: And here also are lodged the merchants that come annually from Mofcow, and stay till the last ships return home. Strangers that come annually, are accommodated here, and in like manner; but soon after the ships are gone, which is generally in October, they remove to other places till they go back to Mofcow, in the months of November and December, when the ways are proper for a pledge to move upon the snow; and the ice so strong that the rivers may be crossed.

As you go into the palace, you go under a great gate, which admits you into a square court, where are the warehouse to the right and to the left. Above, there is a long gallery, to which you may go up by two flaring-cases, and from whence you go to the lodgings of the merchants we mentioned just now. The second part of this palace has a gate like the first, and there you have another building: At the end of which is the town-house, with several apartments in it. You go up some steps, and then you come into a long gallery, from whence on the left-hand you go into the place where they keep their courts; above which there is a door that goes into the street. The sentences are all executed in this palace, except in cases of condemnation to death, which are exhibited in the places appointed by the sentence. The things belonging to his Czar's Majesty are kept in this palace, in magazines of wood and stone, erected for the purpose, though they are sometimes used by the merchants. When you have passed the third gate, you see another body of building, for what belongs to the Russians, and where also the merchants of that nation have their abode; but they are not so commodiously provided for as the merchants that are foreigners. The space or square before this palace is pretty large, and goes down quite to the river. When ships come here in summer, they raise two great timber bridges, that jet out into the river, for the convenience of loading and unloading. The bridges they have for corn are pretty large.

The citadel, where the governor takes up his residence, is full of shops, where the Russians, who come at the time of the fair, expose their merchandise. It is surrounded with a wall of wood, which stretches down to the river.

All the houses of this city are of wood, or to speak plainer, are built of vast pieces of timber jointed together, and look odd enough from without; and yet in some of the principal houses you may meet with fine apartments, and particularly among the foreign merchants. The walls of them are even and smooth within, and wainscoted with boards; the timbers being only, or chiefly, for support. There is commonly a stove to each room, which they light from without; most of them are very large, and so contrived as to be ornamental. The Merchants from beyond sea, for so they call the Christian strangers that live among them, are as nice in their houses as the nicest among ourselves; their apartments are full of pictures, and finely furnished.

The streets are covered with broken timbers, and so dangerous to crofs that a man continually runs the hazard of falling and doing himself a mischief; besides, that they are full of the rubbish of houses, which, in many places, looks like the ruins of a fire: but the snow that falls in winter covers and makes all smooth and even.

There are two churches in this city, the one for the Calvinists, and the other for the Lutherans, where they preach twice every Sunday. They are not far from each other, by the river-side. The minster lives on one side of the church, and the church-
yard, where they bury after our manner, is between both. They have no service in the churches during winter, it is so cold; but they meet in a room of the minister's house which is well heated for the purpose.

I took a view of this city on the river from on board one of our ships at anchor: you have it in No. 11, where every particular is distinguish-ed by a numeral figure, or at least what is to be seen; as (1) Oesinge Bogordisfe, or the church of the repose of the Virgin Mary. (2) The Lutheran Church. (3) The church of the Calvinists. (4) The palace of Germany. (5) The court of justice and arsenal of the great Duke. (6) The Russian palace. (7) The house of the Goofi or great customer, upon the river. (8) The great church. (9) The citadel. The Governor had formerly an absolute power over this city, but the form of its government was changed last year, and four Burgomasters were appointed; the first of which lives in the city, the second at Kalmegra, and the two others in the neighbouring places: so that the authority of the governor is confined to the militia, the Burgomasters being at the head of the civil affairs, and the police. Every year, about the time the merchants arrive, there comes a great customer, or master of the customs, to watch over the duties belonging to his Czarian Majesty, and to buy what the court has occasion for. This great officer has four attendants or deputies who act in his absence, and are intitled Goffierni-Satnu, or Sub-Delegates; from among which he himself is chosen. Besides these, there are others taken from among the people, a number not limited, who are employed in the towns and villages. These people are obliged to serve, for a year, without pay or reward, and to obey all orders from the chiefs of the customs and their deputies; with regard had to the duties and revenues arising to the great Duke. They are sent every where, and, in case of need, have soldiers allowed them to prevent frauds and seize smugglers. When they have served their year out, others are sent in their stead.

All the necessaries of life abound in this city: plenty of fowl very cheap; a partridge is not worth above two pence. There are two sorts of them, the first of which light upon trees, and look like owls, but are perfectly good: the others are white in winter, an extraordinary thing, and, in the language of the country, are called Kereptie. There are also here two sorts of Teters, birds as big as our turkeys, and of a fine feather: the cocks are commonly black, with a mixture of a very deep blue; the hens are smaller, and speckled with grey. Hares are to the full as plenty, and fell but for a great a-piece; they are white in winter, and the rabbits are black. Woodcocks are there worth two pence or three-pence a-piece. You have here also plenty of ducks, and, among the rest, a sort called Gagares, who are very swift of flight, and mount vaftly aloft. While they are on the wing, they make a noise not very unlike the human voice. They swim with as much rapidity as they fly, but they cannot run, because their feet come out from behind.

The rivers abound with fish; you may here have as many perch as you would serve twenty people for twenty pence. The best are the Karopty; they are the smallest, but of such a flavour, as, I believe, is unknown in our country; and therefore I preserved some of them in spirits. In shape they are very nearly like a roach, brown, with bright and shining scales. The pike is also very common here, as well as a delicious kind of small eels. Plenty also here is of smelts, gudgeons, roach, whites, flounders, and a brown fish, they call Garius, of a most exquisite taste, and nearly the size of a mackerel or small cod. All these fish are taken about twelve miles from the city, in a certain gulf or bay, formed by the river, and where the water is still. It were needless to talk of the salmon, which every body knows is from hence sent, salted and

River.
and smoked, to all parts. There
is also a white sort of them, the
Muscovites call Mezma, and are taken
upon the coasts of Lapland, which
are dried before they are sent abroad.
I saw one not very unlike a ray,
and about two foot over behind,
which they call Parviskot: they find
two mice in him, called Mishi,
and a medicinal oil.

Meat. 
Meat also abounds in the market;
you there buy the best beef in the
world for a penny a pound; a lamb,
of about six weeks for fifteen-pence;
a calf of the same age for thirty
or forty-pence, according to the sea-
son. Every body here breeds tur-
kies. You may have four or five
fowls, or a goose, for seven or eight-
pence. Their beer is very good, but
must be neither sold nor brewed
without a grant from the great Duke,
which is allowed for a certain yearly
sum: but an inhabitant may brew
as much as he wants for his family
upon paying the value of fifty pence
for a certain number of quarters of
malt. There are even those who
are free from this excise.

Wine and
brandy.
Wine and brandy are brought bi-
ther by sea from France; but the
latter is very dear because of the heavy
duty upon it. However they ex-
tract a kind of malt spirit, which is
very good, and sold reasonably e-
nough. Strangers drink no other.

Revenue
of the customs.
The Czar has, every year, a con-
 siderable revenue levied upon this
city. It was formerly said the du-
ties amounted to 300,000 rubles;
but upon an exact inquiry I found
they did not, in my time, reach be-
yond 180, or 190,000, of the same
rubles, each being about equivalent
to 5 florins of Dutch money. There
usually arrived thirty or thirty five
of our ships in a year; but in this
last there came fifty, besides thirty
three English; to which, if we add
the ships from Hamburg, Denmark,
and Bremen, the whole will amount
to one hundred and three sail: the
reason of which was the war with
Sweden, which put a stop to the trade
the Muscovites carried on with
Riga, Nersu, Reval, and even Kon-
nersberg and Danzig: so that the
whole trade of Russia is now cen-
tered in Archangel. They compute al-
so that his Czar’s Majesty has, this
year, received, upon the goods from
the arrival of the first ship in this
port, to the last, the sum of 130,000
rubles, or 260,000 rixdollars. It is
an agreement that half these duties
be paid in rubles, and the other
half in golden ducats; if payment
was offered to be made all in du-
cats, they would not receive it, tho’
they never refuse rix-dollars. This
is to be understood of foreign goods,
the chief of which are gold and silver
stuffs, and silks, cloths, ferges, gold
and silver laces, &c. gold wyre, in-
digo, and other materials for dying.
But to return to the customs, levied
upon foreign merchandise, it is to
be observed, that from the year
1667, to 1699, they paid the sum
of twenty rix-dollars on every cask of
wine, whereas for three years past they
have paid but five. They nevertheless
pay thirty rix-dollars on every bar-
rel of brandy, and forty on a pipe of
Spanish wine containing two barrels.

From Moscow, into other parts,
they export pot-ashes, and weed-
ashes for soap, leather, hemp, tallow,
elks, other skins, and furs; all
goods of the natural growth of the
country. They buy also, that the
rivers of Kola, Warfaska, Wisma,
and Solia, produce muscloses that yield
a very good sort of pearl. They
are sometimes worth twenty five flo-
rins a-piece; and even twice that
money in the neighbourhood of
Ombacy.

This is all I was able to inform
myself during the time I staid here;
what hours I had to spare, I dedi-
cated to the conversation of the Sieurs
Brants and Lap, who made it their
business to oblige me. They there
divert themselves with gaming, dance-
ing, drinking and eating, and even
till it is pretty late in the night. Mr.
Brants contributed no small share to
these diversions, being a great lover
of music, and an excellent performer
upon the harpsichord.

F

CHAP.
CHAP. IV.


1701.

I LEFT Archangel upon the twenty first of December, about three in the afternoon, in company with Mr. Kinfius, who had two soldiers with him, and a Podwoden, or an order for horses upon the road gratis, though the people however got some money upon the occasion. He had fix sledges, to which I added mine, having disposed of my baggage among that of Mr. Brants. When you resolve upon this journey, you must provide your self with sledges at Archangel, for you can meet with no Horses upon the road. The sledges are so contrived that a person may lie along in them very conveniently; you must have your own bed, and good things to cover you up warm from the cold, which is excessive in this country. The hinder part of the sledge they cover with mats, and the rest they line either with cloth or leather. Then over-head you have a skin lined with cloth or leather, to keep off the rain and snow. They travel day and night, each sledge with two horses, which they change every fifteen werfts, five of which make a German league. The Russians cry out werfia, at the end of every werft, which at present contains about a hundred fathom, each fathom three arsienes, or Dutch ells. You go out of the sledge but once a day to refresh your self. Having passed through several villages, we, upon the twenty second, about three in the afternoon, came to Kalmogora, about fifty werfts from Archangel.

1701.

This city is pretty large, and to the southwest of the Dwina, one of the chief rivers of Russia. It lies in the southern parts of the province of Wologda, and after a long course, being increased by other rivers in its way, it, by two mouths, discharges itself into the White-Sea, a little below Archangel. Mr. Kinfius being acquainted with the Vladika, or Archbishop of this city, we went to pay him a visit. He received us very kindly, and treated us with cinnamon-water, red wine, and an excellent beer, the common drink of the country. He gave us also some Egyptian dates, and several other refreshments. He was a man of fifty years of age, and his name was Affonajli. He resided in his own palace, which is pretty large, and joins to the monastery. Having passed two very agreeable hours with this prelate, a man of good sense, and a lover of polite learning, he carried us to see an armory he had below; in which, among others, were two small brass guns of his own casting, and two iron pieces taken out of the Swedish vessels we formerly spoke of. When we took leave of him, he ordered five of his clergy to attend us to our inn; one of them carrying five loaves, and the others dried fish and other refreshments. About ten at night we went away with fresh horses, which had some trouble to procure, because a number of travellers, provided with Podwodens as well as we, had lately passed by, and taken up almost all the horses in the town.

Upon the twenty third we had fine weather, and passed through several woods full of fir, of two forts; the branches of the one shoot out at the sides of the trunk, and of the other only from the head. There were also alders and birch-trees. From hence we went on to several villages, and at length to Sarske, the last in the jurisdiction of Archangel. From
1701. From thence, upon the twenty fourth
we got to Briesnick, in the country of Waag, where we took fresh horses,
and were several times to cross the river of that name. Upon the
twenty fifth we arrived at Schenkerske,
the capital of the country of Waag,
upon the same river. Upon the
twenty sixth we went through a great
village, called Virgboeunjie, where,
one a week, they have a great mar-
ket. Upon the twenty seventh to
Sobti. Upon the twenty eighth,
having passed through several villages,
we crossed the great forest of Kome-
naf, full twenty werfts in breadth,
and came to Dwentinse, upon the
river of the same name, where we
were told that three Russian
merchants, from Archangel, had not
long before been plundered by twen-
ty fix robbers on the highway; that
one of these robbers had taken away
a silver crofs from the chief of these
merchants, a man I knew, though
his companions had done all they
could to prevent him; the crofs here
being usually worn on the breast,
and held in great veneration: that
even this rascal wore a crofs himself,
which he took from his own neck
and put about the merchant's saying,
There, now we have changed crofs we
are brethren. This piece of news
gave us a good deal of uneasiness;
but having weighed the matter, we
resolved to push on, and not wait
for the merchants that might come
from Archangel, and got ready our
arms to defend us in case of need.
Upon the twenty ninth we got to
Rabange, upon the river Sogne, and
from thence reached Wologda about
three in the afternoon. This city
makes a good figure on this side.
We got out at the house of the Sieur
Walter Ewents de JONGH, a Dutch
merchant, I was acquainted with at
Archangel, who received us with
great civility. The next day I walked
about the town, and saw the great
church called Saboor: it is a fine
building, by the Italian architect who
worked at the castle of Moscow.
This church has five domes, which
the Russians call Glaffa, or Heads
of Churches; they are covered with
plate-tin, and have large croffes. In
this city also there are twenty other
churches of stone, most of which
have also domes covered with tin,
and surmounted by gilt croffes, and
have a fine effect when the sun shines
up on them; besides forty three other
churches of wood, three convents of
monks, and one cloister of nuns, whose
chief ornament is a church of stone,
built in the midst, and encompassed
with wooden cells for the nuns, in a
private place, which you go in by a
small door. Having taken a sufficient
view of these buildings, I went to see
the markets: they are full of shops, market,
and I took notice that each article has
a separate place for the sale of it; as
meat in one place, wood in another,
and so on. From thence I went
through the gate of a great building
which has never been completed,
and was begun by the Czar Joan
Vassaliwitz, who designed it for a
citadel; but the fear they were then
under of the Tartars, who had made
this Prince retire from Moscow, was
the cause it was never finished. I
then went to walk on the side of
the river Wologda, which runs thro'
this city. The other side which is
not so fine, is called Deprefence, which,
though it be part of one and the same
city, has nevertheless another gover-
nor. It is a good league in length, and
a quarter of a league in breadth, more
or less, in some places. It is the
thoroughfare for all the goods that
come from Archangel; and there are,
at this time, three or four warehouses
for the goods belonging to our nation.
This city is in 59 degrees, 15 minutes,
of northern latitude, on the east of
the river, which is pretty broad.

Upon the thirteenth, at ten at night, 1701.
we set out from hence, and about Dec. 30.
fix the next morning we reached
Greenewits, having travelled forty
werfts. We there baited our horses,
and need they had of it, for we had
still twenty werfts to go. That day
we met with fifty fedges, some of
which had left Archangel before we
did, and some after. But we
did not all travel the same way; there
were
1701. were but twenty of them that looked towards Moscow, and at noon we arrived at Osiyork, jam, whether we had dispatched a soldier before us, to get us fresh horses. Sixty seven werfts from thence we came to Danilofskoy, a fine and large burgh, where there is trade, and a fine stud of horses, above two thousand of which belonged to the Czar.

1702. The first day of the year 1702, we came to Jereflaw, one of the chief cities of Rusia; the Wolga runs not far off, and is there very broad; and Karin we crossed it, and then the Kotris; not far from whence to the southward, it falls into the Wolga. There is a great number of stone churches in this city, which I shall have enough to say of hereafter, having, at my return, taken views of them all. When we had crossed the Kotris, we went into a suburb called Troopizno, where we changed horses. We left that place at ten at night, and upon the second we came to Rolof, which we only traversed. The Archbishops has his residence in this city, full of stone churches, which are a great ornament to it. It is seated, to the right of the lake of the same name. When we had crossed this lake, we discerned a great number of small villages, most of whose inhabitants live upon garlic and onions. The monastery of Petersharovitz, which is surrounded with some houses, is but half a league off. At one in the afternoon we came to Waske, having travelled thirty eight werfts; we there dined, and at the end of twenty werfts more we came to Pereflaw Solieskoy, capital of the province of that name; it is but a poor sort of a city, and stands upon a lake. It was nine of the clock when we came thither, and we left it at midnight. Upon the third, about fix in the morning, we went thro' Tsvoribrowa. From thence to Troopitz you must continually go up and down small hills, for the space of thirty werfts. Reaching this last place, about one in the afternoon, we went to see the famous monastery of the name, which we had passed by, as we came in 1702, with the village. It is surrounded with a fine and high wall of stone, which is the material throughout the whole fabric. At the corners of this wall, which is square, are fine noble and large round towers; between which there are others that are square. Two of these last you have upon the front, they are the finest, and the road goes by them. This monastery, which has three gates in front, is a good quarter of a league from the village which lies to the right-hand of it, as you go to Moscow: that in the middle, which I chose to go in by, had two arcades, under which there was a little corps de garde, where there were foldiers, as well as to that without. When you are through this gate, you see the principal church standing in the middle, and separate from the rest of the buildings. His Czarian Majesty's apartment, very sumptuous and royal without, is on the right-hand, and the front being very extensive, you go up to it by two flights of steps: it is several stories high; but the inside does by no means correspond with the out. The refectory, another great edifice, is opposite to this and like it. All the windows are adorned with little pillars, and the stones are painted of several colours. The church we just now mentioned is between these two. There are four others considerable, and five smaller. From without, this monastery has the look of a fortress; and the archimandrite or abbot, is the chief in authority. Here are commonly two or three hundred monks, and some of them attended us every where with a good deal of civility. This monastery is rich in endowments, levying its revenues upon 60,000 peafants that depend thereon; not to speak of the great personages here intombed, nor the maffes that are here celebrated, and the like from whence much profit must arise.

This village is pretty long, and on the right-hand side is full of farriers' shops, with poifs to shoe horses at. Thirty werfts from hence, we came
1702. came to the village of Brato Fiena, where we were obliged to stay till midnight, to have our baggage searched, which is here to be sealed, and not opened again till in the custom-house at Moscow, where we arrived upon the fourth, at eight in the morning, and alighted at the slabode, or privileged quarter of the Germans, where most of the strangers take up their abode; though there are those of them that live in the city. I went directly to Mr. fursten's, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. Brants, who lived in the same place, and was but just arrived from Archangel. The Czar paid him a visit the next day, attended by several Lords of his court in fleges, of which his Majesty's made the least show. This visit lasted for two hours; and this was the first time I had the honour of seeing this mighty Monarch:

**CHAP. V.**

The Author is admitted to the Presence of his Czarian Majesty. Consecration of the Water and Fire-work at Moscow.

1702. Ever since the year 1649, it has been a custom with the Czars of Moscow to visit the chief of their own subjects, or of the foreigners, whether in the city of Moscow itself, or in the slabode of the Germans, a little before Tewelst-day. On this occasion the person honoured gives a treat, and this they call flegien. They go attended with the Princes, Lords, and other great personages of their court. This ceremony began the year 1702, upon the third of January old style. The first visit was to Mr. Brandts, where about nine in the morning the Czar came, and about three hundred persons in fleges and on horse-back. The tables were covered in very good order, and served immediately with several dainties of cold meats, and afterwards hot. They were very merry, and there was no want of liquor. His Majesty withdrew about two in the afternoon, and went thence with his whole court to Mr. Lap's, where he was treated in the same manner, and from thence to several other places. Then they went to reft themselves in houses prepared for that purpose. The next day, among others, he paid a visit to our Reffident Mr. Halbf. This Mister made mention of me to the Czar, upon the recommendation of Mr. Witsen, Burgo-matfer, and Counsellor of the city of Amsterdam, and did me the honour to invite me; and ordered that I should be placed in a room, through which the Czar was to pass. As luck would have it the Knez or Prince of Troebetzkoj came into this place, and having no knowledge of me, and perceiving me to be a stranger, he asked me, in Italian, if I understood that language; I told him I did, with which he seemed to be much pleased, and had a pretty long discourse with me concerning Italy, and other countries where he had been as well as I. Hereupon he went to give his Majesty an account of what had passed, and he had the curiosity to come with all his train, to the place where I was; but not expecting him so soon, I was a little in confusion, The Author though upon a recovery of myself, spoke to me in Dutch, Hoe soo't ge wil ik bent? en hoe Ronst gy ty kemmen? " How is it you know who I am? and how comes it you know me?" I answered I had seen his picture at Sir G. Godfrey
1702. Godfrey Kneller's in London, and that it made too deep an impression upon my mind to be defaced. As he did not seem quite to approve of this answer, I added, that I had besides, had the honour to see him come out of his court, when he went to Mr. Brandt, which seemed to please him better. He asked me of what town I was; who were my parents; if they were still alive; and if I had brothers and sisters. Having returned the proper answers, he asked me some questions about my first travels, what year I set out, how long I was about them, in what manner I travelled, and how I returned again. He then talked to me about Egypt, the Nile, and Grand Cairo; of its extent and buildings, of the statue and condition of what belonged to the Old Cairo, of Alexandria, and several other places, adding he fancied there was another place called Alexandria. I told him, this last place was the sea-port for Aleppo, and acquainted him with the distance between them. All this the Czar asked me in Dutch, and would have me continue to speak in that language, saying he understood me very well. And it appeared that he did so; for he explained all I had said to the Russian Lords that attended him, with a nicety which surprised the Resident and the rest of the Dutch. He then ordered me to speak Italian, to the Knez or Prince Troebetsoy, who understood it pretty well, and then he left me. After he had been three good hours with Monsieur the Resident, he went to make some other visits in the town, because it was the last day; the festival of the consecration of the water, being to be celebrated the next day, and the Monday being the 6th of January, old style. That day the son of General Bories Petrovitz, Czernemof, arrived, and while his Czarian Majesty was at church, brought him the agreeable news of the defeat of the Swedes by the Molsevites in Livonia, 5 or 6 league from the town of Drifte. He informed him the Swedes had, in this battle, lost 4,000 men, that they had taken 1702. some hundreds of prisoners, and that among them were several officers. This Nobleman, who was in the action, and had been dispatched by his father with these glad tidings, acquitted himself so handsomely, that he inspired an universal joy. The festival I just now mention, is remembered by the manifestation of Jesus Christ, and I was an eye-witness of it.

In the river of Jordan, and not far from the castle they made a square hole in the ice which was 15 feet from corner to corner, or 52 feet in circumference. This hole was inclosed by a curious piece of wooden-work, having at each angle of it a pillar, which supported a kind of cornish, whereon were four panels painted in the form of arches, and at each corner a representation of one of the evangelists, and above all two kind of half domes, upon the middle of which was a large cross. These panels, which were also painted within, represented apostles, and other holy personages. The finest piece of all this, to the east of the river, was the baptism of our Lord, by St. John, in the river Jordan, with four angels on the right. Each of these panels had on the outside painted upon them five angels heads with wings. There were four steps on the west side of this hole, to which they had fixed a considerable weight of lead to make them sink in the water. The patriarch or the person that performs this ceremony, stood upon these steps quite to the water, which in this place eight foot deep. Upon the ground they had spread large red carpets, surrounded with a square inclosure, 45 paces from corner to corner, or 180 in circumference. This inclosure had two others in the nature of balustrades, at the distance of four paces from each other, four foot high, and, in like manner, covered with red cloths or carpets. They had erected three handsome wooden altars to the westward near the edge of the hole. Four doors gave ad-
1792. mission thereto, the chief of which was to the southward of the gate of the castle. They also were painted, but oddly enough, and like the rest, represented sacred things. Having thoroughly surveyed all this, I went to a rising ground near the castle, between the two gates on the side of that they call Taynainaskie, or the Secret Gate, to see the procession pass by. It began to move about eleven of the clock, from out of the church of Sabour, that is, the place of the assembly of the saints, which is in the castle, and the chief of all the churches in Moscova. This procession consisted wholly of churchmen excepting some persons in common dresses who led the way with standards made fast to large staffs. The churchmen were all in their priestly habits, and made a very fine show. The more inferior priests and the monks, to the number of about 200 came on first, preceded by several choristers and singing boys in common habits, with each a book in his hand. On each hand they were guarded with armed soldiers, while others with staffs attended them to clear the way. After these appeared all such as wore the episcopal habit, being about 300 in number. The 12 first were metropolitanans or cardinals, in a habit commonly called Sackcoif. After these came four archbishops and three bishops and a great number of archimandrites, or superiors of convents. When about 200 of these last had gone by, you saw every thing these priests carried in procession, as a pole with a lantern, representing the light of the word of God, in honour of the pictures of the saints, or to give them an air of grandeur. Two cherubims, they call Lepieds, at the end of two poles like the former; then two crossets; a picture of Jesus Christ, half-length, almost as big as the life; a great book, and then 20 gold and silver caps, adorned with jewels, and carried separately, each by a person appointed. The ceremony over, the chief of those present appeared in those caps, that of the metropolitan being of gold, adorned with pearls and precious stones. The grandest of the prelates also wear these caps, which they call mitres. This metropolitan who represented the patriarch, came immediately after the great book and had in his hands a great gold cross, enriched with jewels, which every now and then touched his forehead, and a priest had him under each arm to support him. Being in this order got to the side of the river, and their ceremonies, which took up a good half-hour, were all over, the metropolitan drew near to the water, and three times dipped the cross into it saying, as the patriarch was wont to say, SPACI GOSPODI LUDI TWOYA, I BLAGOSL OWI DOSTOANIA TWOYA. God prefer his people, and bless his inheritance. They then returned towards the castle, but the 200 priests that had preceded as the procession went out, returned not back in the same order, but dispersed. Those who had the aedicular or episcopal habit walked back in good order; among others, I observed two men, very poorly dressed, with a tub or something of the kind which covered up with a cloth, could not well be distinguished. This vessel was followed by another, and carried in the same manner, with a pewter pot full of the water, which having been blessed was carried to the castle to sprinkle the apartments, and the paintings. As soon as the procession had got in again, they hurried back everything that had been as a decoration to the water; and I took notice that a Muscovite fouled a great broom into the water, and washed the spectators with it; but they did not seem to be a bit the better for it; and in short, I thought there was something ridiculous in this part of the solemnity. This procession, which lasted till two in the afternoon, had drawn together a prodigious throng of people, a sight well worth the seeing, if there had been nothing else, and had a fine effect upon the river, the castle being upon an eminence.
1702, eminence we could from thence see all the multitude even to those upon the walls. As we were going home again, and had got to the gate of the castle, there was such a crowd that we had much ado to get out of it. And indeed our curiosity had like to have cost us dear, besides the danger of standing so long in the snow.

This festival was formerly celebrated with much more pomp and solemnity than at present, it having been customary for their Majesties, and the Grandees of state to be present thereat. But the present Czar has made great alteration in this, as well as in every thing else. We shall talk more about this in the sequel.

The ninth of this month it began to thaw, and even to rain, the weather being much more open, than had been known for many years before.

Upon the eleventh, there were great doings for the victory his Majesty’s arms had obtained of the Swedes. There was a great firework on one side of the castle, in the middle of the Bazaar or market place; which is very low and pretty spacious; and it extended from one end of the place or square to the other. They ran up a great boarded building, full of windows towards the castle, in which his Majesty entertained the principal Lords of his court; the foreign Ministers were there also, and particularly him of Denmark, and the Resident of Holland, together with a great number of Officers, and many merchants from beyond-sea. To shade as well as to adorn this building, there were three rows of branches like young trees, planted before it. The entertainment began at two in the afternoon, and at six in the evening they began to play the firework which turned till nine. It was raised upon three great tables or theatres of wood, very lofty and spacious, on which they had several figures, nailed to planks and painted of a brown colour. The design of this fire-work was after a new 1702, manner and different from all of the kind I had ever seen before. There was in the middle on the right hand, a figure of time, twice as big as the life, with an hour-glass in his right, and a palm-branch in his left, hand, which was likewise held by a figure on the other side with this inscription in the Russian, God be therefore praised. On the left hand towards the boarded-building where his Majesty was, there was a trunk of a tree which a beaver was gnawing with these words, By perseverance be shall be unrooted. Upon the third stage, on the other side, there was another trunk of a tree with a young branch sprouting from it, and not far off a very calm sea, upon which appeared a half-sun, which being lighted up looked reddish, with this device, Hope now appears again. Between these stages there were little square pieces of fire-works, which continued to burn and were not without their devices. The second of these small fires, near which I happened to be, and which was lighted first by his Czarian Majesty, represented a cross with four arms, the third a vine-branch, the fourth a bird-cage, with different devices. As these were all illuminated after the manner of our country, it was easy to see what they were meant for. There was moreover in the midst of this place a great Neptune afloat upon a dolphin, and by him several forts of fire-works upon the ground, surrounded with piles to which cages or furnes were fixed, which had a very fine effect, some of them forming a golden shower, and others throwing out stars. When they were upon the point to set fire to these works, several of the eclestatics and other persons of distinction in the boarded building with his Majesty, came out and went thence into a covered place, in the midst of all this machinery to perform some ceremonies. There was a guard of soldiers over the gate of this lodge or building, adorned with a number of standards. In a word, there is no expressing the multitude.
1702. The multitude of people gathered together upon this occasion. The Czar’s sister also was present at this fight, and was with several Ladies, upon a tower at one end of this market-place. Another tower there was, one of the highest in this part of the town, illuminated from top to bottom. The great figures we formerly mentioned burned each of them above a quarter of an hour. At the same time we heard the noise of the artillery, which had been discharged before the entertainment. When the fireworks were over, the tables were covered again. I withdrew to the flabode, where at ten at night I again heard the report of 90 great guns, and many afterwards. What was to me the most extraordinary, upon such an occasion as this, and in such a crowd, there was not the least disorder; which indeed must be attributed to the care that was taken to dispose of soldiers and guards so as might best prevent any thing of the kind. There were, however, some French officers who had a quarrel among them, and began to handle their swords, and made a great noise near his Majesty’s lodge; to prevent the consequences of which there was a post put up near the Dutch church, in the flabode of the Germans, to which were tied a sword and an ax, with the papers affixed in Russian, Latin and German, forbidding any person whatsoever to draw a sword, or fight a duel upon pain of death.

CHAP. VI.

A severe Execution at Moscow. The magnificent Wedding of one of the Czar’s Favourites. The Author is admitted into the Presence of the Empress, the Widow of his Majesty’s Brother.

1702. Upon the nineteenth of this month there was a terrible execution at Moscow. A woman who had killed her husband, was condemned to be buried alive, up to the shoulders; and having the curiosity to look at her in this condition, I thought she looked very fresh and of a good countenance. About her head and neck they had tied a white linen cloth, which she got to be undone because it bound her too much. She was guarded by three or four soldiers, who had orders to suffer nothing to be given to her, either to eat or drink that might prolong her life. But the people had leave to throw into the pit where she was buried, certain little Kopjebes or pence, which the gave thanks for by a motion of her head. The money thus bestowed, is commonly laid out in little tapers, which are lighted up in honour of certain saints, they call upon, and partly in a coffin. I know not whether those who have the guard of these unhappy women, may not seize on a part of it themselves, to allow them some refreshments in private; for some of them live a good while in this condition; but this died the second day after I had seen her. Upon the same day there was a man burnt alive, for some crime which I know not. I shall in the sequel speak more amply of the administration of justice in this country, and therefore shall proceed with my narration according to the order of time.

Upon the twenty-fifth, they celebrated the marriage of a certain favourite of the Czar’s, called Fieldet Prienewitz Souskis, a Muscovite Nobleman,
1702. bleman, with the Knezna, or Prin-
cess Mary Swjovenjeh Scherboftskaja
fitter of the Knez Bedder Sterewitz
Scherboftskaja, a favourite also with
his Majefly. To this folemny this
Prince invited the principal Lords and
Ladies of the court, and the foreign
Minifters, and fome of the beyond-fea
Merchants and their wives. All that
were invited were ordered to drefs af-
fter the ancient manner of the country,
more or lefs frichly, according to the
regulation in that cafe preffcribed. The
wedding was in the flybode of the
Germans, at the hotel of General
le Force, who had fome years been
dead. It is a great building, after
the Italian mode, and you go up
to it by steps to the right and the
left, becaufe of its extent; and in it
are magnificent apartments, and a
very fine salon, which was hung with
rich tapeftarv, and the place of the
folemny. Here you faw two great
leopards with a chain about their
necks, and with their fore paws up-
on an efcutcheon all of miñfy filver;
as also a large globe of filver upon
the shoulders of an Atlas of the fame
metal, besides great vases, and other
pieces of plate which had been
partly brought from the Czar’s trea-
ury. The place they were to meet
at, for the cavalcade, was in the
city, near the castle, in two great
buildings opposite the one to the
other. The Great Duke, and all
the guests repaired to the early in
the morning, the men in the one,
the Ladies in the other. They came
out about ten of the clock to go to
the castle, in the middle of which
I had got to have a fight of this
cavalcade, which appeared the finer,
as the weather was very fair. First
came the Czar himself upon a proud
black courfer, he was habited in
a moft magnificent cloth of gold;
his upper garment or robe was in-
termixed with many figures of fe-
veral colours, and on his head he
had a great red fur cap. His horfe
was richly caparifoned with a fine
gold houling; having upon each
fore-leg a filler hoop of four inches
broad. The majestic air of this
Prince, who is a good figure on horse-
back, added not a little to the splen-
dor of the fight, which it muft be
owned, was quite royal. On his
left hand he had the Prince Alex-
ander Danievitz de Merejibof, dref-
fed in the fame gold Stuff, and mount-
ed upon a very fine Steed, nobly adorn-
ad, and with filler hoops about his
legs like thofe of his master’s horfe.
The principal Knezes or Princes fol-
lowed two and two according to their
rank, all on horefback, and dreffed
the fame, to the number of 48. The
Czar being in this manner come to
the castle, he there ftopped to wait
for the ref, in the mean time mak-
ing his horfe prance and curvette.
He was near the gate of the Ewa-
rifta, or the court, where are his
own apartments, and overhead was
the Princefs hisifter, the Emprefs
widow of the late Czar, and her
three daughters who all fat in an
open place. When he went under
this gate, the Princefs alimated him
with a moft profound receipt, and
he took care to return the compli-
ment to the full. All thefe Nobles
being thus paffed on, by two and
two, there advanced a number of
lights, surrounded by a great body of
footmen; and then 120 of the chiefs
of the court, two and two, and clad
like the former. They were fol-
lowed by goofts or customers, our
Refident, and the foreign Merchants,
whose habit and caps were quite dif-
ferent from the ref. They had in-
deed yellow boots, but their caps
were low and common, and nothing
at all for magnificence, compared
with the others. Theye were to
the number of 34; fo that in this
cavalcade we may reckon there were
204. perfons all for the moft part
richly equipt. Many of their horfes
had filler bits, and fome of them
had chains of the fame, two fingers
broad, pretty thick, and hung from
the top of the horfe’s head to the
bridle and fattined to the pummel
of the faddle, which made an a-
greeable jingle. There were fome
who had them quite flat and only
of plate-tin. After thefe there ap-
peared
1702. peared five pledges, in the three first of which were the three German doctors, and in the two others, the two most ancient merchants of our country. These were followed by a great chariot or waggon covered with red cloth, and designed for the two Empresses. Thus it is the Russians call those his Czar's Majesty is pleased to appoint to appear, as Ladies of the state, in the ceremony and such like it. The first of the Ladies, the wife of the Knez Eudder Scufierwitz Romedanowski, who commands in Moscow in the absence of the Czar, was indisposed, and could not be there; so that the other, the wife of Ieannowitz Botterlien appeared alone. Upon her head she had a small white high-crowned felt with a narrow brim, with two maids of honour seated opposite to her in the chariot, waggon, or coach, which was drawn by twelve white horses, and surrounded with servants in red. This was followed by twenty five others smaller, but covered the same with two white horses, in one of which was the bride, and Russian Ladies in the rest. Among these there was an ugly little pledge, fastened to the tail of a poor creature of a horse, and in it a little mean-looking fellow, of a piece with his carriage and dressed like a Jew. I guessed he was drawn in this manner for some crime he had committed, and so I afterwards understood to have been from people that knew him, and that it was really to punish him that he made this figure; he being it seems a Jew by extraction tho' he had turned to the Christian faith. There came after these seven other pledges filled with Ladies of our nation, followed by some empty chariots which closed the procession; which in this order went through the castle, and a part of the city as far as the church of Bogojalienja or of the Annunciation, where the marriage ceremony was performed in the presence of the Czar, and many personages of that illustrious assembly. My curiosity being thus satisfied, I returned to my lodging, and afterwards pitched upon a good place in the flabode, that I might see them go to the place where they were to have the feast. They did not come till three in the afternoon, being then to the number of 500 as well men as women, who went into different apartments where the two sexes could have no sight of each other. The Empress Dowager, the Czar's sister, and her three daughters were at one table with some ladies at court. The bride was at another with other Ladies; and she that represented the Empress was alone and raised above the rest. The other Ladies, as well Russian as others, were in another apartment; and the music was so placed as to be heard by every body. After the repast, which was a royal one, and lasted several hours, the bride and bridgroom were conducted to the place where they were to consummate the marriage, at a little distance from the house upon the river Tuja, being a small building erected on purpose; and where they had an ordinary bed prepared for them. Most of the company dispersed between ten a clock and midnight; though a great part of them staid in the flabode, in houses prepared and appointed for them, by order of the Czar, that the Russians might the more easily meet together the next day at the place, from thence to go to the hotel of the Major General Menifist, whose widow was still alive. She who represented the Empress went thither in the night, and the bride went thither early the next morning. The Czar also moved towards it about ten of the clock without the attendance of the strangers, and having been there about an hour, he went in good order to see Mr. Laps, who waited for him at the door, attended by some of the merchants of our nation. He there fopst a little with his train, but alighted not from his horse, though he was well regaled with liquors.

I cannot forbear to mention one thing which contributed much to the mirth of this company: The bride-
1702, bridegroom was upon a very fine horse, and another Lord was upon a mare full as beautiful; both of them warm, and prepared for what was to happen. The horse failed not to cover her, and the cavalier upon her was so dextrous as to get off unhurt, while the bridegroom kept his faddle all the time of the action, which caused a great laughter among the spectators. They would have done this before, but could not bring it about. The Czarian Prince then appeared on horseback, attended by several young Lords of his own age, a groom leading his horse by the bridle. He was followed by the bride’s chariot, and hers by the great one with twelve horses, with the Lady that represented the Empress, and this, by many others, full of Ruffian dames. When they came to the palace where the wedding was to be celebrated, and where I had taken care to be by going another way, his Majesty went in first, and was followed by the bride, who went into another distinct set of apartments on the left-hand, and where formerly lived general le Fort. The great chariot stopped to make room; it being difficult for it to go on because of its height, and not able to turn the place was so narrow. In the midst of this the young Czarian Prince alighted, and stood by the side of the chariot, and so he continued till it went in, which it did not without flicking at top. After this the Prince crossed the court of the palace, and the Empress alighting from her vehicle, went up some stairs on the right-hand. The strangers and their wives repaired thither also, and stood much as they did the night before. The third and the last day it was resolved to appear in the German dress, and every body did so, except some of the Russian Ladies: and thus they repaired again to the new married couple, but separately. The men and the women sat at table together, as the custom is with us; and there was dancing and skipping about, after the entertainment, to the great satisfaction of the Czar himself, and all his guests: and thus ended a solemnity, which being so singular as it is, I concluded every body would be curious to know as much of it as they could.

Upon the second of February they brought a part of the Swedish prisoners, mentioned before, in flegdes. Upon the fourth they came for me to wait on the Czar, who was at the palace of his great favourite Prince Mensikoff. This palace is called Semenovskiei, the name of a village, a mile and half from the Slabode, where I found his Majesty employed in trying of some fire engines lately arrived from Holland. This Prince perceiving me, called me to him, and went again into the palace. Well, says he, you have seen the author many strange things, and yet I will fire the venture to say you never saw anything Czar, like what you are going to see. He then ordered a poor Ruffian, who had been brought on purpose, to open his cloaths. I trembled at the sight; he had an excrecence beneath the navel, of about the length of a hand, and four inches in substance, from whence went out all the food he eat; and the poor wretch had been nine years in this condition. This disaster happened from the cut of a knife, that had so irritated the parts about the common passage, that there was no cure to be had. I frankly confessed I had never seen any thing like it, but said I knew a man who voided his food by his mouth, at which he seemed to be not less surprized. He then ordered this poor man’s excrecence to be squeezed, that I might be the more sensible of the nature of his cafe, and everything came out half digested. The patient was about thirty-five years of age. Having discoursed with his Majesty about two hours, and been regaled with liquors, he left me, and Prince Alexander came up to me. He told me the Czar having heard I could paint, was desirous I should do the pictures of the three young Princes, the daughters of the Czar Ivan Alexe-
1702. with his brother, who had reigned jointly with him till he died, which happened upon the twenty ninth of January 1696, and that it was the chief reason I had been sent for to court. I gladly accepted of the honour, and went with this Lord to wait upon the Empress, the mother of these young Ladies, at a house of pleasure belonging to his Majesty, called Ismailoff, mostagreeably situatet about a league from Moscow, that I might have a fight of them before I began my work. When I had approached the Empress, she asked if I could speak the Russian language; to which Prince Alexander anwering in the negative, they talked together for some time: This Prince then filled out a little cup of brandy, which he presented to the Prince, who drinking it off, delivered the cup to one of her maids of honour: She filled it out a second time, and the Empress presented it to me herself; She also gave us a glass of wine, as did also the three young Princesses. After this a great glass of beer was filled out, which the Empress again presented to Prince Alexander, who, having taken a lip, returned it to the maid of honour: The same ceremony was observed with regard to myself, and I just touched it with my lips; for in this court it would be taken much amiss to empty the last glass of beer that is presented. I then talked a while with Prince Alexander, who speaks pretty good Dutch, upon the subjects of pictures; and when we went out the Empress and the three young Princesses gave us their right-hands to kids, the highest honour that can be received in this country. Some days afterwards there were great nuptial doings at the palace of Prince Mensikoff, for some belonging to the Czar, who was there present with the Prince his uncle, and several Lords and Ladies of the court; nor were some of the English and Dutch Merchants and German Ladies uninvited. The table, in form of an hors-d'oeuvre, was spread in the great hall, and the Czar and the Russian

Lords were on one side, and the 1702. Ladies on the other. The Czar, Prince, Prince Alexander, and the English and Dutch merchants were at a round table in the middle of the hall, at which I had the honour of a seat. After a magnificent repast there was dancing after the Polish manner; the music, which was very good, being on the left-hand.

Prince Alexander went away that same evening, in order to spend some days in the country, where he had some business. Upon the eleventh Mr. Passow, the Envoy from Denmark took a tour to his own country, desiring to return in the spring, and to leave his wife behind him at Moscow. Upon the fifth of March I had the honour to dine with his Majesty at Probrunjuk, the usual abode of that Prince. After dinner he carried me to the Empress's palace, to see the pictures of the three young Princesses, which were begun, and he entertained her a good while upon the subject of my travels. Upon the eleventh he went with some Lords of his court to visit Mr. Brants, and there he saw what I had painted at Archangel, and seemed to be much pleased with them. Talking from one thing to another, this Prince, at last, made mention of certain pieces of cannon, which were thought to have the arms of Genoa, which, as well as those of Venice, are a lion with one paw on a book, upon them. He wanted to be satisfied as to this, and resolved to take a view of them, appointing the palace of the Prince to be the place to meet at for that purpose. His Majesty accordingly came at the time appointed, and Prince Alexander, in his name, made a present of a gold medal to every one there, who were for the most part foreign merchants that he had an esteem for. Upon this medal his Majesty was represented with a crown of laurel on his head, with this title round him, PETER ALEXANDER WITZ, GREAT CZAR OF ALL RUSSIA. On the reverse were
1702. were two eagles, with the day of
the month, the 1st of February,
and the year 1702.

Having been here entertained with
great magnificence, they returned to
Ptribropotske, which is reckoned to
be no better than the abode of a
captain, his Majesty not having as
yet attained an higher title. This
palace is not above three miles from
the city, and not far from that of
Prince Mensheps. It is also the
arsenal of the regiment of his guards,
we here saw the three guns men-
tioned before, upon which there was
a lion plain enough, though a good
deal worn down. They were very
short, and like our mortars. But I
do not comprehend how they should
have formerly fallen into the hands
of the Russians.

CHAP. VII.

Magnificent Entertainments given by his Majesty in the Coun-
try. Particulars concerning the Empress. His Majesty di-
verts himself upon the River Moska. Celebration of Easter
among the Russians. His Majesty's Departure for Arch-
angel.

While we were looking at
these guns, they got every
thing ready to go to a village be-
longing to Prince Alexander. It is
called Alexejevskie, not far from Le-
nunnefskie, about twelve werfis from
Moscow, where this Nobleman has a
very fine country-house upon the ri-
ver Pouja; a charming place where
there are wonderful fish-ponds abun-
dantly stocked. But I thought noth-
ing here finer than the stables,
large, and made of wood, as well
as the house, and containing above
fifty very fine horses. We there
found some German Ladies his Ma-
jesty had ordered to be here, to
provide some agreeable entertain-
ments. We were ten in all, our
Refident, three English, and the rest
Dutch, without reckoning some Rus-
sian Noblemen and Ladies, to the
number of thirteen, including Prince
Alexander's sister. We were per-
fecfly welcome, and treated with
a supper of flesh and fish. They
had spread two tables in a great hall,
the one a long one, at which sat
the Czar, and several of his Nobles
on one side, and the Ladies on the
other; the other was a round table
in the middle, where sat the English
and most of the German, or Dutch
rather. After supper they retired to
their apartments, the Russian on
one side, and the Ladies on the
other; only the strangers stayed some
time longer together. The next
day there was a feast like the former,
with music, consisting of violins,
basses, trumpets, hautboys, flutes,
&c. Then they danced after the
Polish manner, the Czar, who was
in a very good humour, encouraged
every body to be merry; nor was
there any forgetfulness about the
wine. At night every one withdrew
to begin again the next day, which
was spent like the former, in all
manner of diversions, no one being
at all overcome with liquor, and
then all returned to their several
homes.

I then got leave to have the pic-
tures of the young Princesses, which
I had painted in large, brought home
to my lodging, that I might put
the finishing hand to them, the Czar
having prevailed with me to do, because
he wanted to send them somewhere.
I obeyed
1702. I obeyed with all the haste I could, and
dread'd them after the German mode,
in which they commonly appear in
public; but the heads, which were
left to my choice, I dressed in the
antique file.

Let us now take a view of the
Empress, Paraszkowa Fedoroffa.
This Princess is not above thirty
years old, and is pretty bulky, tho'
being tall therewith, it does not
much spoil her. It may be even
said of her that she is handsome, of
a very genteel behaviour, and most
engaging manners; and indeed,
the Czar has a great value for her.
The young Czarian Prince Alexey
Petrovitz often visits her, and the
Princeis her daughters, the eldest
of which, Catharine Ivanoffa, is
but twelve years old; the second,
Anna Ivanoffa, not above ten; and
the youngmist, Paraszkowa Ivanoffa,
begirl, all three of them likely
children. The second has fair hair,
and has a fine complexion; the other
two are agreeable brunettes: The
youngest is a very sprightly child, and
all the three of mild and charming
affability. It would be hard to say
how many civilities I had heaped
upon me in this court while I was
at work upon these pictures. They
never failed in the morning to pre-
fent me with liquors and other ref-
reshments, and often they detained
me to dinner, and always served up
as much flesh as fish, which very
much surprized me, because they
were then in the midst of Lent. In
the day-time they always took care
to supply me with wine and beer;
and indeed I believe no court, es-
specially such a court as this, was
ever so kind to a private man; and
I shall retain a grateful remembrance
of it as long as I live. Imbodened
by all these favours, I preferred to
offer a book of my travels, which I
had got bound on purpose, to his Ma-
jesty in the palace of Probrienska,
not doubting of a favourable accep-
tance, in which I was not at all de-
ceived.

Upon the twenty ninth he went in
boat upon the river of Moska; he
went down against tide, three or four
berths beyond the bridge, pass-
ing by the castle, and came up again
with the tide, at a great rate, three
or four berths on this side of the
same bridge, to which he afterwards
returned, and where Prince Alexan-
der waited for him, attended by some
English and Dutch merchants, whom
he again entertained both with fish
and flesh, notwithstanding Lent and
the Paffion-week, leaving every one
to his liberty, but he and his train
eat nothing but meat.

The month of April began with a
two extraordinary thaw, that in a
very little time there was no ice to
be seen; and the river, upon this
sudden alteration, swelled to a height
it had never been known at in the
memory of man. The mills upon the
Yuga were much damaged, and the
ponds overflowed the low land
behind the houses, and laid it under
water, and the roads and ways were
much in the same condition, which
is what often happens in Spring time,
when the snows begin to melt. The
Slabe of the Germans was in such
a pickle, that the horse went up to
the girth in mud and mire; which
being reported to the Czar, he or-
dered it to be cleaned, that the
dirt that might farther center in this
part should be diverted, and turned
off.

Upon the first, about six in the
morning, a fire broke out at the house
of one of our countrymen in the
Slabe; and the Czar was im-
mediately there to give orders, as
he always is upon the like occasions.
There is a watch every hour of the
night, who never fail to give the
alarm upon all accidents of this na-
ture.

That same day they celebrated the Paschal of
feast of Easter, to the great joy of
the Russians, as well because the de-
fired time was come when Christ
was to rise, as because it put an end
to Lent. You hear the bells all the
night before, all the day itself, and
the next day. They then begin to
give Easter eggs, which continues for a fortnight, a custom as well a-

The author
prefers his travels to
the Czar.

Diversion
on the river of Moska.
1792. mong the great as the small; the old as the young, who mutually make each other presents of them; and the shops are everywhere full of them coloured and boiled; the most common colour of them being a plum blue, though there are also such as are green and white, very near; some are very well painted, and worth two or three rix-dollars; and, in short, many of them have these words upon them, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, Christ is risen. Persons of distinction have them at their houses, and present them to such as come to see them; at the same time kissing them upon the mouth, and saying, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, to which the other answers, WOISTINO WOS CHREST, Te, he is truly risen. The middling sort of people give them to each other in the streets in the manner we have said, and no body refutes them of what sex or condition soever. Servants also carry them into their masters, who make them a present called Pracnik. They brought me thirteen or fourteen very neatly coloured by women; and formerly these presents were made a very serious business, but things have lately been much altered in this respect as well as the rest. The Russians of quality and foreign merchants have indeed presented the congratulatory eggs to his Majesty now on the throne, and have received the same from him, but the custom is over.

Upon the ninth the Czar recreated himself again upon the river Moska. The watermen in his Majesty's shallop, and those in that of the Princess his sister, were in white shirts, after the Dutch fashion, laced down before; and all the foreign merchants had orders, the night before, each of them to get ready two. These boats had two small masts, that they might fail if there was wind. They fell down the river from the country house of the General Velt-Marschal Boris Petrowitsch Czermesoff, opposite to his Majesty's fine house, called Worjoboworo, where he had the day before entertained his Majesty and all his train, consisting of the Czarian Prince, the Princess, his Majesty's sister, attended by three or four Russian ladies, a number of Lords and officers of his household, our Resident, some foreign merchants, and about fifteen or sixteen German Ladies. All the shallops appeared before the house of this Nobleman, being about forty in all, with each ten or twelve oars. The Czar being embarked with all his company, they went down the river at a great rate beyond the bridge, and proceeded to Kolomensko, a country-house belonging to his Majesty, about twenty werists from Moscow by water, though not above seven by land, where they got out about seven o'clock, and met with a most royal supper. The next day they were entertained in the same manner, and had music; and about three in the afternoon they came back to town, some in coaches, some in calashes, and some on horseback. The next day Mr. Brandts entertained his Majesty, attended by the Resident of Holland, and several others, English and Dutch. They were so merry that the Czar stayed till eleven at night, and the rest till two in the morning.

Upon the nineteenth I had orders to carry the young Princesses pictures to the Empress, that she might see them now they were finished. I went with Prince Alexander’s brother-in-law, but this Princess was so much out of order that she was even in bed. However I placed the picture so that she might see them; she seemed to like them, thanked, and presented me with a purse of gold, which she delivered to me with her own hand, and did me the honour to give me to kiss. She then asked me if I should stay long enough in the country to paint them over again; to which having returned an answer, one of the young Princesses gave us brandy in a little gilt cup, then a glass of wine, and so we took our leave. From thence I carried the pictures to the palace of Prince Alexander, where I packed them up, so
1702. as to be fit to send away. The same night the Czar, attended by Prince Alexander, the Patriarch Mokile Mosyjewitsc Solol, keeper of the great seal, the first Minister of State, Count Fedor Alexewitcz Gollowin, the Sieur Gabriel Golofzian, the Knez Gregory Grigorowitsc Ropodanofskie, Bojar, the Knez Tuerjc Tuerjewitcz Frochtbetsky, and the Stolnich, who waits on his Majesty at table, attended by these he set out for Archangel.

Mean time they prepared to clean the ways in the Slabode, which they began to do upon the twenty-sixth; first they threw the dirt up along the sides of the houses, that so it might be carried off, having made choice of two Germans to direct the work, and they acquitted themselves so well of their charge, that at the end of the week the streets and ways were so mended, that people began to walk up and down a little.

A flood. Upon the third of May we had advice from Archangel, that the thaw had swelled the river there to a most extraordinary degree, and that it had done much mischief; that most of the houses near the fort of the new Dwinski had been over-flowed; that the timber and work in his Majesty's dock-yard had been carried off by it; that a ship upon the stocks had been turned topsy-turvy by it; that certain ships at anchor before the town had been driven against the bridge of the palace of the merchants: In short that the water had even mounted up to some of the gardens in the city.

The next day they began to remove the dirt in the Slabode, every body having leave to do it at his own expense, and to carry it into his garden to heighten, or to dispose of it elsewhere, as he should think most necessary and convenient. And the more still to forward this work the German merchants met at the hall of the Lords, a fine house, well seated in a fine garden, where they chose two other surveyors whom they added to the two former; this election was by most voices, each 1702. writing down the name of the person he was for upon a little bit of paper. To these, they added eight others by way of affiliants, and invested them with a sufficient authority.

The ninth, being the festival of St. Nicholas, we had letters from Holland, dated the 28th of the month before, with the doleful News of the Death of his Britannic Majesty, William the III. of glorious memory, after a sickness of but four days. This caused a great commotion among the strangers, but chiefly among our countrymen, who best knew the great worth of that Prince, for whom they put themselves into mourning for six weeks.

Upon the ninetenth, we had advice of a great inundation that had happened in Holland, that it had drowned several villages, and been the death of a number of people. It was added the Allies had carried Keyserwerdt.

Upon the twenty-first, they celebrated the festival of Walla Diemer, the virgin and martyr, Bogarelius, a town near the city, pretend the Virgin Mary to have formerly appeared, and which they keep in remembrance in one of the churches of this city, constantly upon the Thursday before Pentecost, which they call Semite. Some of the clergy go that day early in the morning, to a pit or ditch, and cast into it those that have been murdered, and those that have suffered execution, for crimes. These pits, of which there are three or four about Mos covariance, are filled up every year, and new ones are dug, which was done the night before. That day also they buried the Empress's mother, who died the day before, for they never keep the dead long above ground, which, is what we shall have occasion to dilate on hereafter. This funeral was without any ceremony. The same day, in the morning, a fire broke out at Moscow, and could not be put out before 10 of the clock. Upon the
1702. third of June the like happened at a village not far off, and upon the fourteenth, for the third time at Mos.

About the same time certain Merchants set out for Archangel.

CHAP. VIII.


I went sometimes to take the fresh air in the country with my friends; and one day, in July, as I was in the woods I found certain Goose-berries, they call Cofistenitsa, which have a very pleasant acid. The better sort of people eat them with honey or sugar as we do straw-berries, and make a sort of herbet with them, which is a refreshing liquor for sick folks. The woods about Moscow are full of this fruit, which grows in the shade of the trees throughout all Russia. The word Cofistenitsa signifies a honey goose-berry, and to say the truth a stone it has. Every stalk produces three or four others smaller, by which hang the goose-berries in clusters of twenty together, as may be seen in the next Plate letter A. Their leaves are green winter and summer, and

they
1702. they are ripe in July. There is also another fort of them, called Bruniafr, larger than the former, and grow single like those goose-berries in our Country, which grow 20 or 30 in a cluster. These do not grow above a span from the ground, and others about half as high again. Great quantities of them are every year carried to Moscow, where both strangers and Russians lay in a store of them. These last put them into tubs or casks of water, and there leave them all the summer; they then draw it off and drink it, and very refreshing and pleasant it is, especially if you sweeten it with sugar or honey, and they are also eaten by way of refreshment. The Germans squeeze the juice out of them, which they boil with honey and sugar to a certain consistence, and use it with their roast-meat, which it relishes most admirably. They keep it also in a little cask, and mix it up with the juice of other goose-berries, a liquor wherewith they regale their friends, and is very grateful to the palate. The leaf of thec is like that of the rose, as you may see in letter B, and is an ever green.

Production of these berries. Russia naturally produces roots and greens in abundance. They have cabbages they call Kapusta, which they flower up, and which the poor eat twice a day; cucumbers also, called Ouergersie, which they eat like apples and pears, and are flowered up for the whole year round, even by the most considerable people. This Country in like manner, produces abundance of garlic, which they are very fond of, as may be seen at a distance. They call it Zwiebok. Horse-radish called Green, is there very common, and they make good sauces of it, both for fish and flesh. Turneps they have of several sorts, as also red cabbages, and cally-flowers which strangers have brought among them for some time past. You have asparagus there also and artichokes, but nobody eats them but strangers. And the fame it is with some things that grow under ground: We taught them the culture of the carrot, parsnip, and beet-root, 1702. of which they have now great plenty, as also of fallering and cellery, to them before unknown, but now admired by them. The places about Moscow produce plenty of strawberries, especially of the small sort; the larger they eat in the hand. They have raspberries also, and plenty of a large sort of melon; they are very large, but too watery, not very unlike our cucumbers, and produce no great quantity of seed.

As for fruit-trees, they have many small-nuts, and a few wall-nuts. Their apples are good, and pleasant to look at, as well the sweet as the sour: I have had some of them so transparent you might see the kernels in them. It is otherwise with the pears, which are more scarce, and not so good; besides they are small. The state indifferency may be expressed of their plums and cherries, excepting those in the gardens belonging to the Germans; they are very neat, full of good goose-berries, the country, and many kinds of flowers; but the gardens of the Russians are wild, untameable, and void of ornament. Fountains and jetties are there unknown, though they have water in abundance, and it were easy to have them, and at a very small expense. They begin however, to change in this respect, as well as in that of their buildings, since the Czar has been in our provinces. The Knez Daniel Gregoritz Serebkiest has a garden in the Dutch taste, near his village, called Sietjouw, about 13 werfts from Moscow; it is pretty large, and neat enough; tho' we must not forget he had a gardener from Holland; and indeed it is the finest garden in all the country. Upon the whole there are but few curiosities in Moscow. The great beauty of their country-houses, is in their fish-ponds, which are admirable. You have often two or three of them about a house, spacious and full of fish, which they are very fond of; and when any of their friends come to see them, the first thing they do, is to divert them with nets thrown into the water, and sometimes at a cast
1702. cast they shall catch as much fish as would fill 20 or 30 ditches, and sometimes more.

I shall never forget a party of pleasure I had with some Dutch Ladies, with whom I went to pay a visit to Mr. Strofert, a rich man, who lived at the village of Fackelofs, 15 werfts from Moscow, where he received us very courteously. This gentleman had an handsome wife, a mighty good natured sort of a woman, who did all she could to make us merry. The house was well built, full of fine apartments, and what is remarkable, it had a kitch en after the Dutch manner, a very neat one, where our Ladies dined some dithes of fish after our manner, though we had a good provision of cold meat, beside a score of dithes of fish in the Russian way, with good sauces. After dinner they carried us into a room where hung several ropes by the beams. These were to swing in, the usual pastime of the country; and accordingly the Lady of the house took her turn at it, being swung by two waitingmaids, who were pretty enough; while she was swinging she took a child in her lap, and began to sing with her maids very agreeably, and in a most obliging manner; begging us we would excuse her, alluring us she would have sent for music, had she had time enough. When we had thanked her for her favours, she carried us to the pond, and ordered them to get us some fish to carry fresh home with us. We took leave of our kind entertainers, and got into our coach prodigiously well pleased with them.

On one side of this village I perceived a tree of extraordinary size, with wide spreading branches, finely proportioned with a trunk of three fathoms and a half in circumference; it was a white poplar which the Russians call Asina.

Most of the strangers have gardens behind their houses, or in the country, where they carefully cultivate several sorts of fruits and flowers, which they send for from home. The beds in the gardens are bordered with plank instead of box, and as the country in itself is defective to flowers, those in the woods being very indifferent, we cannot please the Russians better than by giving them nose-guys when they come to see our gardens. There are however some curious people, among the better sort, who have the like, and endeavour to cultivate flowers.

Their manners are remarkable enough. When they pay a visit, and go into a room they do not say a word, but look about for the picture of some saint, wherewith their rooms are always hung; they make three low bows to it, and making several signs of the cross they say Gospodi Pamyru, "Lord have mercy upon me," or Mier Ejsdon Zricwofen "Peace be to this house, and to those that dwell therein," again making signs of the Cross: Then they salute the people of the house, and speak to them. This is a custom they observe even when they go to see strangers, addressing themselves to the first picture they see, for fear they should not pay the first honours to God, as they ought. Their greatest diversion is hawking, and courting with greyhounds; and they are under good regulations as to this matter, the number of dogs every one may keep being fixed according to his rank; and besides these their private diversions are but few. Their musical instruments for the most part, are the harp, the kettle-drum, the bag-pipe, and the hunting-horn. They take great delight in being with mad people, or such as are deformed, or deep in liquor, when they happen to be so to excess. When they entertain their friends, they sit down to table at ten in the morning, and part at one in the afternoon to go home to sleep, and this they do winter and summer. Their manner of writing is very odd; they take the paper in their left hand, and put it upon their knees and write in that posture; there are however some of them who begin to write like us,
and particularly in their offices. Their manner of sewing is also different from ours; they put the thimble upon the first finger, and with that and the thumb, they pull the thread to and fro, directly opposite to our manner. They use their feet also, which are commonly bare, upon this occasion, and will hold their work between their toes, as well as we can between our knees, or by pinning it fast. But I must own I have seen them do otherwise.

In the beginning of July, I went with a friend to Probrigenko, to see three hermits, who had been prisoners there for four or five days. They had lived somewhere about Arhip, upon the banks of a small river that falls into the Danube. I was surprized at the sight of them; the eldest was about seventy, and the other two seemed to be about fifty. The first had lived forty years in that place, in the hollow of a rock, where he had been once taken by the Tartars and sold to the Turks; but making his escape in a little while afterwards, he returned to his hermitage, where he had passed his days ever since. They said he was accused of straying from the Russian faith; but he denied the charge, desiring he might be examined, and declaring he was ready to suffer the greatest torments for the glory of Jesus Christ, though he could neither write nor read. They had nothing on but a dark coarse gown; their hair hung half way down their backs, was never combed, and so covered their faces, there was no feeling them without putting the hair aside; in short they looked like very savages. Upon the breach they had great iron crofs, that weighed four pounds a piece; it hung by two bands of the same metal, which went over their shoulders, fell down behind the back, and were hooked to another of the same metal, which served for a girdle and was joined before beneath the crofs upon the breast. The two others expressed so great a veneration for the old man, that they supported him under the arms, whenever he rose up, as 1702. he did when we came to him. They were to have continued in this prison till his Czarian Majesty should return; they were together, they had no irons on, and sat in an open place upon some mats in a corner, and at some distance from the rest. The prisoners in the same place were most of them chained by the foot, but with so short a range they could hardly sit, and had each of them a keeper within, besides those without, to prevent their escaping. This prison was made of good lofty timbers, small, square, and open at top; tho' there were some covered places in it. I had a great mind to take a second view of these hermits, but was told they were removed to a neighbouring house, and that they were to stay till farther orders.

Towards the end of this month advice came of another victory over the Swedes. The Empress sent for me a little afterwards to paint the young Princess a second time in great and habited as before. I would fain have avoided the task, and humbly besought she would excuse me, pretending I was under a necessity to pursue my travels; but perceiving she was a little out of humour at it, I, for many reasons, resolved to satisfy her, and began the work without loss of time.

Upon the fifth of June the merchants, that were left at Moscow, went from thence to Archangel. We attended them, as the custom is, ten werfs out of the town, to a village upon the Toufa, where there were tents spread under them to pass some time with several Ladies; at length drinking to their good journey we returned to the city as we came.

Some days afterwards, as I was walking in the garden behind our house, with a gun in my hand, as my custom often was, to kill snipes and ducks upon the pond or river Toufa, I perceived a crane in the air over my head: I loaded my piece with a ball, the common bird shot not being enough to kill so large a bird, and had the good luck to bring
1702. him down into the pond. This was remarkable enough, there being but few or none of those birds in this part, though there are those who have them in the country for their pleasure, but they send for them from elsewhere. I had him roasted, but he taint of the fen.

CHAP. IX.

Description of Moscow. Number of the Churches and Monasteries of this City, with many other particulars.

It is now high time to speak a little more particularly concerning the states of his Czarian Majesty, who, with his own mouth, gave me full leave to write what I should think proper on this subject, so I confined myself within the limits of truth.

I shall begin with the city of Moscowa, which I took a view of from the top of one of this Prince's palaces, called Worebyoza, a wooden building of great extent, and two stories high. On the ground-floor it contains 124 rooms, and, I dare say, there may be as many above, and is surrounded with a wooden wall. It stands upon an eminence opposite to the nunnery of Deviisse, on the other side of the river Moska, three versts from Moscowa to the westward. I had some days before been entertained there, together with some others, and some Ladies, by Prince Alexander's brother-in-law. The Czar had pitch'd upon this place as the most proper for my design, and indeed so it was; but the Prince, his Majesty's father, having taken it for the summer, begg'd this Gentleman, the Prince's brother-in-law, to stay with me, to communicate his Majesty's orders to him. She answered, I might come when I would, but desired I would bring but one person with me. I went several days together, and performed my task, with watercolours upon paper, from one of the windows of the palace, as may be observed in No. 12. From hence you had a prospect of every thing in the town and about it, and every particular is carefully distinguished by numeral figures as follows: (1) The new monastery of Deviisse, or of the maids; (2) The quarters of a regiment of foot; (3) Worfruki, or the porter's lodge; (4) A place called Sfichova; (5) The cloister called Nowinskiy Monastir; (6) Sawinskiy Monastir, so called from St. Sawin; (7) The church of Nikolay-na Rospach, dedicated to St. Nicholas, and so called for that reason; (8) The church of Blagooffchena, or the annunciation of the Virgin Mary; (9) Deviisse Monastir Strathmoy, or convent of the maid of suffering; (10) Uletritshkha Bachna, or the tower of the gate of Uletterten; (11) Petrosjeby Monastir, or convent of St. Peter; (12) The palace or castle; (13) Tratska Batschna, the name of the tower of the church without the palace; (14) The church of Saboor, that is the principal church in the city, or where there are most reliques; (15) Iwan Welieck, or the high tower of the castle; (16) Iserkof Philatovna, or the fine church built by Philatowna; (17) The church called Wolnojeva Borofeck; (18) Kadschescheva, or the place of his Majesty's weavers in linen cloth, on one side of the church; (19) The church of St. Nicholas; (20) Glyn Borock, or the church of Elias; (21) Tuganov, a church so called from the place it is built in; (22) Andronof Monastir, or the monastery dedicated to Andronius; (23) The fine conven
vent called Spas-Novoi, or of the new Savior; (24) The palace of the cloister of Krutitsi; (25) Donotskii Manasfiri, or the convent of the Donjake, mother of God; (26) Spasa-Novoj Manasfiri, or the new cloister dedicated to our Savior; (27) The convent of Andrew; (28) The cloister of Daniel, called Danilojski Manasfiri; (29) The river of Moskva; (30) Vorobjowa Gora, or the hill of Sparrow.

Some authors will have it that Moscow was formerly as big again as it is now; but upon due enquiry I find it is now greater than ever it was, and that it never so abounded with stone buildings as it does at present, the number of which increases every day. This city is in 55 degrees 30 minutes of northern latitude, and is indifferently called Moscowa, Moskova, Moscow, and Moscowa. It stands in the southern parts; and nearly in the center of Russia, or of Moscovy, upon the little river of Moskva, whose name it borrows. It is three good leagues in circumference, without the earth-wall, and has twelve gates: (1) That they call Petrovskii Gate, or the gate of Petrovskii, a whole street to it of the same name, and stretches a good way to the Red wall or Kitai. (2) The gate of Mojsi, which has a street of the same name; these two gates which are of stone belong to the stone-wall. The (3) is called the Uspenateka Brajon, and is properly no more than a way leading to the gate of the city of that name, for there is no gate on that side, in the earth-wall, there is only an opening. The (4) Petrovskii, where there is a street the fame which leads to the city. The (5) Towerska, where there is a street the fame. The (6) Mojsi, with a street the fame. The (7) Arbat. The (8) Przysmakroetska, formerly called 't Zorije, with a street also. The (9) Drujaveska, situated the
1702. fame. The (10) Kabanetske, upon the river of Negline. The (11) the same. The (12) Taganje or Tanje, in the same manner.

Having taken this round, I the next day went about the wall of the city itself, called Beloy Gorod, and found it was but an hour and half in circumference. Between each of the gates of the city, just now named, there are two towers upon the walls, and between some three. They are square, but by no means fit for canton, and 400 paces from one another. There are but two gates, between which there are none, where his Majesty has made a garden; so that there is no going quite round by the side of the wall. Moscow is divided into four parts, the first of which is the castle or palace called Viremgerod, upon the river Moska, which flows to the westward, and falls into the Ocean, near the city of Colonna, thirty fix leagues from Moscow, and the Ocean falls into the Wolga, near Nizh-Neigorod, a hundred leagues from Moscow. This castle is surrounded with a high stone wall, flanked with several towers, and the plate above is the fine view of it from the side of the river near the great bridge. It has four gates, the Spakae, where is the dyal, the Nikolshke, Dmokamenen-Morla, the Trifusaite, and the Tanynski, and is surrounded by a dry ditch down to the river. As there is no cannon in this castle, they fire in the arsenal upon the rejoicing days, and plant some in the bazaar or great market-place before the court. This castle, where the Czar never resides, is built with blocks of stone, and for the most part pretty dark; but the Patriarch has his abode there, and the courts of justice, called her Prikaes, are held there. The chief Lords of the court had also some houses there, which his Majesty has laid hands on for himself, excepting one. In the midst of the great court, which is surrounded with buildings, you see a tower called Ivan Welike, or great John, where is the great bell which fell in the fire of 1701, and 1702; split; they pretend it weighs 266666 pounds, of Dutch weight, or 8000 poel, each poel 33 pounds of our country; it was founded in the reign of the great Duke Gudtenon. You go up by 108 steps to the place where it is; these steps are between two towers, and you still see it in the place where it fell; it is of an enormous size, has Russian characters on the borders of it, and three heads on one side, in bas relief. You go up 31 steps higher, and there you have eight other bells in the cross pieces of the windows of this tower, and nine others 30 steps above those, hung in the same manner, some bigger than the other, and some two and two, which you get at by wooden ladders, the one of twenty steps, the other of ten. From the top of this tower you see the city with all possible advantage, and the great number of stone churches it is full of; the domes and steeples of some of which being gilt, have a fine effect when the sun shines out; but there is nothing so magnificent as the church of Saboor. Besides this, there are many fine buildings of stone in this city; where they are now at work upon a new arsenal, a great wooden building, before the gate of St. Nicolas, for the pretenting of theatrical pieces. They have even this year sent for comedians from Danitzick, for Comedians, who played some pieces at the hotel of the deceased General le Fort this winter; and the Russians have already begun to imitate it, having made a little attempt that way, no great matter, in truth, as you may imagine; but this is certain of them, they do not want a genius; besides that they are fond of imitation, let it be good or evil; and when they are made sensible of any fine manners very different from theirs, they frankly confess themselves out done, though, say they, our way is good.

Having thus spoken of this first part of the town, I go on to the second, which nearly covers a fourth part.
It is called the Kastay Gorod, and is in about the midst of the city in general, and surrounded with a high wall of stone, called Kraf-

The red wall.

Great Church.

Market.

Ware-

houses

of

Merchants.

The third division of the Town.

The little River of Neglina.

Fourth part of the City.

First part of Moscow.

word Keiser or Emperor, Zosiar or Czar, and the word Konig or King, Kariot. The Germans are likewise mistaken when they imagine the word Czarist signifies Keiser or Empress; it signifies no more than Queen.

Most of the flabodes or habitations of the Streits, or military men, are in this part, though they were before wont to be within the circuit of the red and white walls; but the Czar has thought fit to dislodge them thence on account of their inoffence and frequent mutinies.

Now with regard to buildings, Houses and Rooms sold at Market.

The houses or rooms are framed of timbers or trees, which you may take to pieces and carry to where you please, and let them up again presently. They sell this sort of building to the value of one or two rubles, each ruble worth five Dutch florins, and the rooms in proportion.

Beyond the earth-wall you see certain suburbs, villages and monas-
teries, which are all round about the town, some of them pretty close and full of people, and some of them are even close to the wall. The flabode of the Germans is not above a mile and half off, and there are many other villages to be seen beyond it.

The churches and monasteries of the city of Moscow, the castle, the other divisions of the city, and near the earth-wall on the outside are monas-
teries, many in number that they reckon no less than 679 of them, including chapels. The structure of these churches is round like an apple, not as some pretend to imitate the imitate of Heaven, but to help the church of the Priest. Some have imagined the Russians attributed a certain virtue to bells, which was some how or other agreeable to God; but they are equally mistaken; they only consecrate them, and ring them upon holydays before divine service.

The monasteries at Moscow and Monastery, about it, have different names; there are two of them in the cattle, the first of men, called Zudoff Monastir,
1702. or the monastery of miracles, and here they intomb the Czarina’s and the Princeesses; the Czars themselves lie in another place to be mentioned hereafter. The other of these monasteries in the castle is for women, and called Wosjenskoi, or of the affection of Jesus Christ. There are some very rich ones too without the stone wall of the city, as Spaskoi Monaster, or that of the Saviour of the world: Simonofskoi, dedicated to a Saint called Andronius: Douiskoi, sacred to the mother of Christ, of whom they tell of miracles performed on the Don or Tanais: Danilof, or that of Daniel: Dewisf, or the great monastery of maidens: Novinskoi, Slatanifenskoi, or that of Chrysfomov: Ivanofskoi, or that of St. John: Rakhibrumskoi, or that of the Incarnation: Warfenskoi, to a certain Saint of that name; Satzaroi, or that of the Reception: Mosjesko, or that of Mofes: Strasfoi, or the terrible: Sawwenskoi, so called from the place where it stands: Stretenskoi, or that of the meeting: Mikolafsio, or that of St. Nicholas, with two others of the same name, making in all twenty two monasteries. The streets of the city are almost all of them laid with timbers, or wooden bridges, and are not passable in summer when it rains, for the mud and dirt there always is upon such occasions. The number of those who keep shop in this city, is so very great, that they must take up with a small place to do their business in, which they shut up when they come home at night, though there are some pretty large streets too: There are also several Prickaes, courts or offices, the chief of which is that of Poffefle, for foreign affairs: the Rosred, where they keep the register of the Russian Nobility, Governors and other Ministers; the Dworets where they keep the accounts of the Czar’s household; the Pofnew, or register-office for all the lands in Russi; and in thong, that of the register of the Streljes or soldiery, whose number has inconsiderably decreased since the last sedition. All these prikaes are built in stone, and are full of writers or clerks, in several apartments that look more like prisons than any thing else; and indeed they are not seldom converted to that use; for there they keep criminals chained in separate places, and even debtors, who walk about there with irons at their heels. The chief clerks have rooms or offices apart, and in some of these prikaes they sit at a long table covered with a red cloth like the hangings of rooms. The registers of the offices of those who had the charge of foreign affairs, is kept in that of Mofes. Thos of the lands of the kingdoms of Cofian and Afracan, and the provinces thereunto annexed, in that they call Kafins d’Wooree. A new office has been erected for the admiralty called Rahme, where they keep a register of the arms. The apothecary is in the same place, as well as the register of the names of the goldsmiths in his Majesty’s service, and who receive their pay there. The registers of the best part of the revenues of the state are in the Bolshayta Kajina. The nobility, and the commissioners or chief clerks, have their trials in thos of Spodniv Woladinetskoi, and Sdunoi Moshefskoj. The duties of the seals are paid into that of Petfordjor, and are there register’d. All the religious houses are subject to the prikaes of the monasteries, and spiritual causes are adjudged in that of the patriarch, (viz.) all cases of marriage, inheritances, arbitrations, disputes in families, adulteries and the like. That of Ramno is the office for registering of the criminals or drivers, employed every year in his Majesty’s service. When I was at Moscow, these eighteen prikaes were all kept in the castle, but without there were also several others, as that of Pufkbarf; for the registering of canon; the Sibierf for the affair of Siberia; the Rashoina, where they try for murders and other crimes. The head of these prikaes is generally one of the chief favorites, and one of the first officers of State, whom
1702. whom the Czar invests with this dignity by favour, or in reward for services. It is a step also towards the very highest employments, which are those of Boyard, or Counsellors of state, who cannot more aptly be compared than with the Grandees of Spain, and the Peers of France; those of Olsnitscher, who are those that wait on the Czar when he goes out; of the Doemiue Divorce, or noble Counsellors; of the Doemiue Diack, or Secretaries of the Council; of the Stathiers, or Officers of his Majesty's table; of the Wores, or Officers of the court; and of the Schiffl, an office somewhat inferior. The first of the Nobility, and those who have the honour to be related to the Czarina, are raised to be Spankicks, or Gentlemen of the bedchamber: After these follow the rewarders, the carvers, the cup-bearers, and so on. His Majesty, since his return from the Low-Countries, has created an order of Knighthood under the patronage of St. Andrew the Apostle, where with he has already nominated five Gentlemen. The Count Feodor Alexeewitz Gallouin, Boyard, first Ministir of State, and high Admiral; Hetman, the great General of the Cossacks; Mr. Prititz, Embassador extraordinary from the King of Prussia; the General Velt-marshial Boris, and Petrovitz Czeremetof; to these he made a present of the crofs of St. Andrew, with the image of that Saint, set in diamonds. To the grandeur of this court we may add, that the Prince is a Monarch absolute over all his subjacts, that his will is the law, that he may dispose of the lives and possessions of all his people from the lowest to the highest; in short, that his power extends itself also to things sacred, and that he may model the divine service, just as the fancy takes him, which is what other crow'd heads forbear to meddle with, for fear of provoking the clergy.

Having thus spoken of the rewards bestowed upon merit, and those who acquit themselves handomely of their duty, either in peace or in war, and have the administration of public affairs, we will now take 1702; some notice of the punishments inflicted on crimes. The most severe and dreadful is that of the flames; Burning, to which purpose they erect a little square wooden house, which they load with straw within and without; in this the criminal is shut up when his sentence is pronounced, they then apply the fire, and the unhappy party is prettily flitted and reduced to ashes. They behead with an ax upon a block, and hang as elsewhere. They also bury alive up to the shoulders, as has already been noted. Now all these executions are performed with such silence, that when they happen at one end of the town, the other knows nothing of the matter. As for those who are judged to be not quite worthy of death, they punish them with the knob, a great leather thong or whip with which they strike so furiously upon the bare back, as sometimes to put an end to life. Their way of giving this punishment is pretty odd; for the executioner pitching upon the man who seems to be the strongest and most robust of the offenders by, mounts the criminal upon his back, with his arms over the man's shoulders, and meeting upon his breast: he then ties his feet, and one of his affiants taking him by the hair of the head, he gives him the number of strokes he is doomed to have, which when well applied, never fail to take off the skin. Drubbing, with a stick is for lesser crimes; they in this case lay the criminal flat upon his belly, one foot upon his head, and another upon his heels, while the sentence is executed. When they torture for confession, they hang the criminal up, and strike him with the aforefaid knob, and then draw a red hot iron over the wounds he has received: but the most cruel of all tortures is when they shave the crown of the head, and drop cold water upon it. The punishment of infolvent debtors, or of such as can not satisfy their creditors is thus; they expose them without the Prikaes, and at several times give them
1702, them three strokes of a cudgel on the side of the legs. Tho' those who are indebted to the amount of 100 rubles, or 50 florins, are served in this manner every day for a month together, and those whose debts fall short of that sum, are punished in proportion. And when after all this, they cannot clear themselves, they make an appraisement of all they have, and deliver it to the creditors; and in short, if this will not do, they deliver up them, their wives, and children, to the creditors to make them amends by service; for which service they wipe off but five rubles a year for a man, and the half of it for a woman, because they must both feed and cloath them; and thus it is that they must remain in the state of service till the last penny is paid.

They say Moscov is in the center and best part of Muscovy, 120 leagues from the frontiers all round; 86 from those of Poland, and 460 from the empire of Persia, or the town of Tarka, which is under the Muscovite on this side the Caspian, allowing each league to be equal to an hour. From Moscov also to the last frontier place belonging to the Czar in Siberia, or to the river of Argom, which divides the dominions of this Prince from those of the Cham of China, 7600 versts, or 1320 leagues, and from thence to Pekin, the capital of China, 2500 versts, as I have been told by the Sieur Everhard Libants, who travelled this journey in quality of Envoy from Russia. As for Muscovy in general, what the Latins call Russia, Nigra, or Rubra, Black or Red Russia, and sometimes the Lesser Russia, that is in the southern parts of Poland between Polesia, Polonia, Podolia, Transylvania and Hungary; while Russia is to the northward of the Red, and is the largest country in Europe, lying between the Jew sea, the river of Jazick, the Caspian sea, a part of the Volga, the Crim or Preceptian Tarytary, the Nieper or Beryfihenes, the great Dutchy of Lithuania, Livonia, Eshbonia, In-
1702. Ly of the Zerkafis, (3) of that of
the Galitjen, (1) of the Odeskoy,
(3) of the Ploreskoy, (5) of the
Solliekow, (3) of the Wredofey, (3)
of the Czeremot, (1) of the Dolgo-
ruki, (1) of the Bondanofski, (1) of
the Trokofy, (1) of the Repum, (1)
of the Woelskoy, (1) of the Kofof-
skoy, (1) of the Berantenskoy, (1)
of the Tserbatof, (2) of the Galwains,
(1) of the Schey, (2) of the Bakur-
line, (1) of the Pushkin, (1) of the
Chikoff, (1) of the Stucekoff, (1)
of the Sbakan, (2) of the Mijelafskoj,
(2) of the Narukam, (1) of the Sokaf-
mus, (1) of the Tschejoff, (1) of theMa-
tunskim. These serve the Czar in his
councils, and have the public Admi-
nistration of affairs.

The troops of this Prince commonly
keeps on foot amount to 40 or 50
thousand, besides some regiments of
horse and lances, who are paid out
of the royal treasurers, and receive an
annual stipend in money, in corn and
in other necessaries. In times of
war they suumon the whole body
of the Russian Nobility, a potent
body, which they compute at 200000,
including their servants, many of
these Gentlemen coming attended
with 10, and others with 20 persons,
and the less considerabable with two
or three.

The principal revenues of Russia,
which have been already mentioned,
arise from the skins and furs, corn,
leather, ashes, hemp, mats, tar,
tallow and the like. A great sum
arises also from the Kabaki, which
are houses belonging to the Czar,
and where they sell brandy, beer,
and mead. The customs inward a-
mount also to a considerable deal.
From Archangel they transport into
foreign countries Caviar, and ising-
las, which is the bladder of the
sturgeon, and is taken in quantities
at Afracan and other places on the
Volga. This is this is used

for the refining down of wine, and 1702.

makes a good glue. It is also of

use in dying.

I think it may not be amiss here to Length of
give you the length of the days and
nights in Russia. The equinox falls
out upon the eighth of September, and
makes the days and nights equal.
Upon the twenty fourth the day is
11 hours and the night 13. Upon
the tenth of October the day is 10
hours and the night 14. Upon the
twenty sixth the day is 9 hours and
the night 15. Upon the eleventh
of November the day is 8 hours and
the night 16. Upon the twenty se-
venth the day is 7 hours and the
night 17. Upon the twelfth of De-
ember the days begin to lengthen.
Upon the first of January the day is
8 hours and the night 16. Upon
the seventeenth the day is 9 hours
and the night 15. Upon the second
of February the day is 10 hours
and the night 14. Upon the eighteenth
the day is 11 hours and the night
13. Upon the sixth of March the
vernial equinox makes the day and
night equal. Upon the twenty se-
cond the day is 13 hours and the
night 11. Upon the sixth of April
the day is 14 hours and the night
10. Upon the twenty third the day
is 15 hours and the night 9. Upon
the first of May the day is 16 hours
and the night 8. Upon the twenty
fifth the day is 17 hours and the
night 7. Upon the twelfth of June
the days begin to shorten. Upon the
sixth of July the day is 16 hours
and the night 8. Upon the twenty
second the day is 15 hours and the
night 9. Upon the first of August
the day is 14 hours and the night
10. Upon the twenty third the day
is 13 hours and the night 11. Then
comes the autumnal equinox and
makes the day and night equal
again.
Change of Fashions and Manners in Russia. Triumphal Archers raised at Moscow. The Czar's Triumphant Entry for the taking of Notteburgh.

TIME has wrought great changes in this Empire, and especially since the Czar's return from his travels. He immediately altered the fashion of dresses, as well with regard to the men as to the women, and particularly with regard to those who had dependance on the Court, or enjoyed any office there, not excepting one soul, not even children; and the Russian merchants and others dressed so as not to be distinguished from the people of our country. The same year an order was published, forbidding all Russians to appear out of doors, without a coat of the Polish fashion, or being dressed after our manner. The servants to strangers were the first that were compelled to this; for if they did not comply, they were sure to be taken from behind the fedges, and pay a fine before they had their liberty again; but this did not affect the peasants and people in the country. As this great alteration may in time blot out the remembrance of the ancient dress of the country, I paint the dress of the Ladies upon canvass, and have given a side view of it, that you may the better distinguish the ornaments behind the head. This you have in Fig. 13, and the whole figure in Fig. 14.

It must be observed that to have the hair uncovered is the sign of a maid; it would be a kind of infamy for a married woman not to have hers covered. These have a fur cap upon the head, flat at top, and round at bottom, pointed round in form of a crown and enriched with precious stones as well at top as bottom. It is a little longer behind than before, and has two points; this cap is called Tryggé.

The ornament upon the head of the young Ladies here represented is also in form of a crown, or diadem rather, set off with pearls, and diamonds, and called Perewaste. Some tye a ribbon to it, which they call Swirtske; what they wear about their neck Ofareye, and the earrings Serge. The upper garment lined with furs, is called Soche, the garment beneath Telegree or Serra-tamen, the thift Rouchitz; the sleeves of which are so wide and so plaited that they take up sixteen or seventeen ells of cloth. The bracelets or ornaments for the arms, which fall upon their hands, are called Sarabavie. Their stockings, which are not to tye up, Zelik; and their slippers, which are either red or yellow, with very high and sharp heels, Basnakie.

Besides this alteration in dress the Russians were obliged to have the face off all but the upper lip, and those about the court, as well as some others, do not even spare that. That this order might be executed to the utmost, there were persons employed to cut off the beards of all manner of persons without distinction; this seemed so very fierce to some that they offered to dazzle the eyes of those who had this extraordinary omission, with money; but to no purpose, for they immediately met with others who would give them no quarter. And this was even done at the Czar's table, and every where else, to people even of the very first quality; nor it is to be conceived what grief it caused; many there were who could not be comforted for the loss of their beards; their beards which they had worn so long, and looked on as marks of honour and distinction; numbers there were who would
1702. would have given any thing in the world to have been free from the power of this destructive law.

Alterations in dress however have not been so very extraordinary among the women, excepting among the higher sort, who dress just as the women do with us.

But to effect all this thoroughly at the beginning it was necessary to fend for hats, shoes, and the like, from beyond sea; but as this was both inconvenient and chargeable, the Russians began to imitate these things, ill enough, as you may believe in the beginning; but they did better afterwards when they had once got workmen from abroad to instruct them a little; for as we have already said, they are good at imitation, and love to learn.

Good regulations were also made concerning beggars, who used to be about the streets in such numbers, both men and women, that you was also surrounded with them if you but stepped into a shop to buy any thing at Moscow. But what is worse thieves used to mix with them, to have the opportunity of cutting a purse or picking a pocket, things which a Russian conscience knows how to digest with great ease. The Czar resolving to put a stop to these things ordered that no beggar should presume to ask for alms in the streets, and that no one should presume to give them any thing, under a forfeiture of five rubles or 25 florins. But that the poor might have some subsistence, hospitals were erected for them not far from each church as well within as without Moscow, which the Czar endowed with an annual income. And thus were people delivered from a terrible inconvenience; for there was no fearing out of a church without being Persecuted by these wretches from one end of the street to the other. And it produced still another good effect, for many of these beggars thought them of working for fear of being locked up in an hospital; for beggars naturally hate work, nor can induce to have begging thought shameful; which just puts me in mind of a story which I must tell.

There came one day a young man, a story of a young beggar to the house where I lodged, to ask the charity of a merchant who happened to lodge there. The merchant asked him why he did not rather chuse to work for his bread, or get into some service. The young beggar answered he did not know how to work, having never been taught to do any thing, and that as for going to service there was nobody would take him. The merchant upon this observing him to have a good honest face, asked him if he would come and serve him, if he would do it with diligence, and if he could get any body to answer for his fidelity; for it is quite necessary, and very common in this country, to require security from servants, for if you have it not, you have no remedy to resort to if you are robbed. The poor lad answered he knew nobody that would be bound for him but God, whom he called to witness that he would serve him honestly. The merchant was satisfied with this, took him into his service, and he proved a faithful servant; but it happening that the young fellow grew a little too great with a servant maids, and he getting her with child, it was no sooner confirmed to her, than she told him of it, and since he had brought her to shame, he was seriously advised to marry her. He had no great mind to this, because she was an overmatch for him in years, but being urged to keep his promise with her, and others asking him if he thought to justify his conduct with his security, [meaning God] he confessed he should be put to it so to do, and promised to marry the woman. He did so, and began a little trade with what he had saved in his master's service, and he thrived so well that he keeps now one of the top woollen-draper shops in Moscow, and is reckoned to be worth above 30,000 livres. His wife is still with him and they live very well together; but as she is upwards of sixty and the children he had of her are dead, he
1702. he would fain persuade her to let him maintain her in a convent, that so he might have the propagation and enjoyment of a new family, which he might without any infringement of the laws of Russia, but he has not as yet been able to prevail on her.

These alterations have even affected the publick offices, where all writings are now performed after our manner. The Czar has this much at heart, as well as every thing else that may be for the good, welfare and security of the state, where nothing is done without his participation, every thing goes through his hands. He has with extreme diligence already fortified Novogoreod, Plakovo, Ajph, Smolensko, Kirof, and Archangel; and notwithstanding the vast expense of all this, he has been so good a manager that he has still 300,000 rubles in his coffers; this he told me himself, and I had it afterwards from several others; and that after having provided for all the expenses of the war, for the building of ships, and all the other exigences of the state. It is true indeed with regard to the building of ships, that is at the publick expense, every thousand of the peasants being obliged to bring in all that is necessary for building of a ship, and every thing relating thereto. These peasants are either the vassals of this Prince or of some Lords, or gentlemen, or monasteries, which last have great numbers of them, and particularly that of Trojitz, as has already been said.

And thus the subjects of this Prince have great reason to pray to God to preserve him, and to bless his reign, that they may draw nearer and nearer to the knowledge of such things as may be of use and benefit to them. And great reason they have to hope they shall, for the young Heir to this Empire, now is but 14 years old, who, young as he is, walks already in the footsteps of his father, and gives great signs of understanding and genius; he takes notice of every thing, is very inquisitive, and is of a fine disposition; nor is the Czar unmindful to cultivate all this in him, taking a most particular care of his education, and, among other points, making him learn Latin and German.

Upon the fourteenth of September, Swedish 800 Swedfih prisoners, men, women and children, were brought into this city, and many of them were sold for 3 or 4 florins a head, soon after they raised the price to 20 or 30. This encouraged the strangers to buy some of them, to the great good luck of these poor people, it being their intention to keep them no longer than the war lasted, and then to give them their liberty. The Russians also bought several, but miserable was the lot of those who fell into the hands of the Tartars, who carried them off into slavery, a most deplorable circumstance.

Upon the twentieth, news was brought that Notteburgh had been taken by his Majesty's arms, and that the place had surrendered upon certain conditions, after it had sustained three assualts, and upon the twenty third they sung Te Deum upon this occasion.

Towards the end of this month it began to snow, and in the begining of October it froze, but nothing came of it, it rained soon after, as it had to our great inconvenience for a long while before.

A great number of merchantmen ships at Archangel; they reckoned no les than 154, viz. 66 Englishmen, under the convoy of 4 men of war, as many Dutchmen, under the convoy of three, 16 Hamburgers, 4 Danes, and one Bremener. The truth is there were several small ships among the English, whose cargo was no great matter.

In the middle of November the river of Tusa was frozen over behind our flabode, and several of the Dutch and some of the Russians skated over it, no snow having as yet fallen. I had got a hand-sledge made after the manner of our country, and I took this opportunity to divert a young Lady upon the ice with it, a fight
1702. a fight they had never seen before.

This was the second time I had had skates on for 32 years before, and I found a man does not easily forget what he has once well learned; but this was a short-lived diversion, snow falling the next day.

An offset burn.

Upon the twenty-fourth, the Privates or office of Poliske, in the castle, was reduced to ashes, and caused a great confederation.

In the beginning of December, word came that the Czar was arrived at the town of Peschik, 90 wersts from Moscow; from thence he came to Salnikof, a country-house belonging to Prince Lopreiis, his uncle, 30 wersts from this capital, from thence to Nikolskies at the house of the Knez Mihala Sakstis Serkask, Governor of Siberia, but 7 wersts from this city.

Every thing was then got ready for his Majesty's entry; and most of the foreign merchants had orders to provide themselves with a greater number of horses than usual, with a servant, dressed in the German fashion, to conduct the artillery that had been taken from the Swedes. The foreign Ministers, our Resident, and the English Consul, and some of the merchants, went the next day to pay their compliments to the Czar at Nikolskies, and returned the next day in the morning, which was the fourth, and the day this Prince was to make his entry. To this purpose there had been prepared triumphal arches of wood in the street of Messiners, the first in the red-wall opposite to the Greek monastery, near the printing-house, and the house of the Velts-Marshall Czerepetof, the second in the white-wall, near the admiralty office, about 400 paces from the other. The streets and the fields were full of people to see this solemnity, and I crossed the town, and went out of it to see the beginning of the fight. When I came I found there was a stop, to put things in order, and that the Czar was busy about it in person, and being on foot I drew near to him to pay him my compliments and congratulate him upon his return: He thanked me, and embraced me, and seemed to be pleased I was still in his dominions. He then took me by the hand and told me, He would show me some ships colours, and that he gave me leave to draw whatever I would. While I was so doing, a certain Russian Lord, attended by some servants, came and took the paper out of my hand, and called a German officer to know what I was about; but when he understood I was at work by the order of the Czar, he gave it me back again, and I made an end of my work, which it bad been impossible for me to have done without his Majesty's leave.

This entry was made in the following order; first came the regiment of guards confining of 800 men, and commanded by Colonel de Riddar, a German by birth. One half of this body was clothed in scarlet, in the German manner, the other in the Russian, because there had not been time enough to finish their new cloaths. The Swedish prisoners as well soldiers as peasants walked between two, three abreast, and were divided into seven bands, each of about 80 or 84 persons, making in all about 530 men, between three companies of soldiers. After these came two fine led-horses, and a company of granadiers in green lined with red, in the German fashion, except that they had bear-skin caps instead of hats; these were the first granadier-guards, and after these came six halberdiers, five haut-boys and six officers. Then came the royal regiment of Probronska, 400 of them new clothed after the German manner, in green lined with red and white-laced hats; with the Czar and Prince Alexander at the head of them, preceded by nine German fleters, and some fine led-horses. This regiment was followed by a party of that of Semmokhie, his Majesty's guards also, in blue lined with red, and after these came the colours taken from the Swedes. First two standards followed by a great

Vol. I.
1702. A great flag which had been displayed upon the castle of Notsburgh, carried by four soldiers; and then six ships colours, and 25 ensigns, blue, green, yellow and red, each carried by two soldiers. Most of these ensigns had two golden lyons, and a crown at top. After these came 40 pieces of cannon, some drawn by four, some by six horses of a colour, four great mortars, 15 great brass field-pieces little and big, then another mortar, and then very long and heavy brass cannon, some drawn by six and some by eight horses. After these came a great chef of kitchen utensils, ten fenders with fire-arms, three drums, and another fender with smiths-tools, and a great pair of bellows. Then came the officers that were prisoners, about forty in number, walking each of them between two soldiers, and then some fenders with the sick and wounded, followed by some of the Russian soldiers, closed up the march. It was one in the afternoon when they entered the city; and having passed the gate of Tweenske which is to the northward, they advanced up to the first triumphal arch, and the regiment of guards went through, and here the Czar halted a good quarter of an hour, to refresh himself and receive the congratulations of the clergy. As the street here was pretty broad the triumphal piece erected was composed of three arches, a large one in the middle, and a small one on each side, and was so covered with tapestry, pictures, figures and devices that there was no seeing the wooden work, with a balcony at the top where were eight young musicians, two and two, most sumptuously dressed. The great arch was crowned with an eagle and trophies of colours and the like; and the houses near it were also hung with carpets, tapestry, and pictures; the balconies were full of streamers, musicians and all sorts of instruments accompanied by an organ, which made most delightful harmony. The streets were strewn with green branches and other verdure in this place, where was a great number of the Nobility. The Princefs, his Majesty's sister, the Czarina and the Princefses her daughters, attended by a great number of Russian and foreign Ladies were a little beyond, at the house of the Sieur Isak of Woffielo Feudery, to see the show. The Czar having saluted the Princefses, advanced on to the second arch, adorned like the first; and having in this order marched through the city, he went out at the gate of Meesniejte, and proceeded towards the flabode of the Germans, where being arrived, the Dutch Resident made him an offer of wine, but he chose beer, and I had the honour to present him a glass of it. He drank but a little of it, and went on to Probrosenvka; but night coming upon him, as he was going out of the flabode, he mounted his horse and there was an end of the show. Those there flocked together an unspeakable number of the people upon this occasion, there happened no mischief that I know of; every thing went on orderly and quietly; to the satisfaction of every body, tho' the streets were full of scaffolds.

CHAP.
CHAP. XI.

Consecration of the Palace of Ismeelhoff, Presents carried thither. A French Surgeon killed. Customs with regard to Births, Funerals and Marriages, even among the Foreigners.

Upon the twelfth of this month the Czar came unexpectedly to dine, at ten in the morning, with the Sieur Lapé, just arrived from Arcbangel. I went, without knowing his Majesty was there, to with that merchant joy of his return: the Czar had only two Russian Noblemen with him, and having had a sight of me, he ordered me in to him, and I took the opportunity to present him with some verses I had made upon the taking of Notteburg, desiring him to excuse their Imperfections, in consideration I was no poet, and to look on them only as the effects of my zeal for his honour, and joy for his victories. He received them very graciously, made me fit down, and ordered me to give the Sieur Lapé an account of his entry, which I did to his full satisfaction, and having drank some bumpers to a continuation of successes, his Majesty went away at two in the afternoon.

Upon the nineteenth I had orders from the Empress to carry the young Princesse pictures, I had painted a second time, to the palace of Ismeelhoff. They went from Moscov just at the instant I did, and had but just stepped out of the coach when I came. The Empress's brother and some priests waited to introduce them in procession into the palace, which having fallen to ruin was rebuilt this summer; and this was the day it was to be consecrated before the court came to live in it. My orders were to flop in the first apartments, where I found several Ladies of the Court. The floor was covered with hay, and on the right hand there was a large table on which were both small and great loaves, upon some of which there was an handful of salt, and on others a silver salt-feller full. It is the custom of this country that the relations and friends of such as are going to live in a new house, should, in some sort, consecrate it with salt, and that for several days together; which they mean also as a token of the prosperity they with the parties, and that they may never want the necessaries of life: And even those that remove from one house to another, leave hay and bread upon the ground of the house they go out of, to express the blessings they wish on those who are to come to live in it after them.

The rooms of the apartment where I stopped were hung, above the doors and windows, with 17 different pictures in the Greek manner, representing their principal saints, whom they commonly have in the first room, nor are they wanting in others. The Empress's brother was at the end of this room, accompanied by some priests standing with books before them, and singing of hymns; and while they were about this, which lasted a good hour and a half, her Imperial Majesty was in an inner apartment next but one; and the ceremony being over I was carried into another room where this Princess came, and having an interpreter by my side, I wished her all sorts of prosperity. Empress She took me by the hand and said, She would shew me some other apartments, a new person of her high rank. She then ordered one of her maids to fill me out a little gold cup of brandy, which
which she presented to herself, and then did me the honour to give me her hand to kiss, as did also the three young Princesesses then present, after which she dismissed me with orders to come again in three days time.

As the Christmas Holydays were coming on, I took the liberty to present the Empress with a picture I had drawn of the birth of Christ, together with some beads I had brought from Jerusalem, and prayed her to accept of them instead of bread and salt. She seemed to be very much pleased at this, and thanking me, made me a present in her turn; and as I had also brought beads for the young Princesesses, she ordered me to carry them to them myself. I did so, and finding them at table in another room, and having made them my present, I returned again to the Empress; but one of them followed me to her mother, and presented me with a small cup of brandy, and then gave me a great glass of wine; upon which I withdrew, with returns of my most humble thanks.

Upon the twenty fifth the Russians celebrated the feast of Christmas, according to their rites, and the Czar began his round of visits to his friends as he had done the year before.

We had very wet weather till the end of the year, which had made the ways so bad, that the merchants and others from Archangel and other places, were five or six days longer upon the roads than usual; such a winter had not been known for many years before. But upon the beginning of January, the weather changed all at once, it cleared up, and began to freeze in good earnest. The first day of this year was taken up in preparing for a fire-work to be played for the taking of Notteburgh; it was upon the side of the river Maka, behind the castle, in a place called the royal mead, the grass or hay of which is according to ancient custom, carried upon a certain day into the churchers. This fire-work did not differ from the former in any thing but the figures and devices.

The next day the Czar came to Mr. Brants, attended by 200 persons, 1703, who were all entertained in a room below, with the sound of trumpets and kettle-drums. Here, among other things, was shewn a sword of prodigious size, five foot and half long, and three inches and half broad in the sheath; it was well proportioned, and weighed 30 pounds. I desired the person who gave it to me, to draw it, and found it was waved on each side; the blade however was pretty light, and serviceable, in proportion to the hilt. When it was in the scabbard and the point upon the ground, it was as much as a man of good strength could do to poise it with one hand; but three of us, one after the other, did it, without flattering the gentleman it belonged to, who was the son of the late Governor of Astrakan, called Petrovski, who was put to death by the Strelitz or soldiers, who threw him down from the top of a tower. This son of his was but a child when this happened; and yet they were so cruel as to hang him up by the heels, and suffer him to hang for 48 hours together, which so spoiled his feet that it made him a cripple, and obliged him to have shoes of a particular make, and crutches to enable him to walk.

Towards the evening there appeared one to represent the Patriarch, habited in a pontifical mantle, and singing to the sound of a bell. This was a signal to depart, and the Czar immediately went his way, with all his train to make an end of his visits. Upon the sixt of this month they kept the Twelfth-day in Twelfth-month the manner they had the year before, but it is to be observed there were not so many churchmen as before, nor so great a number of the fine caps or mitres we mentioned; so that there is reason to believe time will make some notable changes in this anniversary solemnity. Upon the twentieth the Czar sent an order to the chief of the Russian Noblemen, Ladies and others to the number of 300, to be at Ismeleboff at nine in the morning: The same had been commu-
1703. communicatfed to the foreign ministers, merchants, and their wives; so that there was an appearance of about 500 persons, and it had been expressly recommended to every body to come with a present for the Czarina to be given her at the time of congratulation. These presents consist usually in curious toys of gold and silver, pretty medals, and such like things, according to the abilities and inclinations of the donor; but before they are presented, they are registered with the name of each person, and then they were delivered to one of the young Princesses, who in return offered her hands to kids. Most of the Lords and Ladies of the country withdrew immediately, but the rest were detained to dinner, after which there was dancing and diversion till midnight.

An ugly accident.

That same night there happened an ugly accident at the wedding of Captain Sachts, where two Surgeons dancing with their wives, two officers who were just come in, would have taken them to dance with them. Words upon this arose, and one of the officers in the service of the Czar, called Bodan, ran his sword through the body of one of the Surgeons, called Gurbe, a Frenchman, who had nothing to defend himself, and fell down dead on the spot. The other, whose name was Hoty, was at the same time wounded by another officer, whose name was Captain Saks; perceiving himself wounded, he stopped his wound with his Finger, and got away, but the Captain pursuing him, he was obliged to come into the house, and in a fainting fit fell down by the side of his dead companion, but one of his friendsucking the blood out of the wound, he came to himself again. These officers had attack'd them once before, but one of the Surgeons getting hold of a sword, and the other laying hands on a chair, drove them out of the room; enraged at which, they returned to the charge, and before the whole company committed the fact here related. It is not hard to conceive what a terrible disorder and conformation this murderous violence caused, by the favour whereof the perpetrators of it made their escape for the present, tho' they were taken two days afterwards. Their Colonel who was present when they did this, by good words prevailed on his servant to take the crime upon himself, and to say it was he who committed the murder, promises him not only a pardon, but to make him an Ensign; and the innocent man prevailed on by this means, gave out that he was the criminal: but he was no sooner put to the question by torture, than he disowned the whole, and named the assaifin, tho' too late, as shall be observed in a proper place.

The Czar, at this time, resolved upon a tour to Veronos, attended by some Russian Noblemen, and some Germans whom he ordered to be ready for the journey. Upon the twenty fifth, I received the same order by the Sieur Heinicus, who told me his Majesty was desirous I should see that place, the ships there, and whatever else was remarkable.

But it is now time to talk of the marriage of the Boyar, Ivan Feodorovitz Goloevin, or John Theodore the son of Count Goloevin, first Minister of State, with the Lady Borisovitz Czermotof, the Daughter of Boris Theodore, Velt-marshall of Czermotof, who was employ'd by his Czararian Majesty on several Embassies, and particularly to the Court of Vienna, where he acquired a very great reputation, and received the order of Malta.

As there is something remarkable in this wedding, and as it was celebrated between two of the most considerable personages of the state, I will here give a particular account of it, which was upon the twenty eighth of this month in the palace of the Boyar Feodor Alexeowicz Goloevin, which was fitted upon this occasion. This is an handsome wooden edifice, well designed according to the rules of art, full of fine apartments above and below, and upon an eminence, a little beyond the flabode of the

Vol. I.
1703. German, on the other side of the river Touja. In the great Salon were several tables placed in good order, with music, and in another apartment was a table for the Czar's sister, the Empress and the three young Princesses; for several Ladies of the Court, and for the Lords and Ladies of the country who were apart; nor was there wanting a great crowd of spectators. About eleven o'clock the bridegroom appeared alone in the chamber of audience, on the left hand, where he received the congratulations of the Nobility, whom he treated with distilled liquors. About noon they came and acquainted him it was time to repair to the place where he was to be married, and he was conducted with trumpets and kettle drums, that waited for him at the door, to a small chappel in the palace, but a few steps off. It would be no easy matter to display all the pomp of this festival wherein the Czar condescended to officiate as Marshal, and was every where. As soon as the bridegroom got into the chappel, the bride was sent for; she had passed the night before at the house of the late Mr. Houtman, in the fabrobe of the German, opposite to the Dutch church, and had by the Czar's order been some time delivered up to the Velt-marshall, the bride's father. All the Russian and German Ladies invited to this wedding, repaired thither also to wait on this Lady, who was conducted to the place in the following order. The first that appeared was a ketre drummer upon a white horse, followed by five trumpets mounted upon the same; then 16 stewards of the household, as it were, chosen from among the Russians and the strangers; then the Czar himself, in a fine coach made in Holland, and six dapple gray horses. After him, five empty coaches and six; then a calash and six for the bride, and some other Ladies. In the midst of this, the Princess, his Majesty's sister, the Czarina, and the three young Princesses came to the nuptial palace in coaches without wheels, after the manner of fedges, each in one, and each drawn by six horses; besides a great number of Ladies of the court. In about half an hour the bride herself appeared with the Ladies of her train, who had got into the empty coaches. When got out at the palace, she was received by two Noblemen who were to be her fathers, the one a Russian, the other Count Konigegg, Envoy from Poland, who taking her by the hand, conducted her into the chappel, and placed her on one side of the bridegroom. She was followed by the Czar's sister, the young Princesses, and other Ladies of the court, who flopped in the entrance of the chappel; and some Russian and foreign Ladies ranged themselves on the sides without, the chappel being so small it could not hold above ten or a dozen persons; so that those who went in, were only the Czar, the Czarina, Prince, the Bride and Bridegroom, the two Fathers, and two or three other Russian Noblemen; but as I was very dilatory to behold this solemnity, I got behind the bridegroom. who was richly clothed, after the German fashion, as well as his bride, who was in white satin wrought with gold, with her head-dress festooned with diamonds; and behind her hung a great treas of hair, under her fontange, a fashion which has been long in use with the German, and upon her head she had a small crown with diamonds. When the ceremony opened, the priest came and stood between the couple, and began to read in a book, held in his hand, in consequence of which, the bridegroom put a ring on a finger of the bride's. Then the priest took two crowns joined together, of silver gilt, which he made them kiss, and then put upon their heads. After his he began to read again, and the couple gave their right hands to each other, and in that manner went three times round the chappel. The priest then took a glass of red wine, and made the new married pair drink of it, which when they had done, they returned it to him, who gave it to thofe
those who officiated near him. The Czar who was walking about all the time, with a marshal's staff in his hand, perceiving the priest was going to his book again, commanded him to cut his work short, and a minute afterwards he pronounced the nuptial benediction. His Majesty then ordered the bridegroom to kiss his bride, which she refused to let him, till the Czar repeated his command, and then she obey'd. The ceremony over, they went to the bridal hall. During the time of the ceremony the Czarina and the Ladies of the court were at the windows opposite to the chappel. In a little time they sat down to table, the bridegroom among the men, and the bride among the women, at the common table in the great hall. The rejoicings continued for three days together, which were spent in dancing, and all kinds of merriment. The third day they reaped the gentlemen who had appeared in the character of stewards. This wedding was very different from the old way of celebration, which it were needless for me to speak of, so many having done it already.

Having thus sufficiently dilated on the head of marriages, I pass on to the customs at births and burials among this people:

As soon as ever a child comes into the world, they send for a priest to purify it. This purification is extended to every one present, whom they call over by their names, and give them the blessing; never suffer any one to enter the room till the priest is come; and when he is, he name the child after the Saint, whose day was kept eight days before the birth of the child, or that is to be kept eight days afterwards. They administer the sacrament after their rite, to the child, before the baptism, and especially among people of distinction, and seldom baptize but at the end of five or six weeks, when the infant is strong and hearty. When it is a boy they church or purify the mother at the end of five weeks, and when it happens to be a girl, at the end of six. They then choose a godfather and a godmother, and never change them afterwards; nor can these godfathers and godmothers marry together, nor those in the third degree from them.

At the funerals of the better sort, all the friends of both sexes follow the body, tho' uninvited. They put the body upon a bier carry'd by four or fix men, the coffin being covered with a fine pall, and the women nearest of kin, make loud lamentations, as I mentioned in my first travels. The priests intone the funeral hymn; but all this is done with much less ceremony among the common people.

The customs among the foreigners are different from these with regard to births and marriages, and the same with us, excepting in the form of celebrating a wedding exclusive of the religious part, and this is carry'd on with great solemnity. They send two representing stewards to invite those they would have, and these stewards do it in winter, in a fine fledge, drawn by two horses dressed up in ribbons, and attended by two servants behind the fledge. The number of guests is commonly 100 or 150, and sometimes more, according as it is thought proper, and according to the number of the Gentlemen and Ladies of the country that are asked. The Marshal is the chief man at these festivals, and goes about with a truncheon and a ribbon at the end of it, and he, afflled by the stewards, begins all healths; and besides these it is usual to have four or six, or eight under-stewards, who have the care of preparing all things in the house, as well with regard to the furniture as other necessaries. These help the stewards to serve the guests, and are to be known by a fine scarf on the right arm, which they have in common with the steward, except that his is richer; these the bride-maid's tye on for them. These maids are introduced into the hall where the feast is, with great ceremony, and the found of instruments; and the more to honour the bride and bridegroom, they
on each side choose two fathers, two mothers, two brothers, and two sisters, who are introduced in the same manner; then they sit down to table in the places appointed for every one. The carver gets between the two bride maids opposite to the bride, and they tie him on a scarf upon his arm. The bridegroom sits between the fathers and brothers, and the bride between the mothers and sisters. When they have done, they in another room entertain the Marshal, the stewards, and the carver. Then they dance, the Marshal opening the ball with the bride, and then the other Ladies are desired to dance with the stewards. The fathers and mothers dance after these, then the brothers and sisters, and at last the new married pair, and two or three other couple. This done, the Marshal cries out Liberty, and then dance who will: these doings commonly last three days together, and upon the last, the bride-maids entertain the Marshal, the stewards, their deputies, and the carver.

Their funerals are in this manner. They keep the body for some days, and invite the chiefs of the nation, and afterwards most of the merchants, and other friends, as well in the city as in the island; which is done by two persons of their nation, appointed for that purpose, or chosen by the friends and relations of the deceased; and these wear long black cloaks, and a crape hat-band. ‘Thou’, upon these occasions, the company commonly meet at two in the afternoon, it is night before the body is committed to the ground in winter, and pretty late in summer. They have 15 or 16 mourners, and 12 bearers, all married and dressed in black, with great cloaks of the same, which they keep for that purpose in the churches. The mourners sit in the best room on the right hand, with the male relations of the deceased, and every one that comes in salutes them. The bearers have a crape hat-band, and a scarf over the shoulder of the same, and sometimes white gloves. They have all sorts of refreshments upon two different tables, and they are continually serving you about with wine, flip, sweatmeats, toasted bread, and lemons, when they are to be had. Before the corpse goes out of the house, it is usual to present each of the bearers with a silver spoon, with the name of the deceased engraved upon it; the same is also sometimes presented to the minister, the schoolmaster, and the mourners; but when it is a maid they are carrying to the grave, they give gold rings with the name alio of the deceased instead of spoons. The bearers nail up the coffin before it goes out, and as soon as they begin to move, the schoolmaster and the scholars begin to sing with each a book in his hand; but the Calvinists do so only at the church-yard. The young scholars go before, followed by their master, the minister, and the chiefs of the funeral; then comes the body, and after it, the nearest relations, the mourners, the merchants, and officers, who do not go regularly two and two as with us, but four or five at a time, just as it happens, or as they please. When they have reached the church-yard, and deposited the corpse in the grave, they begin again with some funeral psalms and chaunts; then the minister makes a discourse, and thanks those who have attended the corpse for the honour they have done him; and the bearers who have each a shovel in their hand, throw in the earth till the grave is nearly filled up; then all that were invited are desired to return to the house of the deceased, but few go in besides the bearers, who are entertained with drink and tobacco. Sometimes they have a funeral sermon at church, and the women are invited to be there. The widow of the deceased comes with her nearest female relations all covered over with crape, and these sometimes give evident tokens of their grief even in the streets. Sometimes also they give an entertainment afterwards. They go in coaches or on horseback in summer, it being impossible to go on foot. The coffins were
and indeed they have two churches, while the others have but one in the flabode. There have been two "fe-
feats" for some time settled here, who teach Latin to several children of their rite.

CHAP. XIII.

His Czarian Majesty's departure for Veronis, whether the author and several others attend him. Things remarkable on the way. Arrival at Veronis.

Journey to Veronis.

The time appointed for the Czar's departure being come, he was attended by John Alexeivitz Mojsiu Poeskin, first inspector and visitor of the monasteries of Russia, who had been Governor of Afracan, an office he had executed with great honour; Alexi Petrovitz Ijmelbafl; the Knez Gregory Gregoriwitz Gagarin, John Andreivitz Toljey, Governor of Ahjsbl, Ioan Davidewitz, Governor of Kolomna, Alexander Wajfel-
lewitz Kiksen, great Steward of the household, and Gentleman of the chamber to his Majesty; Nariske, the son of his Majesty's uncle, and by many other Lords who came to Veronis after us. The Czar also did the Sieur Konigseg Envoy extraordinary from Poland, the Sieur Kei-
serling, Envoy from the King of Prussia, the Sieur Bellesur, Agent from the Sieur Ogienkia, one of the first Generals, and one of the best friends to the King of Poland, to some officers of his household, and the sons of the famous General le Fort the honour of requesting their company. He took with him also three merchants, Mr. Steel, a fine gentleman much esteemed by this Prince, and Mr. Hill, Englifhman, and the Sieur Kinjus a Dutchman, all three extremely well affected to his Majesty, who desired I should go before with them, and we set out upon the thirty first of January; and the next day

Vol. I.
The Travels of

1703. by night as by day. In two hours we came to Sgina, and there changed horses to go to Oeljamina, where we arrived about eight of the clock; and here we got out at a Kabak belonging to his Majesty, a pretty good wooden building with several apartments in it. You there go up by a fine staircase of five steps with five angles, and were entertained with beer and good fires, the Czar himself being expected, who has caused these houses to be erected every twenty werfis for the convenience of travellers. Here we stayed but two hours, and went our way in a very damp night. Horses were ready for us, and there was fire in all the villages, where the peasants stood at their doors with trusses of straw lighted to shew their joy for his Majesty’s arrival, which in the night time had a very pretty effect. We had 30 werfis to travel from hence to Kolomna, where we had got before day, and there waited for his Majesty, who came about nine in the morning, while I was gone to take a view of the inside and outside of the town. I went out by the gate of the Pjatnitske, or of the Friday, or of the fifth day of the week, and went to that of Caffi, which are the only gates here. This town is surrounded with a good stone wall, about fix fathom high and two thick, and flanked with several towers, some round and some square, about 200 paces distant from each other, but not adapted for cannon. It is about a mile and half round, and the little river of Kolomnenske, whose name it borrows passes by it. I should here have spoken of the river of Moscow, but as we crossed it afterwards by water, I shall defer it another time, while I go on with the description of this city. The wall is almost all fallen down on one side, and you must go over a pretty high hill to get at the hinder gate, where the land lies low beyond the river; and there is a suburb at the other gate, where they expose their goods to sale, and by this gate I saw a great number of the country people come in with things to sell in the town. The form of it is almost round, and there is a dry ditch on the highest side, where there is also a very high wall. Its finest building is the church of Ufpleenja, or of the separation of the mother of God, well built of stone, and indifferently large; whereunto we may add the archiepiscopal palace; the rest is ordinary enough. Having satisfied my curiosity, I went to the Governor’s house, Ivan Davidevitsz, where I found the Czar and all the company at table. When I had got up to this Prince to pay my duty to him, he turned about and kissed me, and when I had given him an account of what I had done, he made me sit down. At two in the afternoon we proceeded on our journey, being to go to the country house of Mr. Alexander Wafelewitz Koecken, five werfis from this city. There we were well entertained. It is a wooden building of two stories, with fine rooms. We stayed there till five of the clock, and about nine in the morning we arrived at the little lake of Ivan, near the village of Ivanofra, 130 werfis from the house of Mr. Koecken. The Don or the Tanais rises in this lake, from whence it flows in a long canal, whose water is very clear and well tailed, as the Czar himself thought, and the rest of the company; tho’ the lake, which might be better called a pool, is very marshy. One half of its water goes one way, and the rest another, a very remarkable circumstance. Here it was that his Czarian Majesty in the year 1702, began to dig a canal to open a communication between the Don and the Baltic. The Czar surveyed the whole ground then in person, as he did now again with us. This canal which is very deep derives its water from the Don or Taunis, and is to cross the lake Ivan to the little river Scbata, which falls into that of the Ufa, and this into the Oco, which falls into the Wolga; and by this means might be attained the end proposed of making a communication between this river and
1703. the Baltic sea. And it is to be ef-
feeted by the contrivance of sluices
so paces in length, and 14 in breadth,
under the direction of Prince Goga-
rin, whose worth and excellent en-
dowments, as well as his zeal for his
Czarian Majesty’s service is not to be
expressed. His Majesty had us car-
rried in sledges upon these canals,
having first ordered the horses to be
shod for ice, and shewed us this work
completed and consisting of seven
close sluices of grey stone. I there
also saw a mud engine, made after
the Dutch manner, with which, and
the ice broke, the Prince got up
earth proper to make turf, which
they there order as they do in our
provinces. There were several
houses full of it, which we tried
and found to be very good.

His Majesty having entertained us
at noon, we went away about three
of the clock to go 30 werfts to a
country-house belonging to Mr. le
Fort. As this village is not upon the
high-road, three of our guides turned
to the right, instead of following
the company, and went to a
house of his Majesty’s five werfts
from thence. The night being
come I went in there with two
French officers, and there we laid
till 10 at night expecting our com-
panions, but perceiving, nobody
came near us we continued our
journey through a defart, where we
met with nothing but some coppice,
here and there. Upon the third at
nine in the morning we arrived at
Prince Alexander Danielewitz de
Menjikof, 110 werfts from Mr. le
Fort’s. It is a great and a fine build-
ing like a house of pleasure, with a
turret or lanthorn upon it, covered
with a detached roof, and neatly
painted on the outside with all forts
of colours; this house contains ma-
ny fine and good rooms and lofty
enough; nor is there any way to
it but by the gate of the fort, they
being both within one common en-
cient of earth, of no very great ex-
tent. Here are several fine works
well mounted with cannon, and co-
vered on the one side with a hill,
and on the other by a fen, or kind
of lake. I had no sooner got into
the Czars preference than he asked
me where I had been? I anwedered
where it had pleased Heaven and
our guides, seeing I knew nothing
either of the way or the language.
This he laughed at and told the
Russian Lords that were with him.
He then gave me a bumper by way of
punishment, regaled us to perfecti-
on, and had the cannon fired at every
health. When we had done he car-
rried us upon the ramparts, and there
brought us different liquors upon
each work. Then he ordered fledge
to be ready to carry us upon
the lake, then frozen over, that we
might thence take a view of the
whole at leisure; and he took me
into his own fledge, all mindful
of the liquor which followed us ever-
y where at the heels in great plen-
ty; and from thence we returned to
the castle, where the glaffes began
to dance about again, and to warm
us till at last the place having never
as yet been named, his Majesty cal-
led it Oranjenburg. Prince Alexan-
der’s village, which is on one side,
is called Slabode. From this agree-
able place we went at nine in the
night. Upon the fourth we went
a great way; but afterwards we trav-
elled at a much less rate, because
of the little snow upon the ground.
The Czar, however, did not stop
till we had reached Stepena, where
they had built ten ships. We held
on our way in the night, and upon
the fifth, at one in the morning, we
arrived at Veronis, which is 190
werfts from the new Oranjenburg.
The company being divided in the
night, we dropped in one after an-
other, the first that appeared at the
place being young Mr. le Fort and
my self, and as there had been no
regulation made as to the article of
lodging, we went directly to the
house of Vice-Admiral Rees. We
were told he had kept his bed for
three weeks past, for a hurt he had
received by a fall; and as soon as
it was light we waited on him with
assurances of the share we had in
his
his misfortune; he received us very kindly, and desired us to be quite free with his house and table. The Czar himself arrived at one in the afternoon, under the discharge of the cannon in the castle and in the ships that were frozen up; and in an instant afterwards he came to see the Vice-Admiral. He thence went to Mr. Pewdor Maffewitz Apraxin's a Lord of the Admiralty, who commanded in the place. We had orders to follow him, and were well entertained, in the midst of the noise of the artillery, fifty cannon being from time to time fired off, and so the day was brought to an end. In the mean time orders were given for rooms to be ready in the castle, for the strangers, that they should be made much of, and have whatever victuals they had a mind to; nor was there any forgetfulness as to drink, and Monsieur, the Envoy Konigegg, who had the charge of the table, acquitted himself very handsomely. The Sieurs Steel, Kinjius and Hill lodged at a friend's, and Mr. le Fort and I at the Vice-Admiral's; going every now and then to eat at the castle. His Majesty was at a private house upon the key with the Russians. Upon the sixth we went to see the ships, and tipped with great gaiety. Pewdor Maffewitz treated us at noon, and the next day; and so ended our feastings, the great part of the Russions beginning upon the eighth. Upon the ninth I solicited the Czar for leave to draw what was most worthy of notice, and he immediately gave it me, saying, Come, we have lived well, and been merry, and have had a little rest after it, it is now high time to think of work.

CHAPTER XIII.

Description of Veronis. The Don or the Tanais. Return to Moscow. His Majesty departs for Sleutelenburg.

The City of Veronis is upon a high hill in 52 degrees and a half of northern latitude; surrounded with a wooden wall, all rotten, and divided into three parts, in one of which called jakatof, the chief of the Russian merchants have their abode. There is a great rope-walk in this city, and the powder is kept in subterraneous magazines without the wall. Upon the side of the hill, along the river, there are several houses, in an extent of 400 paces; the chief of them belong to the Admiral Golovin, Mr. Apraxin of the admiralty, the Boyard Lojkhilowitz, Prince Danielszvitz, and other Russians of quality. Most of these houses are over against the citadel, and those of the Vice-Admiral and other officers on the side of them, and behind these are streets for those employed in ship-building and the like. This city stands on the west of the river of Veronis, whose name it borrows, and the citadel is on the other side, to which there is a large bridge of communication. The ditches about it are full of water from the old river. This citadel is a square building with towers at the four corners, has very large apartments, and makes a great figure from without. The sands of the downs so chock up the new river that it is not navigable, and the ships are obliged to go through the old one. The citadel is the chief magazine, and indeed they so term it, and have above 150 pieces of cannon in it, though most of them without carriages for the more ready transporting them in case of need. Again, this citadel is defended with pallisades
1703. Palladis in several places, and filled
with a pretty good garrision, as well as
the country about, to withfind the

[Image of Tartars.]

The conveniences for shipbuilding are one side of the citadel,
whereas before they built them all
about. The fiorehouse is on the oth
er side, a great building, three storeys high, the two first of which are
of stone, and the third and uppermost of wood. Here are many
places full of all sorts of naval stores,
each in a place apart, even to cloaths
for the seamen, and every thing else
they can want. The fail house or
loft is on one side of this storehouse;
and they compute that in the town
and about it, there may be ten thou-
sand persons. You see two or three
villages in the plain.

Upon the tenth, I went in quest
of a proper stand, from whence to
take a sketch of the city; and I pitch-
ed upon the highest part of a hill,
which is but two werks to the south-
westward of it; there I began my
work, but could not go on with it
for the bitterness of the cold and
strength of the wind. The next day
I walked thither to get myself a little
heat by the way, with nobody
but my servant, and three men be-
longing to the Vice-admiral, to keep
off such Russians as might have the
curiosity to interrupt me. I ordered
them to get a mat, some poles, an
ax, and a spade, to dig a pit for me,
where I might conveniently take my
stand. When this was done, I
screened myself from the wind in my
back with the mat; and in this
plight it was easy to see me from the
town and from the river side. And
indeed I was not here long without
a discovery; two English shipwrights
taking notice of me from the river,
felt two or three of their people to
know what I was about. Seeing them
come towards me, I ordered my sea-
men, who were armed with half-
pikes, to keep them off; to tell no
foul what I was about, and if they
were asked the question, to say they
knew nothing at all of the matter.

In the mean time a number of above
50 Russians got together upon the
hill, drawn thither by the novelty
of the sight, unable to conceive what
should be the meaning of it; but my
people driving them back, they did
not dare to come near enough to me.

When I returned to the town, the
Vice-admiral told me the vogue had
been, that, upon the top of the hill,
one of the Czar’s domestics had been
buried alive, nobody knowing where-
fore, or who it was; and that the
said man buried up to the middle
held a great book in his hand, which
was the paper I was drawing upon;
and that no one was allowed to ap-
proach him, three centinels being ap-
pointed to keep off all that attempt-
ed it; may even the officers them-
selves enquired of each other, who
it was that was under the circum-
cstances of execution. But observ-
ing, upon the ravish, that the criminal
had shifted his place, and conse-
quently that they were mistaken,
they took another whim into their
heads. There was a little farther
off an old burying ground, where
they had seen me some days before,
and where I went that day to take a
draught of it. The Russians at their
wits end, now fancied I might be
some prophet from beyond sea to
visit the old burying grounds, say
masies for the dead, and perform oth-
er religious offices, and particular-
ly as I always appeared with a book
in my hand. They took notice to
one another that I had commonly a
Hungarian vest on, and that I was
attended by a servant, who carried
after me a kind of blue cloak; in
short that I had three of the
Vice-admiral’s people set to guard
me. This whim, extravagant as it
was, might have been attended with
ill effects, had not the Czar himself
been in these parts, and been a check
upon the crowds that would other-
wise have gathered together.

You have a representation of the

[Image of Russian town in number 15; the letter A is A
vation of

The letter A

distinguishis his Majesty’s place of

[Image of Russian town in number 15; the letter B is B

The place where the

[Image of Russian town in number 15; the letter C is C

den the Woritz or

[Image of Russian town in number 15; the letter D is D

The Ambact or the

[Image of Russian town in number 15; the letter E is E

The fail-house or

[Image of Russian town in number 15; the letter R is R

loft;
1703. loft; F the house of Prince Alexander Danilewitz; G that of Fedor Maslewitz; H Uspomnej Dobrodzieza, or the church of the conception of the mother of God; I Cafa tv Idenian, or church dedicated to Cofnius and Damian, brethren, in the list of Saints; K Saboer, or the church of the assembly of the Saints; L PetTviza Bogodzieza, or the Friday church, so called; because there the Virgin Mary appeared in an extraordinary manner upon a certain Friday, and was judged thence to have required it to be set apart in honour of that day of the week; M the old river; N the new river; O the hill from whence I drew the prospect of the town. The old tombs, mentioned before, seeming to me very extraordinary in their kind, I drew them as well as the ground they stand in. They are upon a hill which has suffered by the injuries of time; this hill is by itself, and from the top to the bottom scattered over with skulls and bones, and pieces of coffins. There are two at the top, the one a little damaged, the other to pieces. I ordered a Russian to climb this hill, which has two trees upon it, to try if he could not get some bones which appeared upon the surface, and which had been blanched by the air, to the whiteness of chalk, which had a pretty odd effect in that black soil; but the earth was so frozen he could not bring them with him. You have all this represented in number 16. What lies before this burying ground was formerly a part of it, and the way to it on this side the river, is beneath this hill on the left hand, and on the right you have Siejskie in the bottom near the river, with some mills. With regard to the ships here, we saw fifteen in the water, four men of war, the biggest of 54 guns, three victualers, two fireships, and six bomb-ketches. On shore and ready to be launched, were five men of war, after the Dutch fashion, from 60 to 64 guns, two after the Italian from 50 to 54, a galleas after the Venetian, and four galleys, besides 17 gallys at Siejskie, two werfts from the town. Besides all this, they were at work upon five men of war after the English built, two bored for 74 guns, and two for 60 or 64; the fifth which is called after his Majesty, because he had the direction of her upon the stocks, is bored for 86 guns. They were at work also upon a packet-boat, and ashore on the other side of the river, were about 200 brigantines, most of them built at Veronius; and at this time there were 400 fluent brigantines upon the Neiper, and the Borysliones, in the neighbourhood of Crim Tartary, and 300 flat bottom vessels upon the Vloga; besides 18 men of war at Aoppa, a bomb-veffel and a yacht. The Czar has several other ships, the largest of which is of 66 guns, four from 48 to 50, five of 36, two of 34, and others smaller, the least of 28 guns.

That day the Czar took the diversion of falling upon the ice, in a level place fit for the purpose. Upon the thirteenth at night they fired a score of bombs from two vessels, and several from a pinace or galley of 20 oars; when I returned the Vice-Admiral told me the Czar had sent a message to me. I went immediately on board the ship where he was, and saw several bombs fired off in my way: I found his Majesty at his liquor, and understood he was the next day, being the fourteenth, to go with all his train to the Dan or Tanais, about 12 werfts from Veronius, to take a survey of the shipping there. We set out at three in the journey to the Tanaah.
1703. wind stirring they open two or three of the windows on the side next to it, so that rushing upon the fails, it sets the machine a going with great violence. You have this represented in number 17.

The Czar came up with us in a calash, and desired us to mend our pace, which every body was not able to do; but we got to our journey's end before it was night. There was a general discharge of guns immediately from the ships, and we went to see some of them where they made us drink most heartily; and at night we were entertained at the house of Ivan Alewvits Magin Poskin. Supper over several of the company retired to the ships for lodging which was not to be had on shore; for they have not as yet begun to build in this place, tho' they talk of a town intended to be here. The next day we went to see the works they were about in order to stop the course of the Don, and turn it another way; to which purpose they had a sluice, on the side they designated it should run: This river called Tanais, is famous in Russia; it crossing the Precoptian or Little Tartary to the eastward, and having winded for a great way, it takes a vast sweep towards the Volga; and having been swelled by several smaller rivers, falls, by Aljup from the lake Moatis, or sea of Zabakany, where it divides Europe from Asia. In these parts, we saw our great furprize find several elephant's teeth upon the ground, one of which I keep as a curiosity, but cannot conceive how they should happen to be there. It is true indeed, the Czar told us that Alexander the Great having crossed this river, as we read in historians, came as far as the little town of Koftinbo, but eight water's from thence, and that possibly it might have been that some of his elephants died there, and that these teeth might be the remains of them.

We then returned to the fleet, where they made very much of us. Here were in all eleven men of war and victuallers. One of these ships 1703. was built under his Majesty's directions, and outfit the rest with all sorts of ornaments, and the Captain's cabin was lined with walnut-tree; tho' there was another along-side of this of great beauty also, and built by an Englishman; but the rest made no great matter of show. We were entertained with fish at noon, and then returned to the ships where we drank deep to the roar of the cannon.

In the midst of these carousals, a Russian feaman was fool enough to put his hand to the mouth of a gun, and was so hurt thereby that he fell from the top to the bottom, and by the fall, it is likely, broke some of his ribs. They endeavoured to keep this from the Czar; but he coming to the knowledge of it, went to see the poor wretch, and found him drawing towards his last.

We broke up about eight in the evening, and at ten got to Veronits, in the midst of rain. Upon the sixteenth, having obtained the Czar's leave for that purpose, I prepared to return to Moscow with my three friends; but the rains having made the roads very bad, we were obliged to get eight waggons, and to arm the wheels with iron. Upon the seventeenth, in the morning, we took our leave of his Majesty, who gave us his hand to kiss, and then embraced us, wished us a good journey; and recommended it to us to take a fight of some mortars, upon the river side, about two water's from the town, which we did without making any stay there. They were against a hill, near a barn, where they had been cast. About noon I had orders to repair once more to the Czar, who was taking the diversion of falling upon the ice; his vessel was overfit in taking of a short turn, but the was soon set upright again. About half an hour afterwards he ordered me to follow him alone. He got into a hired sledge with two horses, one of which fell into a hole, but the other standing firm upon the ice, he was soon got out again; he made me fit by him, saying, Come let us go.
1703, to the shallop, I will have you see a bomb fired off, because you was not there when the last were fired. Being arrived, we examined the vessel, and the wooden bed where the mortar was fixed, and which you might turn to all directions. The bombardment being ready, the signal was given for those in the plain to get out of the way. We then went out of the vessel, and fire was set to the fusee, but the bomb burst in the flight. This being a kind of disappointment, his Majesty was so good as to ask me if I would see any more, but I told him it was needless. I then waited on him to Mr. Sleits, and soon after to his own abode, which was not far off, and there I had the honour to take leave of him. He embraced me, and as his usual way was, said, God preserve you.

It was about three in the afternoon when I returned to my lodging, whence I made all the haste I could to depart, after a short meal. I thanked the Vice-admiral for the honour he had done me, and for all his favors, and to my great joy, left him in a better way than I found him. He is a very worthy man, much esteemed by every body, but by nobody more than by the Czar himself.

We departed in the evening, and that night we had snow, and after it some rain. Upon the eighteenth in the morning we were 58 werths from Venetia, having three horses to each waggon, which carried us back the same way we came.

We took notice that most of the Kabacs, or Czar's houses towards Venecia, are inhabited by Circassians. These are a neat and cleanly people both in their persons and in their houses; they are of a pleasant humour, and live agreeably, diverting themselves every day with the violin, and another stringed instrument. You have these minstrels in all his Majesty's houses to that of Prince Alexander; they never fail to play as soon as you come in, and they commonly fell you mead or brandy, and among them are women who are kind to strangers. Their dress is remarkable, and quite different from 1703, the Russian, and especially with regard to the women. Their common dress is a shift with a girdle, round which they plait a piece of striped stuff, which hangs down to their feet like a petticoat. They wear a white linen cloth wound round the head, and a part of their chin is covered; one end of this cloth is genteely turned up on one side of the head, and the rest are sometimes loose or hang down. They wear also a piece of linen in garters upon the forehead, which goes over the head, and is flat behind after the manner of the Arabs and Jews in the east. Their shift is gathered two fingers breadth about the neck, as formerly with us when they wore ruffs; but you will best comprehend this by the plate beneath, which I drew in small from one of the most agreeable of these women, and just as we found her in her flowe. Near was a maid-servant kneading of dough for bread, and some children sitting after their manner upon the oven. It was three in the afternoon when we left this place, in mizzling weather with some snow; but an hour afterwards it came on to blow from the northern board, and began to freeze. When we had travelled 15 werths, we came to a small river, partly frozen over, but too deep to ford, which we sought to do for two hours, to no purpose. In short we sent two of our servants over on horseback, and a third to a village to enquire if there was not some place where we might crost; but he brought us word there was none, and did not dare to crost the water a second time, so that we sent him back to the village whence he came, with orders there to wait for us till morning. Mean time we had no news of one of our servants who had got drunk the day before, and whom we had thrown into a countryman's lodge; and as in this case our people were in danger of freezing, we crowded our waggons together to shelter them, while we consulted what we had best to do. It was nine in the night, and
and we were still quite at a loss, till, at length, considering there were no houses in this part of the country, we resolved to go back again, in quest of a village out of the main road, where we arrived at eleven in the night, and got some refreshment for ourselves and our horses. The servant we had lost came here to us that night, and told us his driver had taken the horses out of the sleigh while he was asleep, and carried them away, that he perceived nothing of the matter till he awoke, and that he had been obliged to look out for another, which he had done in vain, had it not been for the prevalence of money and good words; and to conclude, that it was with great difficulty that he had got to us. The next day I discovered, that by the negligence of our people, the axle-tree of my wagon was broken, in consideration of which, as well as of the frost, and of the snow that had fallen in the night, I resolved to fix it upon the bottom of a sledge, and to take the wheels with me, in case a change of weather should happen. For the rest, one of our drivers had given us the slip, a thing not unusual in this country, and had left us his horses, in hope, his companions would bring them back with their own; so that we were obliged to take another in his stead. We took three, with sledges and horses, and provided ourselves with planks and timber to help us in crossing the river. The sun shine

S out
out, but it was excessively cold, and about ten o’clock, we came back to the place where we had endeavoured to cross the evening before, and found the river so frozen, that several horses went over upon the ice, tho’ indeed some of them fell in. We took our horses out, that our waggons might cross the safer, and we made use of our boards and timbers in the deepest places, and yet some of our people fell in; but as every body was ready to lend a helping hand, they were soon got out again. At one in the afternoon we went on, and in an hour’s time came to a place where we found fresh horses ready to put to. We had now, in all, travelled but 28 miles, and had two more to go, before we got to a small town called Ramberton, where we crossed the river of Belle Kolodis or the White Pit, by a bridge cover’d over a foot and a half thick with ice, and dined to the found of the Circassians instrunments. It was eleven in the night before we could get away from hence, for before then we had not been able to prevail with the Governor for horses. Here they took the wheels off from the other waggons, and loaded them upon sledges as I had done, and in the night we went thro’ a great village called Stedunche; and upon the twenty-first, at break of day, we came to the pillar of 136 miles, where we took fresh horses without stopping. Two miles from thence, we passed the town of Dobri, a mile from the great road, upon the river Veronis. At the end of 151 miles we came to a great village, and another at the end of 154, where you go up a hill so very steep, that there are rails on the left hand from top to bottom, to prevent your falling. We afterwards went through three villages, upon the poll of the last of which, we saw 157 miles. Soon after we found the high road so full of ice, it was impossible to keep it, so that we looked for a better way on the right hand, and succeeded, so that we all got thro’, except one waggon, which being very heavily laden, fell through the ice, but was got out again without damage done to any thing in it. In short, after we had again skirted it along some villages, we reached the house of Prince Alexander, 190 miles from Veronis; but here we made no stay, and went on to a village not far off, and there we dined. It was fix in the evening, and we waited till ten before our horses were ready. Upon the 21st, at four of the clock we were at 218 miles, soon after at 238, and then 257 miles, whence, on the right, we saw the town of Scoppin, which seems considerably large, and some villages between that and us; and as our postwodens reached no farther, we went thither, and crossed over a bridge a width in length, and over a great moor. This town, however, is in itself no great matter, and the cattle where the Governor resides, and which stands at the end of the high street, has nothing remarkable either within side or without. They immediately appointed accommodations for us, and the burgomasters came to us on the part of the Governor, and brought us refreshments of brandy, mead, beer, bread, and the like. Here we made a demand of 30 horses, instead of 24, the better to carry our wheels with us, and this being granted us, we departed hence an hour before sunser, and that night traveled 40 miles, then changing horses we reached 311 miles, and came near the house of Mr. le Fort, where we arrived upon the twenty second, at nine in the morning. This gentleman had written to his servants, ordering them to use us the best they could, and to let us have horses, and every thing else we might want. Here we left our waggon-wheels behind us to be the left incumbered, and to rid the more way, with the lower horses, the frost and snow having much mended the ways. Here we had fresh horses, and having stopped about an hour, we proceeded on our journey, and got the length of 329 miles, and at three in the afternoon we came to 347, and to the
the village of Podostyncke, where we cheered up the heart. It snowed, and continued both to freeze and to blow, and having again changed horses in the evening, we went thro' several villages in the night, and tho' the town of Nikole Saratzke, a place tolerable enough; but it was not without difficulty we got thro' it, because of the great number of country people who had crowded it with their sledges laden with things for Moscow. Upon the twenty third in the morning, having got to the end of 400 werfts, we held on our way, with fresh horses, to Grodno, where we got at nine o'Clock, but made no stay, and even on eight werfts from thence we met with the river of Osca, which we were some time in croosing. We had then to go over a very steep and lofty hill, where there was but one narrow gut on the left hand of the river; and as we were going up we met with some sledges, who obliged us to stop that they might get by, which they could only do upon the very brow of the hill, the way being too narrow for them and for us too, and the way they took was so bad, so steep, and so full of great stones, that both horses and sledges were in great danger, most of the horses going on at a venture without drivers; and not only so, but words arising between these sledgersmen and our servants, they came to blows, the cause alleged, that the one had not made room timely enough for the other. Several of these people being in liquor, exasperated those who had already got down below, and made them come up after us, to the number of about twenty. I was lying along in my sledge when I understood this, and leaped out immediately with Sword and Pistols in hand, and the Steers Krinske and Hill came after, armed also, the one with his pistols, the other with his sword. In this posture we went down to Mr. Steel's sledge, who was the last of us, and most exposed to the fury of these madmen. He had but just got out, but had no arms, and the Russians about him were at him with their Threats; but he, like a prudent man as he was, made signs to his servant to get out of the way, and began to fetch them with fair speeches, judging, and with good reason, that a contrary procedure might prove fatal, observing there was beneath us a great number of Russions who would have infallibly fallen upon us, on the very first onset. And these observing we came up to them without any ceremony, Disposition to quarrel, kept back those that were drunk, and submitted to reason. The most troublesome of them being gone off, we went out way on each side, tho', for my own part, I would not go again into my sledge till we had gained the height of the hill; tho' I had much ado to walk, it was so slippery, and the wind so strong; besides that it was so exceedingly cold I could hardly feel my fingers. In the midst of this I took notice of a sledge and one horse going down without a driver, tho' heavily laden; the poor horse, unable to turn a corner so nicely as he should, for the wind and the ice; in short, unable to keep the beaten track, and borrowing too much upon the precipice, he fell perpendicular down upon the bank of the river, a sight dreadful to behold. The sledge broke into a thousand pieces, and the horse it most likely broke all his ribs, tho' I afterward saw him lift up his head. At length, having with difficulty reached the top of the hill, we went on, and at one in the afternoon came to the city of Kolomna, 456 werfts. We waited in the suburbs for an answer to a letter of the Czar's, which we sent in, and the Dutch or Secretary of the city no sooner received it, than he came to us, and offered us his service, and even desired us to go into the city to entertain ourselves; but we excused ourselves, and he sent us mead, brandy, beer, and some provisions, which we returned back again, having sufficiently provided ourselves with necessaries. We talked with him about two hours, and drank some
1703. somewhat briskly about, and at four
we departed with fresh horses, and
travelled 25 versts before nine to
the village of Kofackoff, where we
baited two or three hours, for the
fake of our horses, who were to car-
ry us quite to Moscow. Upon the
twenty-fourth by eight in the morn-
ing, we had got near the village of
Ostrawens in 46 versts farther. We
here reft and fed our horses, and
in two hours went away, and about
noon arrived in the German flabode
at Moscow, in 25 versts still far-
ther.

Upon the twenty-seventh, the school-
mster and reader of the Lutheran
Church called John Frederick Maes
of Koningenberg, was without any pro-
vocation murdered by a German En-
fign, called Krafft, who being taken
confed the fact.

I thought to have refted me af-
ter fo fatiguing a journey, but upon
the fifth of March, towards the even-
ing, I was taken with an extraor-
dinary heat of body, like a fever, and
goine immediately to bed, had a ve-
ry troublesome night of it. I rose
up, however, at break of day next
morning, but was so weak, I could
hardly stand upon my legs, and had
besides a continual cough day and
night. The fire within me was so
fiere, that had I drank an hundred
times a day, it could not have been ex-
tinguished. Sometimes I drank milk,
sometimes I drank beer, and some-
times water boiled up with tamarinds
and sugar, which I found relief from
in Egypt; and to keep my stomach
in some degree of strength, I drank
also of rhennish wine, and other things
good for that end. In this manner
did I pass five days and five nights
without any rest, and in the night
particularly was apt to be somewhat
delirious. My friends, upon this, ob-
serving me to grow weaker and wea-
ker, advised me to send for a phy-
ician, but I told them I was always
my own physician, that I knew my
constitution better than any body,
and consequently what was best for
me; that I was persuaded, as I knew
the cause of my sickness, a good
regiment would do me more good 1703.
than all the physicians in the world,
besides that, I had been for some time
fiable of what was coming upon
me. Upon the sixth night and that
following I refted indifferently well,
and found myself greatly relieved;
in short, after a continual regimen
for ten days together, I began to take
in stronger broths, and eat meat. I
bled also a little at the nose at night,
and that eased my head.

Upon the eleventh, the Czar re-
turned, with all his train, from Ver-
onis, and upon the thirteenth he
cauted Colonel Boden, already men-
tion'd, to be beheaded, and Encign
Krafft, on one side of the pole,
upon which the sword and ax had been
hung up, and Encign Krafft was at
the same time hanged; he then fix-
ed up an order, that no one should
presume to draw a sword, upon pain of
death.

Upon Sunday, the fourteenth of the
month, Monsieur Casmir Boulus, En-
voy from France, who had been
some time incognito at Moscow, had
a private audience of the Czar at
Count Fendor Alexewitz de Golowins.

This Prince, the same day, went
with a small attendance to see Mr.
Brants, where he was entertained
with cold meats and some other re-
freshments. I came out of my room
upon this occasion, to have the ho-
nour of taking leave of his Majes-
ty, and to beg he would grant me
a passport to go out of his domi-
nions. Observing me to be much
altered, he was so good as to ask
me what was the matter with me,
and what had been the cause of my
illness; and upon my telling him I
attributed it to some excesses on my
journey from Veronis, he answered,
nothing in the world was so good as
a hair of the same dog; but the Re-
fident and some others coming in
upon us, we were interrupted.

Having obtuin'd the leave I want-
ed, and an order to count Golowin for
a passport, I took leave of the Czar,
who did me the honour to give me
his hand to kiss, and then betto-
ed
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

1703. ed on me his blessing, God preserve you.

It was about ten when this Prince went away to Mr. Lups, and to several English Merchants, before he fat out for Sleuteenbur; and upon the fifteen, early in the morning he fat out, without so much as going to Probrorsensk.

Upon that day they were to execute the two other criminals, Captain Sax, and the servant of Colonel Boden, whose head and body lay still upon the ground, as Krafth hung upon the gibbet, guarded by some soldiers. They were both upon the block, and the executioner stood by with the ax in his hand, ready to give the fatal blow, when they were at once repreived, the Captain to be sent a perpetual Exile into Siberia, and the servant to receive thirty strokes of the knout, and then be a slave in the galleys for life; but I a little while afterwards heard he died of the knot.

Our Refident having demanded a passport for me, in the name of his Majesty, Count Golewos, whose business it was, ordered it to be immediately dispatched.

Upon the twenty first they celebrated Palm-Sunday; upon the twenty fifth, the Annunciation of the blessed Virgin Mary, in high reverence with the Ruffians, and upon the twenty eighth, the feast of Easter. Nothing else remarkable occurred, except that a fire broke out at Moscov, upon the thirtieth, and that the river of Mosca thawed, and was open upon the first of April. So thorough a thaw made the ways very bad, and upon the third the waters were risen higher than had been known in the memory of man. At this time I was taken with a tertian ague, but after three or four fits it left me.

CHAP. XIV.

The Author is shown every Thing remarkable in the Churches. Cloth that wastes not in the Fire.

WHEN I was recovered of my ague, I went to Moscov, to wait on Count Alexewitz Muefin Poeskin, whom the Czar had ordered, at Veranis, to shew me every thing that was to be seen in the churches, and other places of this city. This Nobleman, whom I have elsewhere mentioned, favour me with a very civil reception, and told me he was ready to obey his Majesty's orders, whenever I required it. I told him it should be as soon as he pleased, because, as his Excellence knew, I was on the point of setting out for Perisa. Upon this he appointed me to be with him at his house upon the tomb in the morning, which I took care to be, and found him ready to mount to go into the country; but he obligingly told me, the Gentleman with him would take care to go with me every where. In the first place we went to the church of Saboor, where they pretend to shew a picture by St. Luke, and Christ's garment upon which the soldiers cast lots. They say this garment fell to a soldier, who happened to be a Georgian, and that he carrying it into his own country, made a present of it to his sifter, who was a maiden; that the conceiving a great veneration for it, desired upon her deathbed it might be buried with her, and that she might be covered with it; that this being done, there arose a great tree from out of her tomb; that the Persians afterwards postfelling themselves of Georgia, the King heard of this tomb, ordered it to be opened, and took out the Garment, which he
1703. he carried away with him into Per-

zia; that some time afterwards sending
an embassy to Moscoy, he made a
prentice of it to the Great Duke, as
he was a Christian; that the Mosco-

nites desirous to be certain it was the
very garment, got together all the
blind, the lame, and others labour-

ing under other afflictions, not doubting,
but if it was, what it was said to
be, it would heal them; that the
effects proved equal to their wishes;
that it had ever since been kept to
be of use upon the same occasions,
and that it had never once failed to
answer the end. All this they affirm
for gospel, and therefore I resolved
it should be the first thing I took no-

tice of.

This church is square within, and
66 foot in length, the vault is suttain-
ed by four great pillars, and the whole
is full of pictures of Saints and the
like. There are some of them in the
Greek taste, not to be called bad,
even in the five little domes, in form
of lanterns, the largest of which is
in the middle, and the other four at
the four corners. The picture they
will have to be by St. Luke, is on
one side of the high Altar, and is a
half length of the Virgin, reprezen-
ted with Christ kissing her, their faces
being close together. It is very
gloomy and almost black; but whether
this proceeds from the effects of
time, or the smoke of the tapers, or
the fancy of the painter; certain it is
there is no great matter in it, be-

sides that it is all gilt but the faces
and the hands. This Virgin has a
dine crown of pearls and precious
stones upon her head, and a collar of
pearls which hangs down from
about her neck. In short this pi-
cure is placed in a niche, under which
there is a stall or seat. Between the
two pillars of the high Altar, there
is a great silver hanging fonce with
branches, made at Amsterdam, like
those in our churches; and besides
this, there are three of copper well
dispersed of in the body of the church;
that it must be observed there are
few ornaments in their churches,
however it happens that there are
ten silver lamps about the Altar of
1703. this. But in these lamps they burn
no oyl, which is not in use with the
Russians, but tapers which are put
into noifs fixed upon the lamps. To
the bottom of their great foncees,
they commonly hang an Ottrich's
egg. As we went out of this, we went
into the Patriarch's church, the Pa-

triarcles,

which is above small, and in form
of a dome. On the right hand over-
against the chappel there is an ap-

artment, with Christ represented sitting
in a chair, in a picture all gilt except
the face and hands, the Virgin Mary;
St. John Baptist on the left, and on
each hand an Apostle kneeling, with
a silver lamp. Between this piece
and the door of the chappel there is a
bench, raised upon some steps, and
thereon the Patriarch's seat covered
with black velvet; and as you go in
to this little church, you see an Al-
tar, behind which is a small choir,
full of pictures from top to bottom,
each representing stories of Saints,
divided from each other by columns
in the manner of windows, and here
every thing is gilt: the other side of
the walls is painted blue. Again in
the crown of the dome there is a
head of Christ, which nearly fills it,
and about it several other representa-
tions. The Patriarch's hall of audi-
ence which is tolerably large, is over-
against this church; on the right as
you go in you have the patriarchal
chair all gilt, with a green velvet
cushion and gold fringes about the
arms, and upon an efrade of three
steps high; it has at top a small
Christ in painting. As we went out
of this hall they carried us up to a
room where they keep the treasures
of most of the Patriarchs, and full of
chefts and trunks, which they opened
for me. In the first were fix patria-
archal caps, two of which were of
great value, divided from the others,
and enriched with great pearls, large
diamonds and other precious stones;
the others were the same, but not so
costly. There was a seventh adorned
with pearls only, and belonging
to the metropolitan; then they shew'd a box full of jewels, and a-

among
1703, among the rest diamond crosses hanging by golden chains. All these things had belonged to several Patriarchs who had appeared in them upon processions, and upon other such public occasions. There were also several paraffins or girdles with precious stones; many of the combs that had been used by the former patriarchs, most of them large and made of tortoiseshell; their cro- fiers with jewels at the end; several pressefull of patriarchal robes and vestments, 79 in all, and all of gold brocade, and adorned with pearls and precious stones. In the chief of them were nine vestments, of extreme magnificence and beauty, and all set with precious stones: in others were fine stoles, a palm, and a half broad, and among the rest that worn by the Patriarch Conflante in the year 6176, as the Russians compute: it is of a plain silk, and has suffered somewhat by time; they have an extraordinary regard for it, and keep it among their most magnificent vestments. In the same place you see several dishes of silver gilt, with great vases, and other vessels of the same. Having satisfied my curiosity in this place, I deferred till the next day, being Sunday, to see the rest of the churches.

First I waited upon Mr. Moesin Poeskin to know of him if I could not have a sight of Chrift's garment; but he told me it was impossible, being in a place sealed up with the Czar's own seal, and that without an express order from him there was no setting eyes on it; and I was I had not had some intimation of this in time. In short, I went again to the church of Saboor to see what was still curious to be seen; and they shewed me a great chalice or cup of gold, about two palms high, which they use in the administration of the sacrament, crowned with four fine jewels, and the foot enamelled with the sufferings of the Saviour of the world: A great dish of the same metal, enamelled like the chalice, and in like manner adorned with four jewels: two plates, a spoon with an agate handle, a gol-
1703. pains to spread out upon a long table against I came. In the first there was some of the blood of Christ, and in the others, a small cross made of the true cross, a hand of the Evangelist St. Mark; some bones of the prophet Daniel, and other Saints, like Mummy; several heads, and other reliques all very brown. Having shewn me all this, they would have carried me to see other churches, but my curiosity being satisfied, I excused my self, and thanked my conductor for the trouble I had given him, and the rest for the favour they had done me, which was quite unusual, and perhaps without example in that country.

Upon the fifteenth of this month, I went with Mr. Poppe to visit the Knez, Boris Alexeewitza Galisien, at a pretty country house five versts from Moscow, and as we went either passed by the fine estate of the Knez, Mikhaille Seraskier, the richest of all the Princes of this dominion, and so powerful that besides a great number of villages he is lord of, he has above 20000 peasants his vassals. We found the Knez, and I begged of him to grant me a passport from the office of the prikias of Casan, of which he was Vice-roy, as well as of Afracan. And this I did, because Mr. Poppe had given me to understand that the Governor of Casan and him of Afracan, would pay no regard to a passport from the prikias of Puseljeb, and might put a stop to my journey. The Knez Boris agreed to it, and dispatched me one, in consideration of Mr. Poppe who was his friend, and at the same time wrote to the Governors of Casan and Afracan in my behalf. For which we returned him our thanks, and took leave of him. This Lord had, some months before, been at Casan to make up a difference between two Tartar Princes, father and son, which arose as follows. The son having with him a woman the father was in love with, the latter got her spirited away from the former, who enraged at what had been done, declared war with his father, and appeared in the field at the head of 20000 men; the father on his side in a hurry got together 40000, and they were ready to fall on each other, when the Knez arrived and made them friends. The Remark: Tartar Prince among other things made him a present of a piece of coarse cloth, which neither burns nor confuses in the fire; and the Knez giving some of it to Mr. Poppe, he gave it to me. He told me it was made in Katay, between China and Bogaer, and that they there continued to make it. From the island of Cyprus I formerly brought some of the Rome Aduostes which may be spun into thread, and will not waste in the fire, and in former days they made a cloth of it, but the art of doing it is now lost. Pliny mentions such a kind of cloth, as do some moderns who have treated of the Roman antiquities, and the use of lamps in the monuments of the ancients.

Upon the sixteenth I dined in the city with Mr. Poppe, and returning to the flabode, I observed there was a fire in a certain place, whither I went to see how they contrived to put it out, but they do no more than throw down the next houses.

My passports being dispatched, I prepared for my departure, in company with an Armenian merchant, called Jacob Davideh, who had travelled from Iphaban to Holland, and had been some time at Amsterdam. We agreed to set out upon the twenty second, and to fall down the river to Afracan. The time I had left was employed in taking leave of my friends, and particularly Mr. Vander Hulsf our Resident, and the Sieur Brants and Lapts, to whom I owed a thousand obligations, and especially to Mr. Coyet, who being perfectly skilled in the language, and informed of the customs of the country, gave me such hints and instructions as were of great use to me in the sequel of my journey. I went from Moscow about noon, and finding no vessel to carry me on board of the ship where the Armenian was already embarked, and which was fallen down
I N my way to the ship I passed by the town of Kolomnenske, on the right hand upon an eminence; it makes a good figure, has a fine monastery, a church and two towers. You enter the two sides of it by crossing a raft of timbers fastened together, so that part of them may be removed when ships are to pass, and be put together with the rest again. I also went by several villages, charmingly situated on an eminence on the right hand of the river. Towards evening I got into a wood of low trees, and being some hours in going through it, it was late before I got to Matsko, where I heard the barks of the Armenians were not yet come. Here were two houses, and yet I lay that night in a barn half open, and upon the hard floor. Upon the twenty third in the morning, my fellow-traveller came down with four barks, and three other Armenians, who were going also to Ispidan, and informed me the ship we were to go in, and on board of which he had a great quantity of cloths, was fallen down still 60 werits lower; so we followed her by water, and reached her at ten at night; but as it was late, and every thing topsy-turvy, we did not care to go on board, but went on shore, where we made a good fire, and fed upon good pike and perch we had, as we came along, bought of some fishermen for three pence. From hence I wrote some letters to my friends in Moscow and in Holland, and upon the twenty fourth, about ten in the morning we imbarke. In these parts they have small flat-bottomed vessels, which the Russians call stroeks, and which carry about 300 bales of silk, or about 15 lasts; they are capacious, and have but one mast and one sail, a very large one, and of use chiefly when the wind is aft; but when the wind is not either right aflern, or well upon the quarters, they row with sixteen oars. They have no rudder, but a long kind of paddle, broad at the end in the water, the other end is supported by a kind of crutch adapted to the purpose, and this the patron or master manages by a tackle reeved on each side, which keeps it steady, and which may be taken on or off at pleasure. We had on board 23 sailors, and 52 passengers, as well Russians as Armenians, reckoning servants into the number. The river hitherto winds very much, and is every way about 40 fathom in breadth. In about two hours time we came to the monastery of St. Monastery of Sweden.
The TRAVELS of

1703. river, and you have the prospect of
it in No. 18. This city, which has
already been mentioned in my jour-
ney to Veroniti, is 180 werfs from
Moscow by water, because of the great
sweeps of the river, upon which it has
a bridge, or a raft rather, such as
we just now described; and here
we staid seven hours to give our
people time to get ready their can-
aves and gear for sailing. Towards
the evening we came to the river of
The Occa. Occa, which comes from the south,
where the Mosca falls into it: It is
very broad as well as the Mosca,
which till then had seemed but small
to us, and its source is not far from
the Criin Tartary. It crosses the
southern parts of Moscow, and flows
away to the eastward of the city of
Moscow, through the duchy of that
name, and falls into the Wolga at
Nij-Novgorod. This part of the
country is very pleasant, and on the
right hand is the town of Kiehiena
Serophof, where there are two great
buildings, in one of which the Go-
vernor refides, and on the left a vil-
lage, with another large edifice, 10
werfs from Kolomna. The course of
the river being more direct than hi-
therto, we advanced at a greater
rate, and did not come to in the
night. Upon the twenty sixth in the
morning, we passed by the village of
Dedenvaw on the left hand, and here
there is a fine church upon the river,
30 werfs from Kiehiena; and here
to the right and the left you see a
wood of small trees, and the river is
every where of the same breadth.
That day also we passed by several
villages, and then met with lands
higher, yet very agreeable, but there
the river begins to wind again. Steer-
ing our way east-north-east, the land
and the trees appeared to us of a
charming verdure, and at the last
turn of the mountain I took the view
you have in No. 19. Being beyond
these mountains which we had on-
ly to the right of us, we found the
river much straitned, and about even
we had, to the right and left of us,
hills covered with small trees. Upon
the twenty seventh in the morning we
faw a lofty mountain to the right, 1703.
and several villages to the left, with
cows and sheep feeding about the
country: In the mean time we had
every day fishermen, who came to us
in small boats [canoes] hollowed out
of the trunk of a tree, and sold us
more pike and perch for three or
four pence than seven or eight persons
could eat. Advancing still eastward,
we, on the left hand of us, met with
an island of some length full of trees,
and afterwards with several villages
at the foot of mountains, and the fine
monastery of Bogoslova, built of stone,
and very agreeably situated among
trees, upon a hill, and on one side
a great green plain full of cattle,
quite down to the river. This mo-
astery is north-west 20 werfs from
Pereflaw, a prospect of which you
have in No. 20. The soil here is
very fine and full of villages. About
three we had a low country, and an
hour afterwards we came in with a
gulf of the river Prorater, 15 werfs
from Pereflaw, and soon afterwards
we came in with another, as big as a
river, and ran up a great way into the
land, and an hour afterwards a third,
on the right, which stretched up the
land, towards the mountains, and
spread out on both sides; for my
part I take it to have been a flood;
and here the river again begins to
take its sweeps. About fix we had
a sight of the village of Fabrenowa up-
on an eminence, and the country o-
verflowed all beneath, nay over the
tops of the trees; it had the look of
a sea; the soil here appeared to
be sandy. There we often met with
vessels coming from Cofan and other
places, towed along with a rope, by
men with great labour and difficul-
ty; tho' they have the relief of sail-
ing when the wind can serve them.
Here we saw flocks of ducks, snipes,
and other game, and at the evening
arrived before the monastery of Bo-
regiske, built of stone, and upon a
hill not far from the river, and near
a village, three werfs from Pere-
flaw, where we staid all night. Up-
on the twenty eighth, we passed by
this town, in thick cloudy weather,
with a small village, and soon after that of Schoafe, with a church indifferent large, and built of stone. Then we came again to great inundations, and saw several great trees with water up to their branches, and this is every year, the caele till July, when the waters begin to abate. Upon the thirtieth, coming to a pretty place 100 werfts from the city of Kafemof, I drew the prospect of it as in No. 21.

We got under sail a second time, with the wind at north-east, but we did not continue to be so long, and were obliged to handle our oars again; and having passed by some villages, we came up with a country so drowned, that we could see nothing but sky, water, and the tops of trees. Towards evening we met with a vessel belonging to his Czarin Majesty, and laden with anchors for Aephe, with another with her of smaller dimensions; and we faltalus each other with firing of muskets. When we were within 30 werfts of Kafemof, we made use of but eight oars, that the crew might take turns to relieve one another, half and half. Upon the first of May, at one in the afternoon, we appeared a long side of Kafemof, seated upon the left hand of the river, and upon the top and declivity of an hill. Tho' it be considerable for extent, it has no walls, and all the houfes are of wood, as well as the four churches. Here is a tower to a moft, belonging to the Turks and Tartars, that live here, where I landed with some Armenians, to buy provisions and beer, but could get none. We rowed after the bark that kept on her way, and had much ado to overhaul her, in a full hour, passing by several villages in our way. But our people who went ashore in our absence found arparagus, and got a good store of it. They were long and slender, but well tasted, and good to eat; and taking the largest of them, I dressed them after our manner. Having gone by several villages, there came up so strong a gale against us, that it was as much as we could do to avoid striking on the star-
1703. board shore. The wind was at southeast, and we did strike and rick a little once, but we soon got aloft again; and upon this occasion I observed of these barks, that they are not ready at answering the helm. At night we came up with a village, spreading down the declivity of the hill towards the river, and there I took a prospect which you have in No. 22. Upon the second, in the morning, we arrived at Aleta, 60 werfts beyond Kajemot: It is upon the top of a hill, and lies inwards the land, so that it is not quite to be viewed from the river; is considerably large, has eight churches, and has some houses on the sides of the river; and is surrounded with several villages, and has pleasant woods on each side. We afterwards saw several villages, and a great mead full of cattle, and beyond that another gulf of the river, which seemed to wind among the meadows and their trees to a village at the foot of a mountain. The river is here very broad, and the banks on each hand are full of trees, and here we saw a prodigious flock of geese in the air.

Moruna. Upon the third we passed by Moruna, a town upon the declivity of a hill, tolerably large, with seven flatly stone churches, and several others of wood; and here they say is the best bread in all Russia. It is inhabited both by Russians and Tartars, and here begin the Tartars of Morlina. As we went on we saw again several villages and lands under water; the river is here very broad, and one of these villages was at the foot of a mountain, which runs away from leagues farther. The soil is sandy and so full of stones, that it is difficult to land: Here we saw a man continually making signs of the cross, and every now and then bowing down to the ground; which our Russians observing, went in the boat to him, with what every one had been pleased to give him, and among other things some loaves; for he was a poor beggar, and a little after we in the same manner saw three women with their children, on whom also we bestowed our alms. These poor people live in the mountains, and no sooner see a vessel approach than they come down for charity.

After this we came among some lofty hills, bare of trees, and yet very green. At length, reaching a kaba, we landed in hopes of getting some beer, but it was bad, and we had a good deal of trouble to fetch the bark; then a brisk gale sprung up against us, which forced us to lie still for some hours. After this we crossed the mouths of two rivers, the Malsua Raka to starboard, and eight werfts further on the larboard side the Clasha, which comes from Vehedimer. Upon the fourth we came into the midst of a lofty country, and got down to the village of Isbula, 40 werfts from Nijen. Here we met a bark with ten cars, which made good way against the stream of the river, whose banks were very level on each side, and covered with trees, with hills a distance. About three we drew near to the monastery of Dudina, most pleasingly situated amidst trees, upon the declivity of a hill, on whose top is a village, of which you can only see the spires of the steeples. At night it came on to blow so strong, and such a sea was raised, that we were glad to take shelter on the larboard shore of the river. Upon the fifth the wind fell, and we got under way again before it was day, and having gone by several villages, we came at length to the shipyards, which lie along the river, and reach to the suburbs of Nijen, where there is a fine and great monastery surrounded with a wall; a stone church in the bottom, better with wooden houses down to the river; another stone church, indifferently large, and well built against the hill, on the top of which is a village. The Russians commonly call this city Nijen or Niussa, others Nij-Novgorod, or the little Novgorod, and some Nijen Neningeren. It is the capital of the small Dutchy of the name, and has a citadel upon a rock, or the conflux of the Oceca and the Volga. This city
is begirt with a fine stone wall, and you go through a great bazar or market before you get to the gate called Iwanofskie, which is towards the river. This gate is built of huge blocks of stone, and is very deep; from hence you ascend by a great street full of wooden bridges, till you come to the gate called Dia-

wierofskie; near which is the great church, built of stone, and with five domes varnished over with green, and adorned with fine crosses. On one side of this church is the archie-
piscopal palace well built of stone; and within its inclosure a pretty little church with a steeple, and two other churches, the one of stone, the other of wood. The prikias or chancery is also near this gate, and of wood, as is also the Governor's house. However, there is no great fight to be seen in this city, whose circumference is not very great, and all its houses of wood; nor has it more than two gates. The country about it is pleasant to the eye, full of trees, and well stored with houses. Its walls are flanked with towers both round and square, and among them is one more considerable than the rest, and to be seen at a great dis-

tance. In the gate on the land-side, in the passage to the guard room, were four pieces of cannon. But the suburbs of this city are very large, especially next the river, where are several churches of stone, and where the hill, divided into several parts, on which there are churches and houset, has a very fine effect; but there is no seeing of the circuit of it, because of the heights and the depths which intercept the sight. The river here is always crowded with a great number of embarka-
tions going and coming from all parts. Upon the side of it is a great village belonging to Mr. Gregory De-
mir Dzrogev, where there is a fine stone church, and a great house of the same where this merchant sometimes resides. About eight there went away 48 great carts, with ten oars each, and 40 hands to load wood; and all these belonged to this Gen-
tleman, who is reckoned to be the richest merchant in all Russia; and to each of those who went to fetch his wood he gave three six-dollars. At night they began to ring the bells for the feast of the Assumption which was to be kept the next day. Here we took in a store of provisions, and particularly brandy, which is at this place both good and cheap, for you have eight bottles of it for 40 pence; nor did the Armenians forget to take as much of it as they thought they should want. Nor are eatables less plentiful: You may here buy a lamb or an ordinary sheep for thirteen or fourteen pence; two small ducks for a penny; a good pullet for three-pence; twenty eggs for a penny; two white loaves, reasonably big, for a penny; a brown loaf of seven or eight pound for the same price, and the beer is both good and cheap. This city is computed to be 800 werfts from Moscow, which make about 160 German leagues, the distance is not above 100 of the same leagues by land; and stands upon the Obca, which we entered at Kolom-

na, as we have said; and here this river falls into the Wolga, formerly called the Rba; and these two rivers thus united, are about 4000 foot broad, if we may rely upon those who have measured them in winter upon the ice. This place is at pre-
fent inhabited by none but Russians; here are no Tartars; it is very populous, and in the latitude of 56 degrees 28 minutes. I should have been glad to have seen it in front, and have taken a view of it from the river, but they would not suffer me to do it, nor for money, because of the holiday; for upon holidays, the Russi-
ans do nothing in the world but get drunk; and in this pickle did I see many of them wallowing in the streets. It is odd enough to see how the poor keep all day long before the kibaks, or houset where they fell brandy; I staid some hours in that where we bought ours, to see the pranks and mummerety of these drunk-
hards, when the liquor first begins to operate; but they must stand in
the street, they must not presume to go into the house. At the door there is a table where they deposite their money, and then they give them the quantity of brandy they want, which is taken out of a great kettles, with a wooden ladle, and poured into a cup of the same material, the smallest measure of all costing an halfpenny. And thus are they served by a particular person who all the day long does nothing else, attended by another, who receives the money; nor is this publick practice of drunkenness common to the men only, it is the very same with the women. In short, I saw this scene over again at a kabbaz for beer, where they are allowed to go in to drink. Upon the sixth we embarked to get our people on board, and pass the night upon the river; early the next day we proceeded on our voyage, and as we pass'd by the city and the suburbs, I like the view of it so well, that you will find it drawn by me in No. 24. Advancing forward we saw two villages on the larboard of us, one of which was very great and called Weeffna, and on the starboard the monastery of Beffjerske, a great building all of stone, the roofs excepted, with several houses to the right and left, a werft from the city. We also saw a small church called Saffosini upon a hill, and some hundreds of persons going to it from all parts to celebrate the festival, and spreading their tents to divert themselves under. We continued at three werfts from the city till the seventh at seven in the morning, and about noon we came up with an island, about two werfts in length, and covered with trees. We then went by several hills, and another island without trees; and left the river of Kerfimia, and the monastery of Maccaria to the larboard of us. This monastery is a great building of stone, and looks like a castle or fort, being surrounded with a fine square stone wall, with a tower at each corner of it: I should have been glad to have taken a view of it, but the day was too fair spent. On one side there was a village, and a chan or caravanerai built of wood, where the merchants keep their goods; and is a place where there is a great fair every year, in the month of July, whether most of the traders in Russland resort, tho' it lasts but a fortnight. Our Russians going thither to buy fish, were told, that not above a fortnight before a certain Governor coming from Moscov, had been there attacked by three bands, manned with each 18 Russian pirates; that the Governor's was so well provided with arms, and defended itself so well as to kill three of the pirates, and obliged the rest to betake themselves to flight; that this accident had driven the Governor back again to Moscov, but that he had left one of his people in the village to be dressed of his wounds he had received in the skirmish.

This made us resolve to keep upon our guard, and we prepared our arms to defend us in case of need, being provided with about 40 muskets and pouds, and all the night we had a Russian and Armenian passenger upon the watch.

Upon the eighth, at break of day we arrived at Bormino, 100 werfts from the last town we had pass'd; and here we had the shore on each side full of trees, and the river of small islands, and about eight we got to the town of Geckima, which belongs to Count Golmow. This place stretches a good way along the river, and is said to contain 7000 houses; and here the country people brought us bread to sell. As we held on our course we saw several floating islands upon the river, which is here very broad; and about ten we crossed the mouth of the Semiramis Tartars who reach quite to Caffan. About four we arrived at the town of Kaffnademanski; 40 Kaffnade- werfts from the last. It is tolerably large, and stretches along the river,
1703. river, and partly up the hill, but has
no wall. The wind being southerly we got up our sail, and as we went on, we observed the two shores to be full of linden trees, and several islands, but few hills. In the
night we passed by Sabaksar, which is 40 werfts from the former, to which we added an eminence also, and I thought it looked very pretty; and 30 werfts

Kokshaga from thence we saw the town of Kokshaga on the larboard of us. Upon the ninth we were at some high hills, and came up with a great bank attended by several others, bound for Cafan: The weather calm, moist and hot. About noon we passed before Blovolska, but 80 werfts from Cafan, on the starboard side, and thence to Blovolska, where our people went for some refreshments. At three we steered by the town of Swyatski, with a fair wind. This place is upon an eminence, is provided with a citadel, and has several churches and monasteries of stone, but the houses and walls are of wood; and the whole is formed into an island by the Swyage, which comes from the south-east, and here falls into the Wolga. Over against the town, on the side of the Wolga, at the point of a hill, you see the village of Soldatske labode, between which and this town this river falls into the Wolga, as has been said, and as appears by No. 25, where you see an island before the river of Swyage or Swyatski. We coasted this hill or mountain, and steered away south half east, and at six had sight of the city of Cafan, on larboard of us, distant four werfts. It makes a great figure because of the churches and monasteries it is full of, and its citadel surrounded with an enceint of stone. We had a little before failed by the yards where they build the ships, fix or seven werfts from the town, in a reach where the river is very broad, and here we saw 40 vessels of all sorts upon the flocks, and many others more near
ly completed, on the side of the town. They told us they were to build 380, most of which were to
go to Astrakan for the service and care of the Caspian sea, and the rest to other places. I took a view of Cafan as we went by, in the best manner I could, and as you may see in No. 26. It is in Afsa, and in the

southern parts of the Muscovite Tartary, upon a river of the same name, which the inhabitants call Casmak, and falls into the Wolga, and is the capital of the kingdom so called, between that of Bulgar and the Cassamisians. This city has a wall of wood. Beyond this we met with several islands, which seemed like forests in the river, and upon the hills took notice of a kiln, where they were at work, and on the left of us lands under water. Upon the

tenth, we came to the mouth of the river of Kama, which falls on the larboard side into the Wolga, at the distance of 60 werfts from Cafan; it is very broad and comes from the north-east, and falls with such a torrent into the Wolga, as alone to hurry on vessels for some leagues. They say the water of it is brown, which I did not perceive, tho' it is certain so treet, that it mends the Wolga very much for drinking. About noon we came to the small town of Te-Tsestsa.

toets or Tetus, upon a lofty hill, 90 werfts from Cafan; it is surrounded with a wooden wall, and consists of poor wooden houses, and small churches: You can only see a part of the walls as you go by. There is also, upon the river side, a small village, where our people went for provision and ice to cool our drink. We then went by a great island called Starisza, 40 werfts from Tetus, and at night by several others full of trees; and here the river is a good league in breadth, and has mountains on the starboard side of it: As the wind was both strong and against us, we rode at anchor a part of the night. Upon the eleventh I went a

a-there with my Armenian and some Russians, to buy provisions near the town of Simhierska, which is on the simhier-right upon a hill, three werfts from the river. They say it was formerly a large city, and destroyed by the great
1703. great Tamerlane; tho' as I understand, there are no remains of it at this day, nor had I time to search for any. Some will have it there were other cities and islands higher up, of which there are ruins still to be seen, but it is a matter to be doubted: Tho' they affliured me, that near Zarits there were still some footsteps of an old cattle and its walls. Upon the whole they affirm, there are very considerable and very ancient cities between Cofan and Aftracan, and among the rest Ackteoba, upon the river of Offa, tho' concerning this I have been able to gather nothing certain. True it is the Offa is known between Saratof and Zaritba, on the other side of the Wolga, and that it falls into this river and washes even a part of Siberia. It is known also that the city of Ackteoba was upon this river, but there are not the least traces of it left now, all the stones having been removed to build Aftracan, and some other places. Being on shore I found the puliuse of the village of Simbierska of great extent, partly upon the river, and partly upon the hill which we were to go up, before we got to the Bazar. When we came a fire had just broke out among some houses upon the hill, and had already destroyed five or six of them, and in less than half an hour there were above 20 burnt down; for the wind was so high that they were in flames before they could pull them down to stop it: We here found every thing as cheap as at Nicsina; I should have been glad to have gone quite up to the place itself, which is 180Aerits from Cofan, but our vessel being under way there was no doing it. I was however informed it was large, surrounded with a wooden wall; that in it were eight stone churches, three or four monasteries, and above 10,000 houses all inhabited by Russians, the Tartars keeping in the villages. We were almost two hours before we could overtake our bark, nor was it without danger we rowed after her, the river whirling about violently in some places, and being very deep, 1703 has such a troublesome swell that a small boat can hardly live in it. We again met with several places covered with trees, and very pleasant to look at, and hills also that they themselves through these same trees. Thirty wefts from this town we came to the village of Siengiela, and several others inhabited by Russians, and soon after to the town of Novo Devitke Salo, of great extent, very close, with many churches and a great flespe. In the night we met with a bark rowing and full of Russians, who asked us whence we came, whither we were bound, and what we were? We answered, we belonged to his Czarian Majesty, and advised them to come no nearer for fear they repented it; we apprehended them to be rogues. Upon the twelfth in the morning we saw hills on each hand of us, some of them covered with fir, a fight we had not seen till now. The river was not a weft broad in this place, tho' to make amends it was very deep. It had been so high this year, that it had drowned all the land we have spoken of, so that there were even rivers that could not be distinguished. The Russians are very ignorant in those things, and could tell me nothing of the cause of it, neither could I get any information on shore, because our vessel made no stay here. At nine we got to the village of Siera Barak, 40 wefts on this side Samara; here our people went ashore for provision, and the river widened, and we saw an island under water, and on the left of us a high round hill with hardly any trees, called Surial Kiergen. The Russians told us it was the tomb of a King, or Emperor of Tartary, called Mam-Shog of a men, who came up the Wolga with Tartar 70 other Tartar Kings to seize upon Russla: That dying in this place, his soldiers whom he had brought in great numbers on this expedition, filled each his helmet and buckler with earth, to raise him a mountain, which is this hill. A small league from hence you meet with another
another called Kabia Gara, covered with trees, and extending to Samara, those on the left are so thick that there is no seeing thro' them, the growth being chiefly alders and willows. Here they find the best sulphur in the world, a discovery which has not been made above two years; and here were then at work upon it 4000 persons, as well Russians as Coeremishians and Moldavianians; over whom the Czar has surveyors and soldiers. These hills are on the west of the river, and at two in the afternoon we came to Samara, on the east of the same, and upon the acclivity and top of a hill, not very high, and bare of trees, and ending with the town itself upon the river side, as you see in No. 27, and not as others have written two versts from the river. At the end of this town you have the river Samara, whose name it bears, and they say it falls into the Volga five or six versts from thence. This town is indifferently large, all of wood, with poor wretched houles. Its walls are of wood also, and flanked with towers, of which there is a very great one on the land side. The city covers almost the whole hill, and the suburbs stretch along the side of the river. They compute it to be 350 versts from Kaspar, and as you go by it, you see a gate, and several small churches with some monasteries. Twenty-five versts from hence, we, on the harbor side, saw a river called Askula fall into the Volga, and into this does the Samara discharge itself. Here we loth fight of the hills and mountains, the river was very broad, and shortly after we had fight of them again very near us upon the right hand. We met with several vessels that day, and saw ducks of an extraordinary size, brown and white, and thwarted the river Wassele on the larboard of us; it is but small, and near it, in the Volga, a narrow flip of an island covered with trees, and under water, which we thought very strange. Then we met with another vessel from Afracan, whose

CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

matter told us he had fourteen others coming after him, all bound for the fair of Makaria, we have mentioned elsewhere; part of them went by us in the night. Upon the thirteenth, on the left of us we saw Kaspar, 120 versts from Samara; it is small, with a wooden encient flanked, with towers of the same, and has also some churches the same. Its suburb or village is on one side, as may be observed No. 28. About a league farther there is another town, called Siefven, indifferently large, and with several stone churches. The mountains here are dry and bare; but they are much better a little farther on. The Calmuc Tartars scour these parts, and carry off man and beast, and whatever else comes in their way. A little still farther on, the river winds very much, among great islands full of trees, and the country was so overflowed, that it was difficult to distinguish the bed of Volga. We then saw the hills again upon our right, but parched up with the great drought and heat of the sun, whereas at other times they are covered with verdure; and indeed the country people earnestly longed for rain, being at a loss for with whom to keep their cattle. We then went on to Sel'a at the foot of the mountains, 60 versts from Kaspar; and there we met with three great streams, one of which belonged to his Czarian Majesty; they were full of Cojacs women, whom they were transporting to Caspar, and whose husbands had been hung up the year before for their robberies, concerning which we shall have occasion to speak hereafter. From hence we crossed the entrance of the river Wassele, opposite to which you have the Novo Derevene, or the New Village belonging to Count Golowin. We rode part of the night at anchor, to ease our people, who had been fatigued with a spell of 60 versts. Upon the fourteenth we had the wind aften, and went down the river at a great rate. A vessel laden with crockery, and bound for Afracan, passed by us; and about ele-

Y
1703. when we got to Wibrasinska, 65 miles
from Saratof, where the hills were
very steep, covered with a grey sand,
and full of stones. Here we met
with fishermen, who gave our peo-
ple a great deal of fish for a little
brandy, which they are not allowed
to sell. This part abounds with oaks.
Soon after this we were taken with
a violent storm of wind, thunder,
and rain, which made the river as
rough and boisterous as a sea, and
obliged us to come to anchor under
the larboard shore, where our ves-
set struck so hard against some
trunks of trees, that we were in im-
minent danger, and had like to have
loft our boats; for these barks have
but a small anchor, which they dare
not let go in the open channel,
when the wind is high, because it
would not be sufficient to keep them
from driving; but the storm did not
last long. At night we went on
shore, 20 werfts from Saratof, where
we lighted up a good fire, and met
with oaks, wild roses, and other
flowers; and having recovered our-
selves, we returned to our vessel:
But we had no sooner got on board,
than one of our Armenian merchants
had a fit which made us despair of
his life; and in it he continued for
two or three hours, when he began
to move a little, but without any
power to speak. In the midst of this
we came to Saratof, and bought
him upon deck, where we saw clotted
blood come out of his mouth,
which made us fancy he had an
impothume in his throat, and that
he would hardly recover. In the
mean time we sent to the town for
a Physician or Surgeon, but none
being to be found, and perceiving I
could be of no use to the sick man,
I went to see the town, which is in
the south-east of Russia, and on the
north-east of the Volga, against, and
in part upon a hill, its subarbs stretching
along the river. I found it had
no walls in the highest parts, but
wooden towers at some distance from
each other. It has a gate a quarter
of a league from the river, and an-
other on the left hand, separate from
the town, and a third on the side of
Moscow by land, with some pal-
lisades between them. When you
come to the side on the right hand
of the river, you have a decent with
gardens; and beyond this last gate
you see an open country and a bea-
ten road, frequented by those who
travel from Astracan to Moscow by
land; and here are several wooden
churches, besides which there is no-
thing remarkable; except that the
inhabitants are not only all Ruffians,
but almost all soldiers, under the
command of a Governor. Eight
years ago this town was reduced to
ruins by a fire, but is now all re-
built. In these parts the Tartars
commit continual ravages, extend-
ring quite home to the Caspian and
the river of Taika. They reckon it
is 350 werfts from Samara, and in
the latitude of 52 degrees 12 mi-
utes. There we saw several ves-
sets full of soldiers, designed for
Afshab and elsewhere, and we depar-
ted before noon. From the river
you see nothing but the towers and
the tops of the churches, because
the subarbs is between the city and
the river.

When we came back to our ves-
sel, we found the sick man in the
condition we had left him, and he
died about three, which surprized us.

Death of
him ather brisk and seemingly in
very good health. His companions ex-
pressed great sorrow for him, and
covered him over with a cotton
cloth, which they tied about his
legs, putting a book upon his head,
a crois upon his breast, and incendi
at his head. Then two of them
began to read out of a book for two
hours together, and in the mean time
they prepared him a sheer, a thirt
and drawers of new cloth: This
done, his servants went on shore to
look for a proper place to bury
him, but before they carried him thit-
ther, they read and sung a second time
beside him: When he was on shore
they stripped him, washed his head,
and then his whole body, which they
placed upon a plank, and put him on
his
1703. his new drawers and shirt, a cross about his neck, which fell upon his breast, a chaplet of beads in his right hand, and a taper in his left. They then put plaister or linens upon his eyes, mouth and ears, and crossed his arms; and this done, they wrapped him up in a sheet, and put him upon a bier covered with a carpet. Thus they carried him in procession to the top of the hill, where they had dug a grave for him, and then began again to sing and to read, and the Armenians kissing his forehead one after another, they committed him to the earth, and threw each a handful of sand upon him, with signs of the cross and other ceremonies. At last they filled up the grave with earth and stones, and placed a great wooden cross at his head, and three small ones across one upon another, and threw great stones upon the grave, and threw gunpowder about it; not forgetting a taper at the head. These ceremonies over, they each of them in order kissed the highest stone, and burned the incense upon it, and setting fire to the gunpowder, they presented every one present with a small glass of brandy. Every one belonging to our vessel attended this funeral, nor could several forbear to mix their tears with those of the Armenians, so mournful was the office, and especially for a man we had so very lately seen in perfect health. His name was Peter Archangel, and he lived at Ipsabas, where his wife and children longed to see him with the utmost impatience.

This hill, which is divided from the rest, was surrounded with oaks, willows, alders, and here and there had rote trees in the bud; and if the ground had been a little moister, we should certainly have met with flowers and herbs; tho' we could not go down to the village for the waters that were out: This mountain is called the hill of Seraphim, and is 26 werts from Saratof. After this we had several of the most pleasant prospects in the world. Upon the sixteenth we had fight again of steep mountains crum-

bled away in several places, very sturdy, and full of swallows nests, and saw there birds continually flying in and out. The river is here also full of islands, and at a distance we descried the Golden mountain, which they call Solostegori, and some others more covered with verdure and trees; and between two the small river of Dorezink, which runs to River of wards the north-west, 25 werts from Dorezink. Sarogamas. Then we met with a wood between us and the hills, partly in the water, and where two banks had been cast away when the river was at the highest, and were still entire. We here also saw some fishermens huts, and towards night we passed by Sarogamas, a town they had been Sarogam building for four years, and was now pretty far advanced, indifferently large, and surrounded with a mud wall, which they were hard at work upon; and near 400 families were already come to settle here from Majew. The hill it is built upon is lofty towards the river, steep, and very rocky. On the left hand, beneath the town, you have the river of Kamufshinka, which goes away westerly, and they say it springs from the canal of Ilobo, which falls into the Don, which diemboques itself into the lake Morottis, and divides Europe from Asia. They say the Cossack upon the banks of the Don were used to come upon the Volga in boats, and commit great depredations in those parts, though men of warlike profession were frequently sent to repress their insolence; but as all was in vain, this town was built as a bridle upon them. They were also at work upon a fort, with a mud wall on the other shore of the Kamufshinka; but this building went on heavily, the workmen not being able to stand the badness of the air: And had it not been for this, the Czar would have dug a canal from hence into the Black Sea. I went to see this work, and they told me the first design was to have built this town, where the fort was begun; but that it had been given over, on account of the
the badnes of the air. It was re-
solved also to make a dyke from one
mountain to the other, to intercept
the course of the Kamuckinka, and
prevent it from falling into the Wol-
ga; but this also they were obliged
to give over, because the gates of the
duces could not bear up against the
weight and violence of the waters,
which from time to time come
down from the mountains; besides
that the foil beneath the stream was
so ftony, and even so much upon
the solid rock, that there was no
driving into it. All this constrained
the projector to desist from his un-
dertaking, to avoid the vexation of
mind he must have suffered by a
disappointment.

We had got so far, very little by
the help of our sails, but by the ra-
pidity of the current, and the use of
our oars, going on at the rate of 120
werks a day, or 24 hours. Upon
the seventeenth in the morning we
thwarted the river of Boblolea,
90 werks from the last town we
went by, and there met with a stout
bark belonging to the Czar, and
coming from Afracan. In this place
I drew a prospect, which you have
in No. 30.

About eleven we had a violent
squall from the hills, and were for-
ced to double man our oars, and
with all their pulling, it was as
much as they could do to keep clear
of the larboard shore: And at last
we were obliged to make fast to
some trees in the water, at the foot
of the mountains, but fair weather
coming on again, we went our way,
and came to an island on the left
of us, called Alinda-Loea. The
mountain runs out so in a point to-
wards this island, that the passage
between them is very narrow; this
place is 60 werks from Zaritja.
A squall blew us ashore soon af-
wards, but we were not long
before we were on foot again; but
the wind continuing, and even ga-
thering strength, and the rain falling
apace, we thought it best to shelter
ourselves under the lee of the hills,
and make fast a second time to the
trees. We then went ashore in our 1703;
boat, which had been impracticable
with the bark, and made up a fire
to cook some viuals; while the
rest were at this, I went up the hill
to look for flowers and plants, but
every thing was burnt up and wi-
thered, and besides the wind was so
high, it was difficult to stand against
it, and I went back again as fast as
I could, but in my return, I found
upon the withered plants and herbs,
a sort of butterflies, blue on the out-
side, and of a grey speckled within,
some of which I brought away with
me for the eauty of their colours
variety.

The weather continued as it was,
and with a nipping cold till eight at
night, when the wind began to grow
duller and thifter in our favour.
Whereupon we immediately got up
our canvass, and at two in the morn-
ing we arrived at Zaritja, where we
flaid till the day broke, being the
eighteenth, and at sun-rise we depar-
ted. This town is upon a low kind
of a hill; is small in compass, and
seemed to be square, with a wall
flanked with towers. Its suburbs
stretches along the shore, and goes
partly about the town, and its chief
church is of stone, but not then fi-
nished, the rest are of wood only,
and scarce at all to be seen; I took
a view of it however as we pased
by as you may see in No. 31. It is
in the latitude of 48 degrees 23 mi-
utes. From hence to Afracan the
woods abound with liquorice, with
a stalk three or four foot high, and
the isle of Serpinske, which is twelve
werks in length is not far from hence.

Behind this island there is a canal
of communication between the Don
and the Wogsa, which it seems is
not navigable, and which, as well
as the island, the Russians call Ser-
pinske. We then began to lose sight
of the mountains, and by ten we
were 60 werks from Zaritja, having
pasted by several islands in our way.
Mean time the hills stretched away
farther and farther from us up the
country to Tsenogar, from whence
we were as yet 40 werks, the river
being
being here three or four werfts in breadth. After this we had the wind right aft, but so brisk that we had much ado to keep our vessel from yawing to one side or the other, so as to run aground; and one of our boats struck with such violence against our rudder, that we were obliged to cut her away, and let her sink; a loss which might have been spared, for I had not been out of her a minute, on account of a hound I had in her, which I removed into the other boat upon observing her to make water; nay even some of our passengers lay in her in the night, there not being sufficient room for them in the vessel herself. At sun-set we arrived at Tzenegar, 200 werfts from Zarif, the wind having flooded fair for us all the day. This town is 300 werfts from Afracan, and upon a hill on the starboard shore. The first thing you see here is a corps de garde, of which you only see the top or roof, and on the other side you have another of wood, and in form of a Lanthorn. The town itself is small, surrounded with a wooden wall, and defended with towers; but it has nothing remarkable within, and no more than seven or eight wretched houses without. The Russians wanted to land here, as I believe, to distribute some money they had raised among them, in the bad weather, to the poor; but the wind was so high, and the current so rapid, that we shot a good way beyond the town, and were forced to come to anchor, but the cable too weak to bear the effort both of the gale and stream, parted, and we were adrift. This I had foreseen, and advised our people to hand their sail, before they had quite reached the town, and come to with their oars; but as it was, and the shore being very steep, they were obliged to get into the water to hale our vessel to shore with hawfers; and then they took the boat and went to the town, while we flaid under the lee of the hills. I went also to the town, but being somewhat belated they would not let us in, the soldiers and the country people shutting the gates upon us; tho' indeed they were so good as to bring us beer, bread, milk and eggs to fell. Every body returning to the vessel, search was in vain all night made for the anchor; but the next morning they found it. This town is inhabited by none but soldiers, who are kept here to withstand the ravages of the Calmuc Tartars, who sometimes come and carry off cattle, and four the country quite to Semara. Upon the nineteenth the wind was against us, and we got out our oars, and, as we rowed along, we saw several steep hills, green at top, and all about the sides sandy; and here the river was a werft broad. We then rowed away to a great wear or fifthery, 80 werfts from Tzenegar, called Kaslarske, and which produces most admirable fish; and here also we saw a gulf the Volga has formed by incroachment on the lands. Having gone 125 werfts we came to an anchor in the night; at break of day, upon the twentieth, we weighed and departed; and the wind being fair for us, we were by noon within 100 werfts of Afracan. There we doubled a point where the river sweeps round with such a torrent, that vessels are frequently lost; and here you have 40 fathom of water. A little farther we met with a number of ducks, and an island ten werfts long, in a reach where the river is very wide. At the point of this island there was a guard of 30 soldiers, in three or four cabbins, where all vessels must stop. While we were here, we saw two barks from Afracan on the opposite side, but the soldiers having sight of them, they got into a boat and sailed after them. We had at anchor with us two large vessels bound for Cofan, but we flaid here no longer than an hour, and at a distance saw hills which stretch away to Afracan. About seven we were within 22 werfts of this city, and an hour afterwards we saw a flour bark on shore, and partly to pieces, tho' there were people still on board of her. Soon after this
1703. we had sight of the church of Saviour, a very great one, and about
eleven at night we arrived at Astrakan, 2000 werfs, or 400 German leages from Moscow, Czajan stand-
ing in about the mid-way.

C H A P. XVI.

Description of Astrakan. Situation of the gardens. Abundance of fish. Manner of living among the Tartars.

Arrived at Astrakan.

W HEN we landed they searched every thing we had on
to board, except my baggage. I went
directly to wait on the Governor
Timofey Evdnowicz Ursowskitz, and pre-
sented him my two passports and a
letter from the Knez Boris Alexe-
nowitz. He received me very kindly,
and having perused my letter, made
me an offer of his house, and every
thing I might want during my stay
in this city; but I returned him
thanks, and told him, I was under
a necessity to be with my Arme-
nians, whose language I understood,
and with whom I was to go on to
Persia. He was satisfied at this, and
sent for my things, which, unearth-
ed, he ordered to be carried to the
Caravanera of the Armenians, where
I lodged with Mr. Jacob Daviedof,
of whom I have made mention be-
fore. We had scarce dined when
eight or ten persons came to us from
the Governor with a present of refi-
sements, consisting of a small cask
of brandy, a large vessel of copper
lined, full of red wine, and two
others like it, full of mead and beer;
four large loaves, two geese, and se-
veral pullets. These, to whom, as
my way was, I made a small pre-
sent in return, were no sooner gone,
than two soldiers came to do duty
at my door, and were to be relieved
every eight days. They also sent
me a Russian Ensign who under-
stood Dutch, to carry me about, and
be my interpreter. At that time the
Governor received advice of the
taking of the fortresses of Neyen,
which the Czar had carried by af-
fault upon the 2d of May, and where
he found 80 pieces of cannon, 8
mortars, and a Swedish garrison of
3500 men, to whom, as the report
was, he had given their liberty.

I went to walk about the town,
which is upon the east of the Wol-
ga, in the ancient Scythia; the no-
the whole tract between the Wolga,
of Astrakan, the Jaika, and the Czapian is called
Nejana, and the country in general
the kingdom of Astrakan, from
the city of Astrakan, the capi-
tal of that name, which is in the
Abatich Tartary, upon the frontiers of
Russie, and upon the principal
branch of the Wolga, which a few
leagues from thence empties it-
self into the Czapian; concerning
which we shall be more ample in
what is to follow. This city is in
46 degrees 22 minutes of northern
alitude, in a little island called Del-
gei, formed by a small river which
may be seen from one of the tow-
ers. The bight ground about it is
eastward towards and quite to the
river Jaika. To the westward of
it, there is a great heath, which is
said to be 70 leagues, and to extend
towards the Black Sea, and even
some leagues furtherly quite to the
Czapian. Here you have a very
fine falt, which is sent all over Russie.

This town is defended by a good
stone wall, a league in circum-
ference, and with ten gates. I went
out by that of St. Nicholas, or the city.
Nikoohke Warate, and followed the
river upwards to go round it. From
thence I went to the Red Gate or
Krafitve
Krajiie Warate, in the highest and most advanced part of the town. From thence striking into the country, I came to the gate of the Granary or the Gieitnie Warate, which is shut up, but there is another which goes into the citadel, where they go in and out. This Granary which is without the enceint of the town, is surrounded also with a stone wall. From hence you go to the Moslagatskie Warate, near which at some distance from the city, is another gate of wood, which is not reckoned into those of the town; it is the gate of the Tartars, who live on that side, and where there is always a guard of Russians. Afterwards you come to the gate of Reolfjnstie and that of Wjinefjnske, between which there are two towers in the walls, 300 paces from each other. From hence you turn down towards the river to go to that of Spaskie, and from thence to that of Jaffnie, without which is the fish-market, the bread-market, the herb-market and the like. At some distance from hence you see another tower, and then the gate of Garinische, and near that without, the wood-market, and the place assigned for bakers, who are not allowed to be within the town. From this gate you go to that of Kabatstie, passing by a tower between that and the former. Six of these ten gates are upon the river, and two belong to the citadel, which makes a part of the city wall; and it has a third called Prijsmijnstie, or the clean gate, which goes into the city opposite to the Bazar, or great street called Bolsjautitz, where you have the greatest shops both of the Russians and Armenians. As you go through this gate to go into the citadel, you have on the left of you the church of Saboor, which they had begun five years before, at the expense of the metropolitan, whose name is Samson. This prelate has his peculiars rights over the clergy, and an office or spiritual court of his own; and is also the metropolitan of Tirk, a city under his Czara.

The great church.

1703.

Cornelius Le Bruyn.

1703.

The chief church after that of Saboor is that of Jafweisfinsje, of brick paling over. The dome of it is girt as well as the crofs, which is three fathom in length; that beneath is green as well as thofe of the steeple. All the rest of the churches are of wood, as well as the monasteries of Troyts and Petenske, the last of which is for women.

In the morning there is every Tartar thing to be had at the Tartar Bazar.

zar.
1703. zar or market, where the Russians and Armenians also have liberty to expose their goods to sale; but this market is over by the afternoon, when the Russians have theirs, tho' to this also the Armenians are admitted; as for the Indians they do their business in their caravanserai.

As for the city most of the streets are narrow, and well enough to walk in when it is dry weather, but impassable when it is wet, because the soil is very far and full of salt, the reason why the ground has a whitish cast when it is dry.

It is governed by the Governor and three burgo-masters, the first of which is president of the town-house; the second has the inspection of the kabbac or houses where they sell wines, beer, and mead, and the third has the direction of his Majesty's fishery.

Beyond the river and without the encircles of the city, you see the monastery of Ivan, a fine stone building, and two other cloisters, and several flocks of sheep, and the chief of which is that of the fortress, to the eastward of the city, along the river of Katte, which falls into the Wolga. His Majesty's ships lie along that of Balda, over against the city. Tho' of Causani and Stepielew are for all sorts of people. The flabode of the Tartars is divided from the rest, and almost all built of earth and clay hardened in the sun; and here they are during winter, but in summer they are in the open country. Last year one half of this town was reduced to ashes, and many ruins are still to be seen, but they are hard at work in rebuilding it.

Having thus in part satisfied my curiosity, I desired the Governor to give me leave to draw what I should think fit, and he granted my request upon the spot. With this intent I went upon the water in a small bark with oars, but I found the river too rapid to let me do my work, upon which the Governor was so good as to let me have a larger vessel provided with an anchor; but it coming on to rain when I would have made use of her, I was obliged to defer what I would have done till we had fairer weather. I thought the town looked very handsome from the side where the ships are, and took it as you may see in No. 32; where every particular is distinguished by figures, (1) The monastery of Ivan or St. John. (2) The Wisiensinske or monastery of the Ascension of our Lord, both without the town. (3) The Wisiensinske Varaste, or gate of the Ascension. (4) The church of Smolenske. (5) The Spaske monastyr, or monastery of Jesus Christ in swaddling clothes. (6) The church of Samfetra. (7) Of the Wisiensinske Sirko, or church of the Annunciation. (8) The gate of the Cabbac. (9) The Kromel or citadel whose wall begins in the town. (10) The Klocktse or the steeple. (11) The Szaljenske or the clock tower. (12) The Widota or the great church. (13) The monastery of Troyt. (15) The gate of St. Nicholas. (16) The Governor's palace. (17) Ivan Boglajfisch, or church so called, in honour of a certain Saint. (18) The Wokrisinske Sirko, or church of Christ represented in swaddling clothes. (19) The Red Gate the farthest advanced towards the river on the side of the Caisan. (20) The Wolga on the other side of which are the ships over against the city. There were two of them aground, and all rotten, by the misconduct of a certain Hamburger called Meyer, a captain of a ship. And a little higher there were fifteen other ships that were come that year from Caisan. There is a great number of gibbets in this part, and on the other side of the town, to each of which hung half a dozen naked Caisans, whose cloths had been sold at market by the Russians, who had stripped them. These carcasses had been so broiled by the heat of the sun, that they were as black as a coal, and frightful to look at; but those that had been hung up nearer to the city had been carried off by their friends, those who had been joined by some rebels and defectors.
1703. defeters from Afracen, had posted themselves at a place called Gargan, upon a river of the same name, with three pieces of cannon and two ensigns; here they were besieged and in a fortnight's time obliged to surrender at discretion, after a stout defence; this happened upon the 10th of August last year. Most of them were hanged upon the frontiers of Russia, where they had been most guilty of their robberies, and some of them suffered the same death as Afracen, besides 30 of the ring-leaders, who were sent to Moscow, where some were beheaded and some hanged; as for their wives and children they were sent to Caisan. The Prince or Knez Aldrige Chum Bolatruwitz, a Circassian, was present upon this expedition with 400 of his Tartars, and Mr. Wigne, a Swede by nation, was there with 1000 Russians, whom he commanded in chief; and to these were joined 500 Strelles. The regiment of Wigne had four pieces of cannon and two mortars, and the Strelles had eight pieces of cannon, but these arrived too late. Mr. Wigne declared to me, that during the whole course of the siege, he had at midnight heard the howling of 4 or 500 jackalls or wild dogs, in a most inconceivable manner, and that none of them were either heard or seen after the surrender of the place. The troops at this time in garrison at Afracen, were the regiment of Wigne, of 1000 men, without the officers, (viz.) the Colonel, two Majors, five Captains, ten Lieutenants, and ten Ensigns, the Sergeants and Corporals being included in the number of common men; 600 Muscovite Strelles commanded by six Captains, and twelve Sergeants; three other regiments of Strelles, natives of the country, of 300 men each, commanded by a Colonel and three Stolnics or Captains; two regiments of horse, each of 500 Russians, natives of this city: in all about 3200 men. The regiment of Wigne had 13 pieces of cannon, the rest more or less in proportion.

Provisions abound in this country, 1703; wheat excepted, which is brought from Caisan and other places, but especially fish, of which the most esteemed is the Balove, some of which are two fathoms in length. The Strelet is an eel long, and we may safely say it is the best fish in all Russia. One of them alive at Moscow will sell for six or seven rubles, but here you may have one for two pence or three pence. They clean it and boil it, much as we do salmon, and it is certainly the most delicious fish one can eat. They are of two sorts, the one with a longer beak than the other, but in general it is not very unlike aurgeon, as you may see in No. 32. I got two of them dried to keep. The Severoeses differ in nothing from a sturgeon, which they call Alsetrin; and carcass is made from the Beloves, the Alsetrin, and the Severoeses, and from hence exported to all parts. They have also a very good fish which they call Soedak, which they dress like the Melwen, or the flock-fish; quantities of pike and perch, a fish like a herring, and many other sorts. The largest of those that are worth the least are the Medies, with great heads. The fish-market is twice a day full, morning and night, and the Wolga affords such a glut, that what they cannot sell is every day given to the hogs. They will give to the common people three or four fish, a foot in length, for a bit of bread, and bread is far from being dear. As for bream and carp they abound no less. In short you may buy of the fishermen without the town, Severoeses as big as cod, for the value of five-pence or sixpence, and so I leave you to judge what must be the price of fish in general. Besides these they have a small round fish, three or four inches broad, and long in proportion, which they call a Vienere, and which are found as it were in pits near the mouth of a small river, where I have taken numbers of them in a sieve, and of several sorts, some of which...
which I preferred in spirits with small Soedaks; and I should have faved others of them had they been smaller.

There are about forty Armenian families about this city, who keep shops, as I have already observed. The Indians live in their caravanserai, where they carry on their business; and are not inferior in number to the Armenians, but they have no women.

This caravanserai is indifferently large, and surrounded by a square stone wall, with several gates, at the two chief of which there is a guard, and at a certain hour of the night they are shut up. The Armenians merchants who only go and come, take up their lodging here also, and here it was that I paid with them; and there are, indeed, some who even live and keep shops there, where they have chans or separate places for themselves. That for passengers or travellers is two stories high with galleries, and that of the Indians is on the other side, and all of wood; but they have lately built them a stone ware-house for fear of fire; a building tolerably spacious, being 40 foot square: And the Armenians are following their example, the foundations of theirs, when I was there, being railed fix foot.

I had not been long in this city, when the Deputy-governor, or King's Lieutenants, Mekute Iouonnizkis Arockstens, sent to desire I would come to him. I went the next day, and had the good luck to find there the Governor with all his family, and some Ladies in the German dres, upon just going away, their coaches waiting for them in the yard. They received me very handomely, and having entertained me with beer and brandy, the governor said I had not only been recommended to him by the Knez Bories, but even by his Czarian Majesty, and then turning to me, desir'd I would come to see him every day, and let him know in what he could be of use to me. I returned him thanks, and he went away a minute afterwards. When he was gone the Deputy-governor carried me and my fellow traveller Mr. Jacob Davids, into another room, and gave us some Persian refreshments, and behaved to me with great kindness and complaisance, which is quite in his nature.

Most of the gardens about the Garden city are full of vines and fruit trees, and particularly apple trees, pear trees, plum trees, and apricot trees, but their fruit is far from the best: But you have water-melons here which surpass even the Persians. They let their vines grow to the height of a man, and prune them so as to shoot no higher, and fasten them to poles or props. Their grape is indifferently large, black or of a deep blue, as they say, for I was not there at the season. Those that grow in the gardens of private persons, whether Armenians or others, which are in no great number, are sold at market; but they make wine of those in the vineyards, which belong mostly to the Czar, who has all the profits of them. These wines are red and pleasant enough, the soil is very sandy, and as they have stores of springs, they sink pits in their gardens, and supply them with water by subterraneous canals; and out of these pits they draw it with a great wheel to which they fasten buckets, which deliver it into wooden gutters or spouts which distribute it as they please in the garden; and one camel is enough to turn all these wheels. These gardens or vineyards are two or three werfts from the city, and their number increases every day, and being open they have gardens and watch-houses at certain distances, where they have fentresses to take care no body makes free with the grapes in the season. They told me it was above 100 years since they began to plant these vineyards, and that it was thought to have been first done by Persian merchants, who had brought some plants or slips from their country.

Some days after my arrival, I went to pay a visit to Mr. Serobhan Beck, who was designed ambassador to Sweden.
1703. Sweden by the King of Persia; but the Czar who was at war with that kingdom, refused him a passage through his dominions, and even put him under arrest, so that he had been three years in Moscow. He had about 60 persons in his train, and had left Moscow some days before I did. He was sitting upon a sofa, after the eastern manner, received me very obligingly, and gave me coffee and kullah nabat, a very pleasant white liquor made of sugar and rose water. He was a man of a comely presence and great affability; his mustaches reached to his very ears, and his beard hung a quarter of an ell below his chin, which was shaved. His turban was white, and his kaffan or vest was tied about him with a saft of gold cloth; he had a fine janer at his side, and smoked with a hajian, after the Persian manner. He had two servants at his sides, and he on the right hand was armed with a great sable, whose hilt appeared out of a red bag. Among other discourse, he asked me, if I would not go with him to Isfahan? but I excused myself.

I then went to visit Mr. Wigne, a man of worth and honour, and Captain Wagenaar, who came to see me upon my arrival. Mr. Wigne carried me upon the river in a vessel of 24 oars, manned with 44 soldiers, and had with him ten or a dozen flutes and hautboys, and some drums who beat the march as the Germans do. We went seven werfts from Aflaran, to the place where the old city had stood, about 120 years before, tho' no traces of it be now to be seen, except the bones deposited there, some of which I saw. About seven years ago they made a discovery of saltpeter in the mountains, and work upon it with good success. The place where it is found is to the eastward of the city upon the left hand of the river as you go down. We amused ourselves with shooting at pigeons as we returned, and went by the ships on the other shore.

Upon the fourth of June there came on a violent storm, which wrecked a vessel laden with wood 1703; before the town; and of 71 souls that were in her 29 were drowned.

Upon the sixt there arrived eight barks from Persia, four of which belonged to Russinans, and the rest to Mahometans; they had some Armenian merchants on board of them.

All the time I was in this city the governor never once failed me in his kindness, sending me frequent presents, and entertaining me at his house with all sorts of Persian refreshments, and continually urged me to tell him in what he could be of use to me; but of all his offers I accepted of nothing but his beer, for which was not to be had for money, nor did he forget to let me have a store of it. As he knew I was to be some time in this city, he desired me to draw him the picture of myself and his son, which I could not refuse him; and he on his part did every thing he could to oblige me. Among other things he made me a present of a bird which had been shot in the plain, but was still alive. In the body and feet he did not ill resemble a heron, but not at all in the head, which was quite beautiful, as well as his bill. He had a white cap on the head, and his bill was black, ten inches long, and an inch and half broad, and the end of it was like two spoons, with a small yellow spot. It is called Lopelnaer and Colpise in the Russ. language. They say they have Salpater a them also in Persia, where they are called Goli. I kept the head of one of them, which you may see in No. 34. They have herons also in this country, which they call 't Sepere. They are of different colours, as white, and purple like peacocks, grey and black. I have drawn one of them with his neck shortened, as you may see in No. 35.

I often went with Captain Wage-ten Tarn-ner to the place where the Tartars made many war upon the Tartars, which is but three or four werfts from the city. They camp in troops, each family apart, and at some distance from the rest. Their tents are made like parrot cages, except that...
that they are not so lofty in proportion, and are built with laths of three or four inches broad, covered over with a felt, or a hair cloth. There are some which do not fall but within a foot or two of the ground, and are done round with thatch or fustible. The chief of them have a covering of cloth, with an opening at top to let out the smoke, with a pole in the middle, which sticks out four or five foot to the end of which they affix a kind of tail of various colours, which falls down to the ground, where it is fastened by a large strap without one of the sides of the tent, and by the means of which, they turn this tail as they please, to keep out either the wind or the sun. When all the smoke is gone out of the tent, and they have a mind to be warm, they cover it up, and it is as hot as a stove. The bottom of them is covered with pretty stuffs or fine carpets, and especially among the better sort they have a sofa raised a little, after the Turkish manner, which takes up a third part of the tent: and in some of them you see fine cheists and trunks, in which they lock up their valuable things, and in general everything about them is extremely neat and in good order. When they change their place, they put their tents upon wagons, and take off the covering, and the women and children sit in them, while the men attend them on horfeback. When they perceived it was curiosity only that drew me among them, they shewed me whatever I wanted to see, but they were shy of me at first, never suffering any body to come near the tents where their women are. In one of them I saw a very charming and well dressed brunette, whose head attire was very remarkable, being of gilt silver or copper, and all covered with ducats, pearls and precious stones. I was delighted with her, and resoluted to paint her, as I afterwards did. In the meantime I drew some of their tents, as they were pitched one by another, as you may see in No. 36. and one in particular in No. 37. at the letter A.  

In the same you have the form and manner of their wagons in letter B. upon two great wheels: It is of painted wood covered with stuff, supported by two crofs treads before, and refted upon two beams. When they mount their tents upon them the wheels of them are covered. Their chappel is on one side distinguished by the letter C. Their common tents are covered only with felt, and of the same is the sail above, and very ordinary within. As these people subsist but by their cattle, they look out for the best pastures. Their women are employ'd in making of cloaths, and the like, which they go to town to sell. They se as the Ruffians do, and spin as we do with a turning spindle, and card wool for the felts of their tents, and for other stuffs. Their firing is cow dung, which they take and dry, much as we do our turf, and have it in heaps on the side of their tents. While I was busy in drawing them, they crowded about me, and seemed to be much pleased, and to wonder at my dress as much as I did at theirs, which procured me some liberty among them. Their manner of living is not very unlike the Arabians, and they appear to be as satisfied with their wandering abode as those with us who are settled in palaces and the finest houses; and this calls to my mind the ancient manner of the orientals; and I suppose it was thus that Abraham fojourned and the rest of the patriarchs, and that if we were used to the same, we should not dislike it.

As for the dress of the women, I drew the picture of a young Lady of this nation at the Governor's palace where I had a more commodious opportunity to do it than in their tents. She had a fine upper garment, covered with a white veil which hid her face; but she took it off at my request, and appeared with her head covered with another very fine white linen, ty'd about her neck in a very genteel manner, and through which I could see her head attire. I beg'd of her also to pull that off, because
cause it concealed her finest ornament which I wanted to paint; and she appeared such as they are in their kafian and in their tents. This attire was all covered with gold ducats, as has already been said, and pointed at top like a mitre, bordered with a great number of pearls, some of which were strung, and hung before her like tresses. A kind of coloured scarf fastened behind this mitre came about her neck, and partly fell down before. Besides this, she had silver chains over her shoulders, and about her waist, by one of which there hung some little boxes of the same, where she had her little prayer books and toys. Her hair was done about with a broad black ribbon, with two great tufts of silk at the end, as appears by the plate above. This Lady was one of the most considerable among the Tartars, and was attended by three women of her train, and ushered by a Tartar who was known to the governor.

The Russiāni call the Tartars hereabouts by the name of furtige, because
1793. cause they are born there; nor indeed do they pay any tribute to the Czar; they are only obliged to send a certain number of their people to war when he requires it; and yet they can bring 20000 men into the field upon occasion. The Tartars, who are called Indians at Afmanc, have their heads in a strange manner at a certain time of the year; they tear it up by the roots with the point of a penknife, so that the blood runs down their cheeks. Their priest, or the person they call Such, has the first stroke, and when he does it not as he should, they all begin again, crying out, Suchenable, Suchenable, or Bajou, Bajou, dancing and jumping about at the same time; and this they look upon as a kind of offering to their idol Suchenable. This ceremony was performed near the granary, without the town, sometime before I arrived; and those who prac¬tice it are Indians, some of whom live in the flabode of the Tartars. Those of Nogay are in tents about the city of Tirk, but the Tartars of Crim never settle there, and only from time to time bring their cattle to market.

Governor's feast. Upon the twentieth of this month, the governor gave a great entertainment, to which I was invited, as well as the principal of the Russian officers, and most considerable of the Armenian merchants. First they conducted us into an apartment, where were the governor's wife and daughter in law attended by several women of their train, and on the right hand was a table full of dainties and liquors fit for the morning. These Ladies presented us each with a small cup of brandy, a piece of civility usual in this country, and from thence we went into the hall where the dinner was ready, and they lent us home in coaches. The twenty first, being St. Peter's, was his Czarian Majesty's name day, and the governor gave another entertainment where the patriarch was present, and all the chiefs of the city; but being out of order, I could not be there myself, nor go with them to the church of Sabor, to assist at 1793. the solemnity to which I had been invited some days before; and upon this occasion they had great rejoicings and repeated firing of canon upon the ramparts and before the palace. The Ladies were in another apartment, according to custom, and the next day they treated the subaltern officers, and sent them away early.

Upon the second of July, news came that the Czar had got within 15 werst of Amvo with his army, and had taken every thing in his way.

The next day I went in a chaise towards the heath, with the governor's son, and some officers who had a hawk with them. We saw a good deal of game about 20 werst from the city, but we could get at none of it, because of the waters which covered the country; tho' I happen'd to kill a duck that was flying by me. Mean time we diverted ourselves with fishing in a small river, where we caught a good deal of pike and perch, which we dressed and ate. That day we saw a number of Tartars encamped, and fine pasture lands full of horses belonging to the inhabitants of Afmanc. Some of them were handsome enough, and we would have drove some of them in our chaises, but they were too skir¬riff, having been at grafts all the sum¬mer, in fine fields which are very frequent in these parts. All the carmen of this city have fine horses; you shall hardly see a bad or a lean one among them, which is what I never observed anywhere else.

As the time of my departure drew near, I desired and obtained as much room as I wanted in such of the barks I liked best; so I made choice of the largest and fittest for my purpose. Moft of the Armenians also prepared to depart, as well as some Persians, who were returning from Moscow to Samaki [Samals]. The Chang's fal¬coner was among the reft, with 5 or 6 hawks he was carrying into Persia, from whence he had brought an elephant for the Czar of Majeety, which he
1703. he had delivered to the governor of Aisracan, who sent it to Moscoy under the care of some Russians and a Georgian, but it dy'd in the way at Zartfa. This falconer came in the governor's name to desire me to allow him a place in my bark, and I went on board of her the next morning with that intent, but I found the Armenians had crammed her so full there was no room left. I went to the governor with complaint of this, and to desire he would order some of the bales out, that we might have a little elbow room; but he answered there were still other vessels to go in, and that I had nothing to do but to take out of them what I would, to be at my ease. I embraced the favour, and took up what place I wanted, having suffered much upon the Woffa, before I reached this city.

Mr. Wigne at that time had news that the Czar had promoted him to the rank of Colonel, and upon the eleventh he entertained the governor and chief officers of the garrison. I was of the number, and he treated us very splendidly, with the discharge of artillery, and the sound of drums and trumpets. Leaving him, I went with some Armenians to take a little country air at a house upon the river. The grapes were at this time tolerably large, but most of the other fruits had been destroy'd by insects.

When I was on the point of departure, and had got every thing I might want, not forgetting where-withal to save me from the flies which are very troublesome in these parts, the governor lent me two small casks of brandy, the one of the best, the other of the common fort; a small cask of vinegar, four of beer, one of wine, three fitches of bacon, a quantity of dry'd fish, and a bag of biscuit, and some other provisions. He granted me also a small bark, to go before, and unladen the great one of part of her cargo, as we drew near the Caspian, a thing absolutely necessary, because of the great droughts that sometimes happen in those parts. I took leave of the governor at four of the afternoon, and returned him a thousand thanks for all his favours. When I had got back again to my lodging, he sent me three sealed bottles of distilled liquors. At length I embarked in a small vessel, with five soldiers to carry my things on board of the ship. The three Armenians, my companions, had, in like manner, each of them a small vessel, for the same purpose.
CHAP. XVII.

Reasons for inserting in this place the route of Mr. Isbrants Ides thro' Muscovy in his way to China. His departure from Moscow. Source of the Dwina. Arrival of that minister in the country of the Syrenes. Description of the people of that province, &c. He embarks upon the Kama, and crosses from Europe to Asia.


Muscovy is now grown to be very considerable in the world, and had for some time been so much the subject of discourse; and the Prince at present on the throne having made himself famous for his conduct, his victories and care he takes to cultivate the minds and manners of his subjects, by introducing into his dominions all that can contribute to their advantage, all Europe is attentive to what concerns this great empire, and inquisitive to know what passeth therein. It would be difficult to give a more circumstantial, more sincere and more interesting account of it, than that of Mr. Le Bruyn contained in his voyage; but as he only traversed a part of it, it has been thought it might be acceptable and useful to the publick to add in this place the route that was held by Mr. Isbrants Ides from Muscovy to the court of China, by the way of Tartary, a country but little known, and almost wild, in quality of envoy extraordinary from their Czarian Majesties John and Peter Alexeewitz in 1692. and the rather as this minister has enriched the account of his journey with very judicious and instructive remarks.

He left Moscow in a sledge upon the fourteenth of March; but he had hardly got on his way, when it began to rain so plentifully, that he was exposed to a thousand dangers by the abundance of waters in his way to Wologda, where he lay'd three days to recover himself from the fatigues he had undergone, and wait for fair weather. The frost began again upon the second day, and was so very hard, that at the end of twenty four hours, all the ways were passable; whereupon he began his journey further, the twenty second, towards Suechina, where he arrived upon the twenty third, and thence proceeded without delay to the city of the great Usiga, where the Suechina and the Igra uniting their streams, form the famous river of Dwina, whose name signifies a double River.

The Suechina runs almost directly north in a fertile soil; with several good and well-peopled villages on its borders, and on the left a pretty good town called Tuten. A great number of travellers fall down this river every year, to go from Wologda to Archangel, with their goods, while the waters are open: but the bottom being rocky, care must particularly be taken to secure the stem and stern post, and rudder, as well because of the many rocks in this river, as because of the rapidity of its current, or you might be in danger of being loft.

The city of the great Usiga is at the mouth of this river, where this minister was obliged to stop for 24 hours, to refresh himself and to see the Waivoths, his friends, who entertained him very cheerfully. Upon the twenty fourth, he arrived at Selc-
1692. Solecwitzjegoda, a great town with many good merchants, and excellent workmen in silver, copper, and ivory. Here also are fine falt-pits, which produce a great quantity of that mineral, which is hence transported to Wologda, and many other places.

From hence he departed upon the 1st of April, and the same day arrived in the country of the Syrenes, or of Weljoff-Ugy. The inhabitants here speak a language, which has no affinity with the Ruffian, tho' it has some with that spoken in Livonia, as he was informed by such of his train as were of that country. They are of the Greek rite, and subject to his Czarine Majesty, to whom they pay the customary dues, but have neither governor nor waivode. They chose their own judges, and when any dispute arises which these judges are unable to decide, they go to Moscova where they have recourse to the prikæs of Pobiske, or office for foreign affairs. In drees and stature they differ hardly at all from the Ruffians, and are thought to have been originally from the frontiers of Livonia or Courland, tho' they know nothing of it themselves, no more than how it comes to pass they speak a language different from that of all Ruffia, whether they may have been in times past driven by the calamities of war, or by some other accident which they now have no remembrance of. They subsist by agriculture, all but a part of them, who are upon the banks of the river Zafol, where they have grey furs. This country is about 70 long German leagues in length, and extends quite to Kaigorod. These people hardly live at all in towns, but for the most part in small villages and hamlets, scattered up and down in the woods.

This country contains upon a great forest, where this miniver was a second time taken with a violent thaw, and a heavy rain, which in one night's time caused a flood of the waters all about the wood, where in this condition he was retarded for four days, without being able to go either backwards or forewards, the ice being scarce able to bear on the rivers.

At length, with inexpressible difficulty he got away, by throwing of bridges over these rivers, and by the means of several other helps. And upon the sixteenth of April, quite fatigued and thoroughly wet, he arrived at Kaigorod, a tolerably comfortable fortres upon the Kama.

He would willingly have held on his way quite to Solikamskoi, the capital of the great Permia, to go by land to Syberia, over the mountains of Wergotur; but the thaw continuing, he was put beside his purpose, and being just at the tail of the winter season, he stay'd some weeks in this city, expecting when the Kama should be navigable. Here in his mean time he provided himself with every thing necessary for the continuation of his journey, as also for defence against the free-booters in these parts, and who not long before had pillaged even the city of Kaigorod itself.

The governor of this place informed our author, that upon a certain day, about noon, they saw a number of barks full of men falling down the river, with colours flying, and drums beating, and making directly for the town, which they had no sooner reached, than the people of them jumped on shore; that the inhabitants not in the least dreaming of a surprie in the face of the sun, and at a time of peace, suffered them unmolested to draw near, not doubting but they were neighbours and friends who were come from the villages round about to divert themselves: that these pirates set fire to the south end of the town, and put all they met with, at the other, to the sword: that they then went to the Wavodes, where they committed all sorts of hostility, and used their servants in the very worst manner they could, and upon the whole went their way laden with booty, and none to oppose them: that it was afterwards understood they were vassals of certain lords, from whose obedience they had withdrawn themselves.
The TRAVELS of

1692. selves, to commit all sorts of violen-
ces, and that some of them had been
taken and executed as an example to
the rest. This made it prudent for
him to provide himself with arms,
and to stand upon his guard.

He departed hence, upon the
twenty third of April, when the Ka-
amo was become navigable, and hap-
pily upon the twenty-seventh got to
Solikamskoi. From hence he was to
have taken the way of the mountains
of Wergatur; but as that is imprac-
ticable in summer, because the coun-
try is full of fens and marshes, trav-
ellers and merchants must stay the
summer in this city, till winter comes
on and it freezes again, that they
may cross these mountains. It is, in-
deed, possible to go about by water
to the westward, but that is abso-
lutely forbidden: the governor of
this town, however, apprised of the
importance of this minister's busi-
ness, dispatched him without delay,
and furnished him with the necessary
embarkations, that he might comfor-
tably navigate the Sufjawaya.

Solikamskoi is a very fine, large and
rich city, where are numbers of con-
iderable merchants, very fine falt-
works, and above 50 boilers of 25
or 35 ells in breadth. They have
here make very great quantities of falt,
which are every year sent on all sides,
in large vessels built for that service,
in each of which they load one hun-
dred and twenty thousand weight of
falt, or eight hundred or a thousand
lafts, without reckoning seven or
eight hundred hands, for whom they
have kitches, furnaces, and other
things necessary for transportation.
These vessels which are 35 or 40 ells
in length, have but one maft and
one falt, which is thirty fathom long,
which they use in going up the river
when the wind is fair; whereas in
going down, they ut their oars on-
ly, to keep their vessel steady in her
feareage, which the helm alone
would not be sufficient to do. They
are flat at bottom, and have neither
bolts nor nails; and thus is they
fall down the Kama to go into the
Volga; they then turn back against
the fream, by the help of tow-lines,
or of their sail, when the wind is
fair, and go with their falt to Caffan
and Nijsa, and other places upon
that river.

Upon the fourteenth of May, he set
embarked at Solikamskoi, and having
croffed the little river of Usolkat, half
a league from this city, he entered
the Kama again, and croffed that ri-
ver from Europe to Asia. Upon
Whitsunday he went on shore, and
went up a pleafant hill where he ate
his laft meal in Europe, and then re-
turned to his vefsel to continue his
way.

CHAP. XVIII.

His arrival in Asia. Description of the country of the Tartars of Syberia; their religion and manner of life.

1692. THIS mifter being arrived in
Asia, upon the Sufjawaya, ob-
erved it to be not fo pleafant as the
Kama, which is a very fine river,
full of all sorts of fift, and adorned
with fine large and populous villages,
fine falt-works, ploughed lands, woods,
fine meadows enamelled with all
sorts of flowers, and every thing else
that can be pleafant to the fight,
from Solikamskoi quite hither. Not
but that the country watered by the
Sufjawaya, which falls weftward in-
to the Kama, is very fine and very
good, but it is tirefome to go up a-
gainft the fream, one rides no way,
and especially when the waters are
fweelled, and it is necessary to use
the
1692. the tow-line. Upon the twenty fifth of May, he arrived in the country of the first Tartars of Syberia, called Woguls; which is indifferent well peopled along the banks of this river, and of charming beauty. At the entrance and going out of the hills, they have all sorts of flowers and odoriferous herbs, and prodigious numbers of deer, and all sorts of game. As the Tartars of Wogul, upon this river, are heathens, he had the curiosity to go on shore and talk with them, concerning their belief, and manner of life.

They are robust, with large heads, and their religion consists of no more than making an offering once a year. To this purpose they assemble in the woods about, and there kill a beast of each kind; tho’ their chief victims are horses, and a kind of goats. They fleam them, and hang them up by a tree, and then fall down before them, and this is their only worship. Then they eat the fith together, and returning home, perform no other religious office that year; and why should we, say they? they can assign no manner of reason for their belief or worship: we had it, say they, from our fathers, and that’s enough for us.

He asked them if they had no knowledge of God, and if they did not believe there was a supreme being in heaven, who created all things, and governs the world by his good providence, and who gives rain and fair weather? They answered the thing might very likely be so, seeing the sun and moon, those fine luminaries, which they worship, and the other stars were placed in the firmament, and that there was doubleless a power which ruled them. But they would by no means agree there was a devil, because he had never made himself known to them. And yet they deny not the resurrection of the dead, but know nothing of what is to be their lot, or what is to become of their bodies. When one of them dies, he is deposited in the ground, and covered with his most precious ornaments, whether the deceased be man or woman; but tho’ they erect no monuments to commemorate their dead, they put money by them, in proportion to their means when living, that they may want nothing necessary for them on the day of resurrection. They cry out and make loud lamentations about the bodies of their deceased, nor must any man marry a second wife till he has buried his first a year. When it happens that they lose a dog, that has been serviceable to them in hunting, or any other way, they in honour of him erect a little wooden hut, fix foot high, upon four posts, where they place him, and let him remain as long as it lasts. They may have as many wives as they can maintain, and when the women draw near the time of their delivery, they retire into a wood, to a cabin prepared for them on purpose, where they lie in, not lying-in, but may the husbands go near them for two months.

When they want to marry, they buy their wives of their parents, and have scarce any ceremony at their weddings, they only invite their nearest relations to be present, and having entertained them, the new married man goes to bed to his wife without more ado. They have no priests, and may not marry but in the fourth degree of consanguinity. This minister arguing with them, exhorted them to acknowledge the Saviour of the world, and be converted unto him, affurting them that in so doing they would be happy in this world, and in the world to come. To this they answered, That they every day saw a great number of poor Russians, who had much ado to earn a living, as much Christians as they were; that with regard to eternal life, it was what they did not trouble their heads about, and in short that they would live and die as their fathers had before them, whether their faith was founded well or ill. You may judge of their dress and manner by the plate following.

They
They live in square wooden huts after the manner of the Russian peasants; but use hearths instead of stoves, and burn wood. They cover the opening of the roof where the smoke goes out, with a piece of ice, as soon as the wood is burnt to a coal, and by that means retain all the heat in their room, without at the same time keeping out the light, which shines through the ice at top. They have no use of chairs, but instead of them have benches of three ells in breadth, and an ell from the ground, upon which they sit cross-legged after the manner of the Persians, and the same serve them for beds at night. They subsist by hunting, the chief of their game being elk, which abound in this country. They shoot them with arrows, and dry their flesh which they cut into slices or slips, and hang it up in the air about their houses; and when it has been thoroughly wet, and is quite putrid, they dry it a second time, and then it is they account it most delicious food. For the rest they eat neither poultry nor hogs. They fix great cross-bows in the woods, to which they fasten a bridle, and bait, leaving the mouth open, and when an elk or other deer comes to seize on it, the bow unbends, and shoots them thro' and thro'. They dig also pits in the earth, which they cover with brambles and the like, into which these creatures fall as they run, and cannot get out again. Up on the whole, these Tartars live in the villages, along the river of Suwaria, quite to the castle of Utho, and under the protection of the Czar, to whom they pay a tribute, and live at ease. Their habitations extend above 800 German leagues, to the northward of Siberia, and even to the northward of the country of the Samoëds.

CHAP.
HAVING quitted the country of these heathens, Mr. Ibrants, upon the first of June arrived at the fortress of Utka, upon the frontiers of the Tartars of Bashir and Uffuni. While he was here there came there a Tartar gentleman of Uffuni, a country in the Czar’s dominions; this gentleman was in quest of his wife, who had left him without any provocation, tho’ they were but just married: but not finding her, he comforted himself with this saying, That she had left him before him, and that by what he could judge she was fond of variety.

Upon the tenth he left this town by land, and went by the castle of Ayada: he then crossed the river of Nevia, and coaled along that of Reich to the castle of Arjanus, and from thence went to the fortress of Neijanska up on the river of Nevia. A finer country is not to be seen than that between Utka and this place, being full of fine meadows, woods, lakes, well cultivated lands, abounding with every thing, and well peopled with Ruffians. Upon the twenty first this minister went away by water, and found the banks of the river inhabited by Ruffian Christians, adorned with good villages and fine castles, quite to the Tara, which comes from the west, and falls into the Tobol.

Upon the twenty fifth, he arrived at the town of Tumden, which is also well peopled, full of Ruffians, and pretty strong by situation. Three fourths of the inhabitants are Christians, the rest are Mohammedan Tartars. They have a great trade with the Calme Tartars, the Bugarian and others, and those of the country subsist by tillage and fishing; but they have few or no furs except bear skins, and red fox skins. But there is a wood, some leagues from hence, called Herboj-Wollock, which affords most admirable grey furs, which never change colour in winter, and whose skins are very strong. They are no where to be had but in Muscovy, and it is, under severe penalties, forbidden to transport any to other parts; they are all set apart for the court. These animals suffer none to be in their woods but those of their own kind, and destroy all the rest, which are less by the half.

When the envoy arrived at this town, he found the inhabitants and all the people of the neighbourhood in a consternation, on account of the Cossack and Calme Tartars, who had just then made an invasion upon Siberia, where they plundered several villages, and killed the inhabitants, and now threatened this town from which they were not above 15 German leagues distant. But the governor sent for troops from Tobol, and some other places, with which he pursued these Tartars, who lost a number of their people.

For this reason, he chose to make his stay here, but, after the twenty sixth, embarked upon the Tobol, with a new gang of rowers, and a guard of soldiers. The borders of this river are low and subject to be overflowed in the spring, and yet they are inhabited, partly by Mohammedan Tartars, and partly by Ruffians. This river produces every sort of good fish.

Upon the first of July, he happily arrived at Tobol or Tobolska, a strong place, with a great stone monastery, and adorned—
1692. adorned so with high towers, that it might well be mistaken for a fortress. This city stands upon an hill at the conflux of the Tobol, and the Iriss: the foot of this hill and the shore of the Iriss are inhabited by Tartars; and Mohammedan Bucarrians, who drive on a great trade with the Calmucks upon the river, and go even beyond, as far as China. When it happens to be safe to go through the country of the Calmucks, it is the shortest way to China, by the lake Jamafchowa.

Tobol is the capital of Syberia, and its jurisdiction extends southward beyond Baraba; from Wergotur to the river Obi to the eastward of the Samoseds; to the northward, quite to the country of the Okhacs; and westward as far as Ufsa, and the river of Susarania. The country about is well peopled, as well by Russians who follow tillage, as by several other people, Tartars and Hoolabu, who are tributary to the Czar. Grain is so plenty there, that they do not give above 10 Cops or pence for one hundred weight of barley flour. An ox is not worth above fix or seven florins; a good hog 30 or 35 pence; and there is so much fish in the Iriss that aurgeon of 40 or 50 pound weight is not worth above five pence or fix pence; and they are so fat withal, that the surface of the water they are boiled in shall be above an inch thick of grease. This country, in like manner, produces a number of elks, stags, deer, and the like; hares, pheasants, partridges, swans, wild-geese, ducks, storks, and all sorts of game, which are cheaper than butchers meat. For the rest this city is provided with a good garrison of regular troops, and can send above 6000 men into the field, at the first order of his Czarian Majesty. Here are also some thousands of Tartars who are bound to serve his Majesty on horseback, when occasion requires.

The boards of the Calmucks and Cossacks that depend upon the Tchili-cham or chief of the Bugarian Tartars, commit frequent depredations upon the Czar's frontiers, as well as those of Uffimir and Baskir, but the garrison of Tobol is presently at their heels. In this city there is a metropolitan, who is sent from Moscow, and has jurisdiction over all the clergy of Siberia and Dauria.

It is now about an hundred years since this city and all Siberia became subject to his Czarian Majesty, and that, after the following manner. A certain pyrate, whose name was Jeremak Timofievitz, having greatly harried and ruined certain lands belonging to the Czar Ivan Wajlewickitz, to the great damage of his subjects, and understanding the troops of that Prince were advancing towards him, he hastened back again up the Kama with his companions, and then entered the Susaraia, which falls into this river, and retired to the jurisdiction of the Lord of Strasingof, a very great landed man, who was possessed of all the land of the river for 20 German leagues about. He implored the protection of the grandfather of this Lord, and upon that condition offered to subdue all Siberia to the power of the Czar, in recompence for the evils he had inflicted on his subjects. This Lord accordingly supp'd him with the vessels, arms and artificers, he might want for his expedition, and promised he would obtain his pardon. Fraught with this, he embarked with his companions, and went up the river Sterebrenkot, which comes from the north-east of the mountains of Wergotur, and falls into the Susarania. He then caused his people to march by land to the river of Togin, which went down quite to the Tura, possessed himself of the fortress of Tummen, which stands upon that river, where he flew all he met, then he returned up the Tobol quire to the city of that name, where he found a Tartar Prince of twelve years old, and called Altanas Kutzemovitz, whose granddion is at present at Moscow, and honoured with the title of Czarowitz of Siberia; he possessed himself of this place, which he fortified, and sent the young Prince prisoner to Moscow.

After
1692. After this train of successes, this Carfairen went down the Iritis, and was attacked in the night by a party of Tartars, at no great distance from Tobol. In this skirmish he lost the best part of his people, and endeavouring to jump out of one vessel into another, he fell into the river and was drowned, and his body hurried away by the rapidity of the stream, was never afterwards found.

The Lord of Strogines had in the mean time sent to court, and obtained a pardon for Jeremak; nor did they fail to send troops to the places he had taken, or to fortify them: thus was it that Siberia fell under the power of the Muscovites, who continues still to be master of the same.

The Tartars in Tobol, and many leagues about are all Mohammedans. Mr. Pribants was desirous to see their ceremonies, and went with the Way-wod into one of their Moschs, for without him he could have had no admission. They are surrounded with great windows which are left open, and the pavement is covered with a carpet without any other ornament. As they go in they leave their shoes at the door, and sit in order and cross-legged. The Mufit appears in a stuff of white cotton, and has a white turban on his head. He whispered to one that was present, who cry'd out aloud, upon which they were all on their knees. The Mufit then muttered some words, and cry'd, Alla, Alla, Mohammed, and the rest did the same after him, bowing three times down to the ground. He then fixed his eyes upon his hands, as if to read something, and cry'd out a second time, Alla, Alla, Mohammed. This done he looked back over his right shoulder, and then over his left, without saying a word, and all that were present observing to do the same, the service was at an end.

This Mufit was by birth an Arab, and in very high esteem among them, insomuch that they had a particular value for every body that understood or could read Arabic for his sake. He invited the envoy to his house near the Mosch, and entertained him with tea. In these parts are great numbers of Calumites, and even some descendants of Princes who were formerly made prisoners.

CHAP. XX.


This Minister departed from Tobol upon the twenty second, having provided himself with vessels and every thing necessary, and particularly with a good guard: thus he fell down the Iritis, upon the shores of which are several villages inhabited by Tartars and Ostics, and among the rest Demianzko, Jamin, and others, where the small river of Penwaska falls into the Iritis. Upon the twenty eighth, he arrived at Samoroskoi-jam, where he changed his rowers, and raised masts in the larger vessels to be able to sail up the Oby, when the wind should be favourable, the Iritis falling into this river by several openings not far from Samoroskoi-jam.

The water of the Iritis is white and light, and comes from the mountains in the country of the Calumites. This river runs from the south to the north-east, and passes through the two lakes of Kebak and Suzan. To the south-east it is bordered by lofty mountains, which are crowned with cedars, and the land on the other
1692, their side, to the north-west, is low and full of pasture grounds, where are great black bears, wolves, foxes, red and grey; and upon the banks of the river of Kasimka, which discharges itself into the Oby, not very far from Samoroskoi-jam, are the finest grey furs of all Siberia, excepting those in the woods of Hessisko-Wolkok, we have mentioned before. The inhabitants told him that, the autumn before, there came a great bear into a stable, which looked upon a meadow, whence he took a cow, holding her between his fore-paws, and walking upon his hind: that the people of the house and their neighbours, hearing the noise the cow made, ran to see what was the matter, and fell upon Brusin who would not part with his hold, till they shot at him, and killed the cow.

Most of the inhabitants in this part are Russians in the pay of his Czarian Majesty, and who are obliged to furnish the waivodes sent thither, and all those that travel into Siberia, upon the Prince's business, with carriages and guides, as well 1692, to go by water in summer as upon the ice in winter, as far as the city of Surgut upon the Oby, at reasonable rates. It is remarkable of them, that they keep a great number of dogs to draw their sledges in the winter, seeing they cannot use horses on account of the depth of the snow, which is sometimes a fathom deep upon the Oby.

They put two of those dogs to a sled, very light sledges, upon which they may load two or three hundred weight, and neither the dogs nor the sledges make the least impression in the snow. The inhabitants pretend there are some of these dogs that have a fore-knowledge of when they are to be employ'd, and that upon these occasions they meet in the night and keep a terrible howling, whence their masters conclude they are to have strangers among them; but this is not at all likely. When they travel, their guides have a gun upon their shoulder, and certain long shoes upon their feet fit to run with upon
1692. the snow. They sometimes go with their dogs to hunt in the woods, where they sometimes meet with fine black foxes, whose skins they keep, and give the flesh to their dogs; so that they at once reap service and profit by them. These dogs are of middling size, with sharp noses, and pointed ears which prick up, and turn-up tails, like wolves or foxes; and indeed they may be easily mistaken for such in the woods, they are so much alike. It is certain that they often mix together, and that they appear in the neighbourhood of villages when preparations are making to hunt.

Departure from Sauer-

cat-jam.

Arrival at the town of Surgut.

On the twenty ninth of July, this minister departed from Samaruv-

kis-jam, and with two vessels went down the principal branch of the Ir-

tis towards the Oby, where he arrived the next day. On the east-side of this river there are mountains, and on the west meadow grounds which reach beyond the fight, and in this place the river is a good half league in breadth.

Upon the sixth of August he arrived at Surgut, which stands upon the east-side of this river. In these parts, up the country to the east-ward, and as you go up the Oby from Surgut quite to the city of Narum are very fine fables, as well of a pale brown as a black; as also the finest ermins of all Siberia, and even of all Russia, and black foxes of unspeakable beauty; the finest of which are set apart for his Czarian Majesty, and are sometimes valued at 2 or 300 rubles a piece: Some of them, in this colour, exceed the finest fables of Dauria. They take them with dogs, upon which take the following story as it was related to our author by the inhabitants.

A black fox, of the finest sort, appearing in the beginning of the year before, in full day time, near Surgut, was pursured by a peasant who had dogs of the same colour. The fox finding he could not escape, turned suddenly towards the dogs with an air of courtesy, and laid himself upon his back, and began to lick their chops; after which he began to run and play with them, the dogs all the time offering him no violence: at length watching the opportunity, he flunk into the woods, where the countryman, who had no fire-arms, soon loft fight of him, as well as the hopes he had had of fo rich a booty.

This fox, two days afterwards, returned to the same place, when the countryman seeing him again, went after him a second time with the same dogs, and a white one that he had observed to exceed all the rest in cunning: the black dogs having allured him once more among them, the white one who knew him better than the rest, made slipily towards him, and would then have jumped upon him, but the fox gave a spring on one side, and made his escape a second time into the woods.

After this the countryman blackned his white dog that the fox might not know him again, and going back to the woods, this dog soon found him out; at length the fox taking him for one of his black companions, came to him to play with him, and thereby fell into the thare prepared to deceive him; for the dog seizing on him to the great joy of his master, who sold his skin for 100 rubles.

They have here also foxes that are but half black, and mixed with grey, but it is seldom they take any that are all black; as for the red fowl, they are here in abundance. This country abounds also in otters and beavers; the former living only upon prey are very dangerous creatures; they climb up trees, and there take their stand till they see an elk, a stag, a deer, a hare, going by, when springing upon them, they never leave them till they have killed them, after which they devour them. A waiwode who had one of them alive, sent him into the river, and two dogs after him; but finding himself pursued, he flew at the head of the first dog, and held him under water till he was drowned; and then made towards the other, who had met with the same fate, if they had not been at hand to save him.

Ec They
They tell very extraordinary stories, and such as seem to deserve no great credit concerning the beavers, that have their holes and burrowings along the banks of this river, in the least frequented places, and where there is the most fish, which is what they chiefly live upon. They pretend that these creatures meet together by pairs in the spring, and form themselves into a neighbourhood; that after this they take prisoners of their own kind, and drag them to their holes or houses to serve them as slaves; that they fell trees by gnawing them beneath, and remove them to their abodes, where they cut off branches of a certain length, which they use to secure the store they lay up in summer, when their females bring forth their young. They add, that after this, these creatures meet a second time, and that after having brought down a tree, of sometimes an ell in circumference, they reduce it to the length of two fathoms, and then float it along to their habitations, before which they raise it up to the depth of an ell, without touching the bottom; and that neither the strength of the winds nor the force of the waters may disturb it. Tho' this may appear supernatural, this minifter affirms us the thing was confirmed to him by all Siberia, and many others, concerning these creatures, which he has studiously suppressed, because to him they seemed incredible, and more bordering upon human reason, than the nature of brutes.

Indeed he adds, there are many people in the country who attribute the erection of this tree to the magic of the Oftiacs, and other Heathens in those parts; but that it is certain the country people know how to distinguish between these creatures, as whether they be males or females, these being thinner, and their coats worn to the stumps with working.

The Russians and Oftiacs who hunt them, never destroy a whole tree, and are always mindful to leave a male and a female behind them for procreation.

C H A P. XXI.

Arrival at Narum. Description of the Oftiacs; their religion, and the like. The Oby abounds with fish; its shores uncultivated.

HAVING been some time mounting the Oby, sometimes by the help of the sail, sometimes by the slow labour of the tow-line, Mr. Isbrants, upon the thirtieth of August, thwarted the mouth of the river of Wagga, which falls down from the mountains of Trugan, whence it has its source. It is a great river whose waters are of a brown black, and empties itself into the Oby, to the north-north-west, below Narum, a small city where he arrived upon the twenty fourth. It stands on the river side, in a fine country, and is defended by a citadel with a good garrison of Cossacks. This part swarms with foxes, black, grey, and red, beavers, ermins, sables, and the like.

The banks of the Oby are hither inhabited by a people called Oftiacs, who worship idols, tho' they at the same time acknowledge there is a God in heaven, to whom they notwithstanding pay no adoration. They have idols of wood and idols of earth, in human form, which they fashion with their own hands, and which such of them as can afford
1692. ford it clothe in silk, in imitation of the Russian habit. These idols stand in their cabins, which are of the bark of trees, sewn together with the guts of deer, and have on one side of them, bundles of hair, and a little bucket full of a sort of broth, of which they give them every day with a spoon made on purpose, which constantly running down the corners of the mouth, has an effect very disagreeable to the sight. They worship these idols, or pray to them, they stand upright, and make strange motions with the head, without bowing the body at all, and keep a noise like those who call dogs.

They call these idols Saitan, a name not very wide from Satan. It happen'd that some of these Ottas being on board of Mr. Isbrand's vessel, he shewed them a bear contrived at Nuremberg, which by springs could beat a drum, and at the same time move both head and eyes. When they beheld this, and saw that it began to move, they fell to singing and dancing, and paid all the worship they usually did to their Saitan, saying this was a true Saitan, very different from those they made, and that if they had such a one, they would clothe him in the finest fables, and the skin of the black fox. They then asked if it was to be sold; but it was taken out of their sight to put an end to their idolatrous behaviour.

These Ottas marry as many wives as they can maintain, and make no scruple to wed with their nearest relations. When death snatches a friend from them, they lament about the body for some days without ceasing, with their head covered up, and on their knees, without seeing any body, and then they carry it to the grave upon poles. They are very poor, and in summer live in miserable huts; but they might easily better their condition, the country about the Oby affords plenty of furs, and the river itself store of fish, and especially sturgeon, a score of 1692; the largest of which they will give for three penny-worth of tobacco. But they are too lazy to work, and seek after no more than what may serve them for a miserable subsistence in the winter.

They eat hardly any thing but fish when they travel, and especially when they are fishing. They are of middling stature, with hair either fair or red, and with broad flat faces and noses. They are not at all given to war, and know nothing of the use of arms; tho' they have both bows and arrows for hunting, but they are not dextrous with them. They cover themselves with the skins of certain fish, and particularly with that of the sturgeon, and have no manner of linnen. Their stockings and shoes are all of a piece, and over all they wear a short kind of loose waistcoat, to which they fasten a kind of cap, which they pull over their head when it rains. Their shoes which are also of fish skin, are not waterproof, so that they are always wet shod. Without any seeming pain they undergo all the rigours of a most frightful cold upon the water, clad no otherwise than has been described, except the winter prove a very hard one indeed, and in that case they put on two of the loose waistcoats above. And when this happens, it is a kind of an era with them, asking each other, if they do not remember the winter when they wore two waistcoats? They wear but one when they hunt in winter, and never cover their breasts, imagining they shall sufficiently bear themselves with running up and down on the snow with fledge shoes. But when they happen to be over taken with an extraordinary frost, which they are unable to withstand, they strip themselves as fast as they can, and bury themselves deep in the snow, that they may dye the sooner, and with the less pain.

Much
Much as the men dress, so dress the women, whose chief diversion is hunting the bear. Upon this occasion they go in companies, but armed no otherwise than with a kind of a sharp knife made fast to the end of a staff about six foot long. When they have killed a bear, they cut off his head, and hanging it up to a tree, they run about it, and pay it great honours. The same they do about his body, asking him, Who was it killed thee? The Russians, say they themselves, Who was it cut off thy head? It was the axe of a Russian. Who ripped up thy belly? 'Twas the knife of a Russian. In a word, whatever they do to this creature, they throw upon the Russians.

They have petty Princes among them, one of which called Knez Kurza Mukanak came on board to see Mr. Ibrants. This man was appointed over some hundreds of cabins, and gathered the tribute these people are obliged to pay to his Czar's Majesty's waivodes. He came with all his train; brought him a present of fresh fish, and returned with an exchange of brandy and tobacco, with which he seemed to be highly pleased. He came a second time to invite this minister to his palace; and Mr. Ibrants having the curiosity to accept of this invitation, went and was received by the Knez himself, who in person did the honours of his house, into which he conducted him. It was made of the bark of trees, like the other cabins, but not extremely well sewed together. Mr. Ibrants here saw four of this Prince's wives, the youngest had on a red cloth petticoat, with a good deal of coral and glass about her neck and her waist, as also in the tresses of her hair, which hung down on each side, and upon her
1692. her shoulders; the he great rings or buckles in her ears, from whence hung strings of coral beads. These Ladies, each of them, offered him a little tub, made of bark, full of dry'd fish, and the youngest a tub of furgone, yellow as gold itself; in return for which he regaled them with brandy and tobacco, which are great delicacies with them. This cabin had no other furniture than some cradles, and trunks made of bark, in which were their beds, full of wood-duff, as soft as down itself. The cradles were at the end of the cabin, full of naked children, and the fire was in the midst. There was no kitchen utensils, save one copper kettle, and some others of bark, which they can never use, but when there is no flame.

Manner of smoking. When they smoke, to which they are much addicted, both men and women, they take a mouthful of water, and swallow the smoke of the tobacco with it. This affects them in such a way, that they fall down, and lie for some time on the ground insensible, with their eyes open, and foaming at the mouth like those in the falling sickness; some of them even dye in this condition; sometimes they fall into the river, or into the fire, and there come to a miserable end, and sometimes they are quite suffocated to death with this smoke.

They fall into a great passion, if any mention be made of their relations, nor can they bear to hear them so much as named, tho' they may have been dead for a long time. They are absolutely ignorant of every thing that has passed in the world before their time, and know not either how to read or to write. They in no degree apply themselves to the culture of the earth, tho' they are remarkably fond of bread. They have neither temples nor priests. Their boats are made of the bark of trees, and the timbers and frame-work within of very slight pieces of wood. They are two or three fathom in length, and not above an ell broad; and yet they make a shift to live it out in very bad weather. In winter these Ophiacs live under ground, with an hole at the top of their caves for the smoke to go out at. When it snows, and they sleep naked about the fire, as their custom is; it often happens that they have one half of the body covered with snow, and when they awake, they turn themselves on the other side towards the fire, and feel no inconvenience by it.

When it happens that an Ophiac is jealous of his wife, he cuts away some fur from the belly of a bear, and carries it to the person he suspects to be great with his wife. When the party is innocent, he accepts it; but when he is guilty, he fairly owns it, and comes to an amicable agreement with the husband for the price of his wife. Nor dare they act otherwise, persuaded, that if any man should presume to accept of the hair, and at the same time be guilty, the bear from whom the hair is cut, would devour him before three days were at an end. Upon the same occasions, they also present bows and arrows, hatchets and knives, not doubting but those who accept them under the circumstances of guilt, must come to an untimely end in a few days. This is what they unanimously affirm, and is confirmed by the Ruffians who live in those parts: but enough has been said of the Ophiacs.

The banks of the Oby, inhabited by the banks of the Oby uncultivated from the sea, quite to the river of Tun, because of the excessive cold, whence they produce neither corn nor honey, nor ought else of fruit but the cones of cedars.
Arrival at Makofskoi upon the Keta. Want of Provisions.


1692. He leaves the Oby.

Minister's assistance, or he must have stopped 30 leagues short of Makofskoi, and have been exposed to the danger of perishing among the ice and snows; the banks of the Keta being so far destitute of inhabitants.

He had scarce got from this village, when this river, which is not navigable in winter, began to be taken by the frost. It runs through a country full of woods and thickets, and winds, so as frequently to astonish the traveller, when at night he perceives how near he is to the place he left at noon. This country abounds with heath-game, pheasants and partridges, and a pleasure it is to see them in flocks drinking morn and even, upon the banks of the river, where, as you pass by, you may kill what number you please, which proved a great help to them in the shortening of their provisions. The soil here produces gooseberries, both red and black, as also strawberries and raspberries; but the river affords no great store of fish.

Near this place, in the mountains to the north-east, they find the teeth and bones of a creature they call a Mammut, and especially upon the banks of the Rivers of Jenjes, of Trugan, of Mongamsia, and of Lena, near Jabutskoi, and quite to the icy ocean. And this chiefly happens when a great Thaw has flooded this last river, and the ice has torn away earth from the sides of the hills.

Then in this earth frozen almost quite to the bottom, they find carcasses of this creature; and especially when the thaw is not extremely great indeed. A person who attended on the envoy, and who had been several years employed in this research, assured him he had found the head of
1692. of one of these Mammutts in such thawed grounds; that having split it and opened it, he found the flesh almost all putrified, with teeth sticking out like those of an elephant, and so fast set that he had much ado to pull them out. That afterwards meeting with a fore-quarter of this creature, he carried a bone of it to the city of Trugan, and that this bone was as thick as the middle of an ordinary man, and in a word, that he observed something that had the resemblance of blood about the neck of this creature.

There are different opinions concerning this animal. The Tungus, Tunguses and Offites maintain he never comes forth from the bottom of the earth, and that he moves from place to place under ground. They even say they see the earth rife and sink in when he is in motion, so that he leaves a considerable trench behind him. They assure moreover, that he dies as soon as he sees the light, that he never appears above the surface but by accident, whence it is that he is found dead upon high banks, and that he is never seen alive.

But the Russians, who have been now a long time in Siberia, believe these Mammutts are creatures like elephants, except that their teeth are more hooked and closer. They say there was of them in this country before the flood, the climate in those early days being warmer than at present; and that their dead bodies being born away by the waters of the deluge, were buried deep in the earth, and that the frost which has so constantly and intensely frozen them up, has preserved them from utter decay, and in short, that it is owing to thaws they ever appear in fight, which bids fair enough to be the case. Nor indeed is it necessary to make this out, for us to suppose there has been any alteration in the climate of these parts, seeing that these bodies may have been brought hither by the waters which covered the whole face of the earth at that time.

When the teeth of this creature have been a whole summer exposed on the shore, they find them split and black, and then they are good for nothing, whereas those that are entire and clean, are as good as ivory. They carry them to all parts of Muscovy, where they make combs of them, and other pieces of work.

The same servent told him, that he had found two teeth, in one and the same head, which weighed about twelve hundred weight of Ruffia, or about four hundred weight German, so that these creatures must be of enormous dimensions. For the rest, Mr. Ivens, says, he never met with any body that had ever seen one of these Mammutts alive, nor ever any one that could give him an exact description of their form.

When this Gentleman had reached the village of Makofshi, he would no longer expose himself to perils on the water, and resolved to perform the rest of his journey by land. Having travelled sixteen leagues in this manner, he, upon the twelfth of October, came to Jeniza skio, where he stayed some time to repose himself, and to wait for the settling of the winter season, that he might continue his journey in a sledge. In the mean time he made preparation of everything he might want, and had time enough to examine into every thing remarkable in the city.

It borrows its name from the river of Jenifa, which arising from the south, crosses the Kalmuc mountains, and, holding along in a straight line to the northward, till it divides itself into the icy sea of Tartary, but not after the manner of the Oby, which discharges itself into the bottom of its own waters, and runs from them into the sea. It is a full quarter of a league broad at this town. Its water is white and light, but produces no great quantity of fish. About seven years ago the inhabitants of this place fitted out a ship to go upon the whale fishery; but the never returned, nor have they ever had any news of her since. But the inhabitants of Pugumia, a town farther down the river, send ships
1692. ships every year upon that expediti-
on; however, they time it better than the others did; and consider when
the wind blows the ice off the shore, and so safe with safety. The city of
Jenizeskoit is indifferently large, well
fortified, and well peopled. Corn,
butcher's meat, and poultry abound
there. Its jurisdiction extends over a
great number of the heathen Tun-
guuf, who inhabit along the Jenifa; 1692.
and the Tunguka, and the neigh-
bourhood about. They pay their
tribute to his Czarian Majesty in all
sorts of furs. The cold is here so
intense, that the fruit-trees here pro-
duce no fruit. They have nothing
of the kind but red and black goose-
berries, and some strawberries.

CHAP. XXIII.

Departure from Jenizeskoit. Arrival at the isle of Ribnoi; at
Ilinskoi; and to the fall or cataract of Shamanskoit, or
the Magician. Description of the Tunguifes.

1693. THE Envoy departed from Je-
nizeskoit in a sledge, and upon
the twentith of January, 1693, ar-
ried at the island of Ribnoi or of Fijb.
It stands in the middle of the river of
Tunguka, and abounds in fish, espe-
cially in sturgeon and pike, of extra-
ordinary size, and is almost wholly
inhabited by Russians. Upon the
twenty-fifth he arrived at Iliniskoi,
upon the river of Ilin, which rises to
the south-south-westward, and dis-
charges itself into the Tunguka,
north-north-west. To this place
there are both Russians and Tunguges
upon the banks of this river.

At some days journey from hence,
you meet with the great fall, cata-
raict, or torrent of water of Sha-
manskoit, or the Magician, so called
from a famous Shaman or Magician
who there takes up his abode. The
fall of this torrent is half a league
in extent, and the sides are high hills
of rock, and all the bottom is rock:
Terrible it is to behold, as may be
perceived by the plate annexed; and
makes a most frightful noise as it falls
among the rocks, some of which ap-
pear above, and some are concealed
below. When the air is still, it is
heard at the distance of three Ger-
man leagues around.

1593. The vessels wherewith they nave-
gate up this torrent, are often fix or
seven days in getting up, altho' they
be quite light, and drawn up by cap-
tanes, windlasses, anchors and men.
Sometimes it happens that they shall
work a whole day, in places where
the water is low, and the rocks are
high, and not gain the length of the
vessel, which is all the time in
great danger.

They unladen these vessels to go
down, as well as to go up this tor-
rent, and carry the goods by land
till there is no longer any danger;
and the fall is so precipitate, that
they are seldom above twelve mi-
utes in going down. For the rest,
there are but few either of the Russi-
ans or the Tunguges that are quite
dextrous at this piece of navigation,
tho' they are provided with a rudder
both fore and aft, and tho' they
have ears shipped on each side. The
steersman directs the men at the ears
with the motion of an handkerchief,
the noise being so rude and boister-
rus, as to drown the human voice;
and besides this, they take care to
have their vessel close covered up to
prevent their shipping the water
that goes over them. However, there
happens every year some sad acci-
1693. dent or other for want of skilful pi-

lots, who run upon the rocks, in

which case there is no resource, and

they are either swallowed up by the

furious torrent, or inevitably dash-
ed to pieces against the rocks : nor

is it easy to recover the dead bodies

of those so lost: tho' on the shore

are many croffes erection at the pla-

ces where such wrecks have happen-
ed, and where the people have been

buried. The water that flows hither

from the northern ocean swells this

torrent in winter to that degree, that

it is difficult to discern any fall, so

that it was formerly crossed in ledges,

but in summer it is very low.

Some leagues from hence are

numbers of Tungusjes, and their fa-
nous Shaman or Magician. The
great reputation of this impostor ex-
cited the curiosity of the Envoy to
go to the place of his abode. He

says, he was a large made man, pret-

ty far advanced in years, that he

had twelve wives, and blushed not

for his profession. This Shaman

showed his magical habit, and every

article else he used in acting the

magician: First a garment all hung

about with iron, representing the

figures of all sorts of animals, birds,
ravens, fishes, owls, griffins, hacha-

ets, faws, sabres, knives, and the like,

which made a strange sort of clinking

and noise. His feet and his legs

were covered with the same, and his

hand with two great bears paws

made of iron. His cap was also hung

with pieces of iron like his gown,

and upon his fore-head he had a

large pair of horns of the rein-deer,

made also of iron. When he exer-
cises his diabolical art, he takes a

drum in his left hand, and a flat

fort of stick in his right, covered

with the skin of the mountain

mouse; then jumping first upon one

foot, and then upon the other, the

pieces of iron make a most frightful

din; he beats upon his drum at the

same time, and rolls his eyes, and

imitates the noise of a bear. This

fine prelude over, he demands his

rewards before he flits a step farther,
towards the discovery of what the

Tungusjes want to know of him, 1693.

whether it be to help them to any

thing that has been stolen, or to tell

them any thing else they want of

him. This done, he begins to skip

and to cry out again, till he perceives

a blackbird perched upon his cabin

at the place where the smoke goes

out; lastly, he falls backward, as if

deprived of his senses, and the bird

flies away again. In about a quarter

of an hour's time he recovers him-
helf, and declares what he was de-

sired to tell, and what he says never

does not happen. The dress of this

magician is so heavy, that it is as

much as a man can do to lift it up

with one hand. This man was very

rich in carthe, and the richer came

to consult him, gave him whatever

he had a mind to ask.

These Tungusjes of Nipoyier, are de-
scription heathens, robust, and well made of

their body. They wear their long black

hair, knotted behind, and which falls

down upon their back like a horse's

tail; their face is generally broad,

but their nose is not flat, and they

have little eyes like the Kalmucks.

Both men and women go naked in

summer, excepting a leather about

their middle which conceals their

privities, and is somewhat like a

fringe: The women wear their hair
dressed up with coral, to which they

hang little iron figures. Upon their

left arm they carry a kind of pot

full of a smoking wood, which

keeps the flies from biting them.

These insects do swarm upon the ri-

er of Tungusje, that a man is obli-
ged to cover over his face and his

hands; but these pagans are so used

to them, that they hardly feel them.

They are fond of beauty, but have

very odd notions about what it is;

for to add thereto they quilt their

forehead, their cheeks and their chin,

with thread steeped in a black greave,

which being afterwards withdrawn,

leaves marks behind it, which are

thought to be very great ornaments.

And indeed, there are few of this

people without them, but you will

have a clearer idea of this matter by

consulting the plate annexed.
In winter they wear undressed skins of the rein-deer, adorning the fore-part with horse-hair, and the bottom with doge-skin; they have no use either of linen or woollen; they make themselves a kind of ribbon and thread of fith-skin. Upon their heads also they wear the skin of rein-deer with the horns on, and particularly when they are about to hunt that creature, whom by that means they get near, gliding along upon the grass, till they are within reach, when they seldom fail to dispatch him with their arrows.

When they would divert themselves, they form a ring, while one is in the midst of them with a stick in his hand, with which he endeavours to strike the legs of the rest as they run round him, and they avoid a blow so artfully, that it is but seldom any of them feel the cudgel; but if at any time it happen that one of them receives a blow, he is immediately ducked in the river.

They place the bodies of their dead flark naked under a tree, and there leave them to rot, after which they bury their bones in the ground.

They have no priests besides their Shaman or Magician; but they have all of them wooden idols in their cabbins. These idols are about half an ell in length, and in human shape, and these they pretend to feed with the beet they have like the Ophiaces, and with as little cleanliness.

Their cabbins, which are made of the bark of birch, are, on the outside, adorned with tails and mains of horses, with their bows and arrows, and most of them with the dead bodies of puppies hung about them. They feed upon fish in summer, and have boats of the bark of trees sewn together, big enough to hold seven or eight persons; they are long, narrow, and without benches. They
1693. They row upon their knees with a double paddle or oar, which they hold by the middle, and handle very dextrously, dipping all at once, as well upon great rivers as upon small. They fish in summer, and 1693. hunt in winter, during which they feed upon deer of several sorts, and the like.

CHAP. XXIV.

Arrival at Buratskoi, and at Bulaganskoi. Description of the Burates, &c. Arrival at Jekutskoi; a Description of it. A burning Cavern. Departure from Jekutskoi. Arrival at the Lake of Baikal. Description of that Lake, &c.

Upon the first of February, the Envoy arrived at the fortress of Buratskoi, upon the river Angara, which falls into the lake of Baikal, and is well inhabited by a people that are heathens, and called Burates.

Upon the eleventh, he arrived at Bulaganskoi, where also the vales and low country are inhabited by these Burates, a people rich in cattle. Their beevs are very thick of hair, and their cabbins are low, made of wood, and covered with earth: They light their fire in the middle, and the smoke goes out of a hole in the top of the building. They have no notion of agriculture, or of fruit grounds or gardens; and their villages are for the most part on the sides of rivers, whence they are not used to remove like the Tunguses, and others of the heathen. On one side of their doors, they have stakes planted out, upon which they impale goats or sheep, and fasten thereto also the skins of horses.

In the spring, they meet together in great numbers on horseback, to hunt the stag, the rein-deer, and other wild beasts which they call Ablavco. When they have fight of them at a distance, they divide themselves into troops and surround them; then they drive them together into a close body by degrees, and in this manner frequently hedge in some hundreds of them, which they shoot with their arrows, when they are within reach; so that few of them escape, every sportman being provided with thirty arrows.

When they have finished the chase, during which it sometimes happens that they wound each other in the confusion of the attack, and shoot their horses, they look out, every one for his arrows, which they always mark, and then they flea their game, drying the flesh of it, which they divide from the bones, in the sun: And when this store is near upon exhausted, they return again to their sport. This country swarms with fallow-deer, and especially in wild sheep, which upon the mountains are met with by thousands. But there are few or no creatures that afford furs for 5 or 6 leagues about, excepting some bears and some wolves.

When it happens that among this people you want oxen, or camels to travel with to China, you must agree with them for goods in exchange; they have no notion of money in coin. They truck with you for pale fables, pewter or copper basons, red cloths of Hamburg, other skins, filks of Persia of all sorts of colours, and gold and silver in ingots. In this manner you may buy an ox, which dressed, would weigh from 800 to 1000 weight, for the value of four or five rubles; and a camel for the cattle.
1693. value of ten or a dozen, the rubles
being here estimated at five livers as
in Russia. The inhabitants of this
country, as well men as women, are
robust and large of stature; have a face
handsome enough in their way, and
somewhat resembling the Tartars of
China. In the winter-time, both
the one and the other wear gowns of
sheep-skin, with a great girdle, and
a cap called Malachuvon, which
comes over their ears; and in summer
they wear gowns of an ugly sort
of a red cloth. For the rest, as they
never wash but upon the day they
come into the world, and never pare
their nails at all, they, if the expres-
sion may be allowed, look like a kind
of Devils.

The men wear a beard under their
chin but pluck out all the rest;
the seams of their cloaths are adorn-
ed with fur; their caps are of fox-
skin; their gowns of a blue-cotton
stuff, pleased in the middle, and their
boots are of skins with the hair outer-
most. The women wear coral
rings, and pieces of money in the
tresses of their hair; and the hair of
the girls or maidens is in snakes, that
they look like furies.

The women have their hair fall-
ing down on each side, and adorned
with all sorts of figures in pewter;
and when they dye, they bury them
with their best cloaths, and a bow
and an arrow. Their only worship
is to make certain motions of the
head, at certain times of the year,
to the goats and theep that are im-
paled at their doors. The same hon-
our they pay to the sun and moon,
but upon their knees, with their hands
joined together, thro' without saying
a word, or using any sort of verbal
invocation. They have priests, which
they put to death whenever they
please, and then bury them with
money and cloaths, that they may
go before them, and pray for them.

When they are under a necessity
of taking an oath among themselves,
they repair to the lake of Baikal, up-
on a high mountain, which is faced
with them, and which they may
reach in two days journey: They
are persuaded they should never 1693:
come down again alive, if they took
a false oath. This mountain has
for a long series of years past been in
high veneration with them, and upon
it they make frequent offerings of
cattle.

In these parts they have the must creature, like those to be seen in the
plate. It is not very unlike a deer
without horns, but is darker, and
with a head not very unlike the head
of a wolf. His musk is contained
in a small bladder at the navel, co-
vered with a little sort of down. The Chinese call it Yebiam or the
musk-deer; but besides that he has
not the head of a deer, his teeth are
like the tufts of a wild boar, except
that they are hooked.

Martini, in his Chinese atlas, ob-
serves, that this creature, is in the
country of Xanxi in the neighbour-
hood of the city of Leao; in that of
Xemii, and particularly in that of
Hanchungfu; in the country of
Suechuen; in that of Paomingfu, and
in the neighbourhood of Kiating,
and the fortresses of Tienchoen; in ma-
ny parts of the territory of Jumun,
and other places to the westward.
The description he gives of it is
curious enough: "The musk crea-
ture, says he, is not very unlike a
young deer; but he is of a deeper
colour, and so lazy, that it is as
much as the hunters can do to
rouse him, so that he suffers his
throat to be cut without the least
struggle or resistance; they save
his blood, and are careful to keep
it. Under his navel, he has a
small bladder full of blood, and a
certain coagulated and odoriferous
fluid; this they take from him,
then they skin him and cut him in
pieces.

"In order to make the best musk,
the Chinese take the hind quarters of musk.
"of this creature, from the kidneys,
"which they bray with a little
"blood in a stone mortar, till the
"whole become a jelly, which they
"dry, and with it fill little cobs,
"made of the skin of this same crea-
ture."
If they would have it of an inferior degree, tho' at the same time genuine and very good, they with-out distinction pound and bray all the parts of this creature together, and reducing them to the confusion before-mentioned, which they mix with a little blood, they fill cods with it as before.

Besides these two forts, they have a third, much esteemed also, tho' not so pure and good as the former. This is made of the fore-quarters of this creature, that is, from the head to the kidneys, which together with the rest, serve to make common musk, so that no part is lost, and all is good.

For the rest the Envoy pretends not to say, whether or no the Burates, and the other savages their neighbours, practice with this creature, as the Chines do.

Having made some stay among this people, he went to Yekutska, upon the river of Angara, which rises from the lake of Baital, about 8 leagues off. This town, which has been but lately built, is flanked with good towers. Its suburbs are very large, and corn, salt, butchers-meat and fish, are there so cheap, that they do not give above seven pence for an hundred weight of barley, German weight. The country about is very fertile, and abounds in grain as far as Wergolenskoi, which is only some leagues distant. The Rossians in these parts have some hundreds of villages, and are very careful to cultivate the land.

Opposite to this town, to the eastward, there is a burning cavern, which has belched forth flame with a degree of violence for some time past, but at present nothing appears from it but a little smoke. The fire came out by a large fissure, which continues to be hot, as may be experienced by thrusting a long stick into it.

There is also a fine monastery on one side of this town, in the place where the Jekut, whence it derives its name, falls into the Angara. In these parts they feel great earthquakes, during the autumn season, but they never do any damage.

Here the Envoy met with a Taish or chia, or a Lord of the Mongales, who had submitted himself to the protection of their Czarian Majesty's, and had embraced the Christian faith after the Greek rite.

This Lord had a sister who was a nun after the Mongale profession, who had also had some inclination to become a Christian. When she was talked about it, she would say she was convinced that the God of the Christians must be a very mighty God, seeing he had driven theirs from out of paradise: That, how- ever, a time would come, when he would return thither again, and that he would not be expelled a second time. When any of these religious or devoted women come into a room, they do not salute any body, contrary to the custom of the Mongales; their order not indulging them in that form of complaisance. She had a string of beads in her hand, which she was continually counting with her fingers, and was attended by a Lama, or Mongale priest, who had a string of beads Mongale also in his hand, after the manner of the Mongales and Kalmucks, which he continually counted with her, and was continually moving his lips as a person that prayed to himself; and had so worn his thumb, his nail, and joints of his fingers, with turning and telling his beads, that he had lost all feeling in them.

Hh

The
The Envoy having refitted himself some time at 'Jekutski', upon the first of May departed thence in a fledge, and crossed the country, to the lake of 'Baikal', where upon the tenth he arrived, and found it frozen over still.

Having crossed it, he came into the country of 'Katania'. This lake is about 6 German leagues in breadth, and 40 in length, and the ice upon it was 2 Dutch ells in thickness; tho' it be very dangerous, when it happens to snow, and the wind high at the same time. Care must particularly be taken that the horses be very well shod for the purpose, because the ice is very smooth and slippery, and because the snow is always driven off from it by the wind.

There are in it also great holes, very dangerous for travellers, when the wind is high, and the horses are not properly shod, and into which they are frequently forced. The ice here also sometimes cracks with the violence of gulls, and with a noise like thunder; but is never long before it joins and knits together again.

The camels and oxen used in the journey to 'China' must cross this lake as they go from 'Jekutski', and that they may be able so to do, the former have boots put on them, which boots are shod for the ice, and very sharp irons are put upon the hoofs of the others, without which they would not be able to stand upon this smooth slippery surface. For the rest, the water of this lake is very sweet, tho' at a distance it appears to be as green and as clear as the ocean. In the breaks of the ice it has numbers of seals, which are black, whereas those in the white sea are of a mixed colour. This lake is full of fish, and particularly swarms with sturgeon and pike, some
of which are of such size, as to weigh two hundred of German weight. The only river that goes out of this lake is the Angara, which runs to the north-north-west; but there are several that fall into it, the chief of which is the Silinga, which rises to the southward in the country of the Mongales; besides some brooks and rills that fall into it from the rocks, nor is it without some islands. Its borders, and the country round about, are inhabited by Burates, Mongales, and Onites, and produce very fine black fables; besides that they here sometimes take a creature called Kaberdiner.

It is particularly observable, with regard to this lake, that when you are near it, on the side of the monastery of St. Nicholas, which stands in the place where the Angara goes out of the lake, the inhabitants are very scrupulously cautious in advising all travellers that are to cross the lake, by no means whatsoever to call it by the name of Ofèr or Still-Water, but a lake; for fear they perish by the violence of a storm, as many have before them, who have been so indiscreet as to call it Ofèr; a caution which appeared so ridiculous to the Envoy, that he called it so as he went over it, without any fear of what the inhabitants had to predictively threatened him with; and it happened, that in the midst of very fine weather he came to the castle of Katania, the first fortress in the province of Daoria, heartily commiserating the wild superstitious of these poor people, who fear the wrath of the elements, instead of putting their trust in God, who is the Creator and the Lord of the whole world, and whom the winds and the elements obey.

C H A P. XXV.


The next day, the Envoy departed from the castle of Katania, and upon the twelfth, arrived at the great burg of Ibinskoi, or of Bolsi Saimka, most of whose inhabitants are Kaffians, who in winter hunt for fables, the produce of the earth affording them no more than a bare subsistence, because the country is incumbered with barren hills. Upon the fourteenth he arrived at the castle of Taninskoi, where was a good garrison of Cossacks, to make head against the incursions of the Mongales who inhabit upon the frontiers of this country. Upon the sixteenth, he arrived at Udinskoi, a town seated upon a high hill, at the foot of which most of the inhabitants take up their abode, under the cannon of that fortress, along the river Uda, which falls into the St-linga,
1693. Linga, a quarter of a league below the town, in which there is also a good garrison of Russian Cossacks to watch the motions of the Mongols.

This town, which is the key of the province of Dauria, is very much exposed, even in the summer time, to the ravages of the Mongols, who often carry off horses as they feed in the meadows. The land, which is there very mountainous, is fit for no sort of tillage, tho' it abounds in cabbages, carrots, turnips, and such like vegetable productions; but no trees have as yet been planted here to this day.

Here, about nine at night, the Envoy was surprized with a great earthquake, which in the space of an hour, shook all the houses three times, without doing any farther mischief.

The river of Uda produces little or no fish, if you except pike and roach; but every day in the month of July, there are prodigious shoals of a certain sort of fish which they call Omuli, and which swim up this river from the lake of Baikal. These Omuli are of the size of an herring, and hardly ever appear beyond this town, at the foot of a crumbled hill, where they stay only for a few days, and then swim back again to the lake. They take great quantities of them, by only throwing of sacks in the river, and these sacks are frequently as full as they can hold. The Envoy was obliged to lay here till the sixth of April, to provide himself with camels and horses.

Upon the twenty sixth he went by land to the river of Ona, which comes from the north-north-west, and falls into the Uda.

Upon the twenty seventh, he reached the river of Kurba, whole source is to the north-north-west, and in like manner discharges itself into the Uda. He skirted this river towards its spring, till he had got to the middle of it; he was frequently obliged to leave it at some distance, but never left sight of it.

Jarauna. Upon the twenty ninth, he arrived at the fortrefs of Jarauna, and was 1693. ravished to meet with towns again, after having croffed a desart country full of high rocks; anerkome journey, during which he saw no foul from the time he left Udinska. This fortrefs is provided with a good garrison of Cossacks, and here also are many Russians, who subsist by the sale of fables. The Kindi Tung-People of guf, the heathens who inhabit along the rivers of Tunguski and Angara, spread all over this country, and speak a language peculiar to themselves. When they dye they are buried with their cloaths and their arrows, and stones are put over their grave. Then they plant a stake, to which the belt horse of the deceased is tied, and there sacrificed. They live by the sale of fable furs, which are perfectly fine in this country, and of an admirable black. Here also are fine luxes, and a fort of squirrels of a black-grey, which the Chinese were formerly wont to carry off with them. To the north of this fortrefs you see three small lakes not far from each other, which, together, are 2 leagues in circumference, and abound with pike, carp, perch, and the like. From hence are two ways which lead to Zitinskoi or Plabitscha. The Envoy went part of his servants by the one, and the caravan advanced to the southward, skirting it along the lake of Schaksee Ofre, and then croffed the hills of Jablunsoi, or of Apples; tho' none grow there, and they produce no other than a kind of red fruit, which has something of the taste of an apple. The other way he took himself, with a train of fourteen followers, notwithstanding it was very moorish, and that he was to go over lofty rocks, from Jarauna to Tchinta. There are numbers of Russins in this fortrefs, who in the winter season take fables of a very fine black, well fed, and equal to the very finest in all Siberia, and the province of Dauria.
Here he passed a night, and a Knez or Prince of the Tunguses, called Liliulka, came to see him. This Lord had his hair done up with leather, and so very long, that it went three times round about his shoulders. The Envoy intimating a curiosity to see it loose, and the Knez being far gone with brandy, obliged him with the favour, and his hair being measured, proved to be 4 Dutch ells in length. He had with him a son of no more than six years old, whose hair, which hung upon his shoulders, was an ell in length. These Tunguses live in great numbers upon the hills and mountains of this country, and are generally rich, which proceeds from their large dealings in fables.

For two days together they went over stony mountains, very lofty, to the north-west and the south-east. The river of Kanela, which afterwards assumes the name of Wittim, rises there to the north-ward; runs away to the north-east, and goes and falls into the Lena, and from thence into the icy or northern sea. The Zitta commences from the other side of the mountains, half a league from thence, and falls into the Ingoda, or Amur, and from thence into the eastern ocean.

Upon the fifteenth of May, he arrived at Plodbitsiba, as the Caravancaha did the day before, having greatly suffered on the way from the Tunguses, who had set fire to the dry grass; so that the cattle being in want of forage, they had been obliged to go into the mountains for it, at the distance of a league off.

The Envoy was obliged to make a stay of some days at Plodbitsiba, up of Ingoda on the Zitta, to rest him a little, and to get ready some rafts, by which to fall down the rivers of Ingoda and Schilka.
Four or five leagues upon the 1693.

Scilika, above this town, and ten leagues below it, you meet with several Russian gentlemen, and some Cossacks who subsist by tillage, grazing and fishing. The environs of this town and the hills produce all sorts of flowers and plants; balsam, rhubarb or rampion, of extraordinary size; fine white and yellow lilacs; red and white pinions of a charming scent, and of several sorts; rosemary, thyme, sweet marjoram, lavender, besides many odoriferous plants unknown in our countries: but they have no sort of fruit here except gooseberries. The heathens, Town forts of the in- habitants that are

heathens.

who have a long time been in this country, and who are under the dominion of the Czar of Muscovy are of two sorts; the Konni Tungufi, and the Olemni Tungufi. The first are obliged to appear on horseback at the first orders of the Waiwode of Nerzinskoi, or when the borders are infested by the Tartars; and the Olemni are obliged to serve on foot, and armed in the town, when occasion requires. The chief of the Konni Chief of Tungufi is a Knez called Paul Petrovitz Gantimur, or in their language Catana Gantimur. He is pretty far advanced in years, and of the country of Nieuwen, where he had been a Taijeba, under the dominion of the King of China; but falling into disgrace with that Prince, who deposed him, he removed into Dauria, with his hoards or vaoufls, and embracing the christian faith of the Greek church, threw himself under the protection of the Czar. He can bring 3000 men into the field in twenty four hours time, all well mounted and good soldiers, provided with bow and arrow. It often happens that a score or two of this people shall drive three or four hundred of the Mongol Tartars before them. Those of them who live near the town, subsist by cattle; but those upon the Scilika and the Amur hunt for fables, which are here of exquisite beauty and very black.

They
L'Homme n'a de peau que sous le menton et en arrière de la tête. Les vêtements de leur habitat sont garnis de fourrures. Leurs hampes sont de poins de renard. Les jupes de ceoton bleu, placées en milieu. Leurs bottes de peaux, dont la fourrure est en deher. La famille, a des bagues de corne et des pièces d'argent, attachées de hortelisse de ses cheveux. Les cheveux de la jeune fille sont hortelisse par fleurons.
They live in cabbins which they call Jartes, the inside of which are poles joined or framed together, and which they can easily remove from place to place, as they are often obliged to do. When these poles are erected, they cover them over with skins, except where the smoke is to go out at top, and their fire places round which they sit upon turf, are in the middle of the cabin. Their worship is the same with that of the inhabitants of Daoria, from whom they pretend to be descended, and differs in no point from that of Tartary, quite to the frontiers of the Mongales. The women here are rebuilt, with broad faces like the men, and when they are on horseback, are armed like them with bow and arrow, which they use with great dexterity, even when young maidsens. Nor does their dress differ from that of the men, as appears by the plate annexed. Water is their common drink; but those who have where-withal drink tea, which they call Karda’za, or black Tea, because it tinctures the water with black instead of green. They boil it in mare’s milk, and a little water, to which they add some grease or butter. They have also a kind of distilled liquor which they call Kummen or Arak, extracted from mare’s milk, which they heat and put into a vessel, with a little four milk, which they stir once every hour: having continued a night in this state, they put it into an earthen pot well covered up and luted with paste, and then distil it over a fire as with us. This is to be twice repeated before this liquor is fit to drink, and then it becomes as strong and as clear as a malt spirit, and fuddles as easily. It is to be observed of the cows of Siberia, Daoria, and generally speaking of all Tartary, that they will not suffer themselves to be milked while they have calves at the dog, and that they cease to give milk as soon as they are out of their sight. Hence it is, they are under a necessity of uging mare’s milk, which is much fatter and foeter than that of the cow.

These heathens hunt in the spring time, and lay in their store of venison after the manner of the Barates, 1693, drying it as they do in the sun. Their bread they make of the dried roots of yellow lilies, which they call Sura, and which they apply to several other uses. They are very adroit at shooting fish in the water with their arrows, tho’ at the distance of fifteen or sixteen fathom. As their arrows are heavy, they are fit to kill nothing but pike and trout, which swim in clear water towards the banks, and upon the gravel, and these they split in two as if they had done it with a cleaver, the points of their arrows being three fingers broad.

Here follows an abominable custom, which is in practice among this people, when they are under a necessity to take an oath to diffe-
Mr. Isbrants's return through the dominions belonging to his Czarian Majesty in Tartary.

Mr. Isbrants's journey beyond Tartary, and his embassy to China, bearing no affinity with the travels of Mr. Le Brusy to the East Indies, by the way of Persia and Turkey, it has not been thought advisable to follow that Minifter beyond the bounds of the countries under his Czarian Majesty. But as there are many curious and important particulars in his return from Tartary, and which are of a piece with our design, it has been thought the publick would not take it amiss to see an account of them here.

Upon the nineteenth of February 1694, he departed from Pekin, and upon the twenty fifth, arrived at Galgan, near the famous wall which divides the empire of China from Tartary. From thence he advanced towards the river of Nana, and came to the frontiers of Tartary, to the edge of the great desart which has been already mentioned. There he stopped for some days, to provide things necessary for continuing of his journey, having had his expenses hitherto defrayed by the King of China; but as that is to be no longer, as soon as an Ambassador has got into the territories of Argun, the border of the dominions of his Czarian Majesty; this Minifter sensible of this, had taken care to furnish himself with camels and mules at Pekin, where they are to be purchased cheap.

This precaution had its good effects, for he would have come short off, if he had reckoned upon the horses and camels he had left at Nana, most of which had dy'd in his absence for want of forage.

Upon the twenty second of February, he entertained the Mandarin who had waited on him so far, by the order of the King his master, and took leave of him, and of all his train. Upon the twenty sixth, he entered the great and frightful desert, and in two days arrived at Targashia, upon the little river of Ja-la, where the season was so backward, there was hardly any grass in the country. There he rested himself some time, and was advised to be upon his guard, as he went through the desert, and came near the borders of the rivers of Sadun and of Kallar, for that 3000 Mongales lay in wait for him at the passage. He took all the necessary measures to prevent a surprisal from them, and ordered sixty men well armed, on horseback, to patrol every night about the Caravan, nor was he attacked, and held on his way the next morning. When he had reached the mountains of Salib, there was hardly any forage at all to be got, and the next day he went over them in the midst of an excessive cold and plenty of snow, which happen'd very bad for his horses and camels, which had nothing to feed upon but dry and withered grasi. In this place he consulted with those about him, whether he should adhere to the ordinary route, or take a sweep about to avoid the Tartars that wait-ed for him at the passage. The last was the resolution taken, tho' extremely difficult to execute, and particularly on account of the cattle that were laden.

In taking this track they were to Badways go over lofty mountains, and to cross deep fens for a fortnight together. In the beginning he left twelve camels and fifteen horses, and in proportion to them afterwards, which funk beneath the weight of their burdens, for want of food to sustain them, for these desarts afford nothing but a withered grasi, as has been observed before; and even this failed afterwards, the Tartars setting fire there-
1694. to, so that he was obliged in that
condition to undergo a double jour-
ney, to find a place where there was
any to be had.

Most of the merchants who wait-
ed on him, having lost their horses,
were constrained to go on foot; and
as those that remained were quite
exhausted and spent, they had been
reduced to the necessity of leaving a
good part of their goods in these des-
ferts, if they had not had the pre-
cation to provide themselves with
a great number of camels which they
led by the bridle.

In short, having undergone a thou-
ard fatigues and hardships, he, with
inexpressible difficulty, got to the ri-
ver of Sadan, where he found the
climate more temperate, and the grafs
growing. Here he stayed two days to
rest his horses and camels which
were almost quite off their legs.

Arrival of
a Chinese
Envoy.

Here a Chinese Envoy from the town
of Maffeen, and whom the Emperor
had sent to the Waiwode of Nerszin-
skoi fell in with him, and joined him
with a train of one hundred persons,
and thereby put him into a condition
of withstanding the attacks he was
threatened with from the Mongales,
having then with him a body of six
hundred men.

Upon the fifteenth of March he
came to the river of Kailan, which
he forded in a place where the water
was very low; and went and encamped
in a valley a league farther, where,
however, there was scarce any to-
rage. Here he stayed that night, and
at break of day perceived a great
smoke which came from the north-
west, and which gave him some
pain, mistrusting, and with reason
good, that the Tartars had set fire
to the withered grafs, to attack him
by the favour of the wind and this
smoke. And as, after God, his
welfare depended upon the safety of
his camels and horses, he sent them
behind a hill to a place where there
was grafs, and where they might be
out of danger of the flames; and at
the same time ordered an hundred
men to advance towards the smoke
with felts, wherewith they were un-
Vol. I.

ed to cover the camels, to ende-
vour to stifle the fire, and stop it be-
fore it reached the place where the
Caravan was. But notwithstanding
all these precautions, the fire hurri-
ed along by the fury of the wind, in
an instant burnt up all the withered
grafs, which was half a foot high,
and did not give him time enough
to strike and remove off his tents, a
dozens of which it reduced to ashes,
and flew like a flash of lightning ov-
er the Caravan. The flames also
destroy'd some goods, and caught
hold on fourteen persons, tho' but
one of them dy'd, who happen'd to
be a Persian. The Envoy in the
mean time had retired to the top of
a hill, where there was no grafs, and
only attended by two servants, who
covered him over with a felt.

From hence, the flames in an in-
stant flew away to the place where
the Chinese Envoy was retired, at some
distance on the hills; but as they
were spent before they quite re-
ached him, he was in no great fear
about the matter.

To conclude, this fire spreading
along in a moment to the river of
Kailan, about a league from the
Caravan, it there went out. This
fire having thus destroy'd all the
grafs that was near the Envoy, he
sent his guide in quest of some place
where the Caravan might pass the
night, but he returned not till the
next day, and informed him, there
was no forage to be had in two
days journey from thence, the flames
having destroy'd it all, and that even
in the places where there was any
left, there was not half enough to
feed so large a number of camels and
horses; a sad hearing for the whole
Caravan.

Upon this he proposed to reparse
the river of Kailan, where the flames
had stop'd, and beyond which they
might have a chance of meeting
with grafs; but there was no daring
to do it, for fear of the Tartars who
were on that side, and it was thought
better to be expos'd to a march of
two days, tho' destitute of every
thing, than to run the hazard of fol-
K k

ling
At break of day, the Caravan began to move, and, just as night came on, halted on the side of a great fen, having suffered great hardships, and left eighteen camels and twenty horses in the bogs. And this was the harder upon them, as the cattle that was left staggered under the weight of the loads and harnesses of those that had been thus lost, the merchants being unable to away with the thoughts of leaving them behind.

The next day, they again crossed several marshy valleys and lofty hills, and at length appeared on the river of Margeen, where the graft had not suffered. Having forced it, they marched on with great trouble and difficulty, their camels which were quite tired out, decreasing in number as they went on, the fatigue of following the Caravan being too much for them to undergo; and what was still a heart-breaking circumstance, their store of provisions visibly dwindled away, and consisted of nothing now but a certain number of rawbon'd cattle, which had much ado to keep pace with them, and were by no means a store for such a number of people; and the rather as it is not the custom, upon these occasions, to make any great provision of bread and the like; because the merchants want their cattle to carry their goods, and because it would be too great an expense to them to buy camels to carry provision for the rest.

All this being maturely weighed, and considering they had still a ten or twelve days journey to Argum, upon the frontiers, they began to think of shortening their allowance, and to survey their whole store in general, that they might be able to make an estimate of what each man might be allowed.

Upon the eighteenth of this month, after many dangers and almost insurmountable difficulties, they reached the river of Gan which they crossed, the waters being at that time very low, and on the other side they luckily met with good grafts. The Envoy resolved to stop here for three days to recover himself a little, after what he had gone through; and here he had paid even much longer, if the merchants, the Colacs, and the guides of the Caravan, who began to be in want of every thing, had not represented to him, the deplorable state they were miserably fallen into; that they were obliged to eat the blood of the cattle they killed, which they saved to make a kind of liver of it to serve them instead of bread, that some even fed upon the skins of the same, which they freed from the hair, and cutting them into pieces broiled them for their subsistence: In short that some there were that fed upon the entrails of the same, and that they must in the end be reduced to the frightful necessity of imitating the Caffres and the Hottentots, and eat raw flesh, excrements and all.

CHAP. XXVII.

Arrival at Nerzinskoi. Departure from that city. Arrival at Tobol, and afterwards at Moscow.

THE Envoy understanding that the neighbourhood of the river of Gan abounded with flags and rein-deer, detached some persons of his train, who were expert at the bow, to go in quest of them. They had the good luck to return laden with fifty rein-deer, which this Minister
1694. Nijfer caused to be distributed among the Caravan, who were ready to devour them, and had scarce patience enough to stay till they were dressed, to such a degree were they famishing; and indeed there is nothing so dreadful as hunger, nor any pleasure comparable to that of appeasing it, except it be that of quenching the thirst.

They go in quest of provisions.

However, the Minister sent a Gentleman, with eight Cofjacs, to the Governor of Argum to acquit him with their sad condition, and to desire that he would send them the provisions they wanted. The Governor failed not to comply with this request, but it required time to do it, and time was precious, for every minute seemed a year to people, who were on the brink to perish with famine.

An intolerable famine.

In the midst of this, it was resolved to leave the banks of the Gan, and to advance as far as they could. But at the end of three days they fell into a deeper degree of famine than ever, the rein-deer abovementioned not proving sufficient to subsist such a number for so long a time, in a horrid desert where nothing was to be found. But they were now to make a virtue of necessity, and to bear with patience an evil which could not be removed. At length, exhausted by toil and hunger, they came to a small river which flowed from the mountains, and which abounded with trouts and pike, which in that country they shoot with arrows. The Cofjacs and the Tungusers, in the Envoy's train, took a great quantity of them, which, together with some rein-deer, which they caught in the evening, served to moderate the hunger which oppressed the whole Caravan.

A lucky fishing.

Those they had sent to hunt in the mountains there, met with a Shaman or magician who was uncle to the Envoy's guide, a Tunguser by nation, who have many of these magicians among them. The Envoy was at midnight awakened out of his sleep by a loud cry, which made him come out of his tent, to ask the watch whence it came? they told him it was his guide who was diverting himself with the Shaman his uncle; which raised his curiosity to that pitch, he had a mind to go into his hut, attended by one of the watch; and being at the door of it, he there discovered the Shaman and his guide deep in magic; and tho' they had almost finished their diabolical mystery when he arrived, he nevertheless took notice that the Shaman held an arrow, with the blunt end upon the ground, and the point at the tip of his nose. This magician got up a minute afterwards, and bauling out with a loud voice, and jumping several times round, lie at length sunk into a sleep. The next day, the Cofjacs, the Envoy had sent out in quest of provisions, returned and told him this Shaman had met with his nephew, and had carried him off in their flight, a thing easily enough to be done amidst the shades of the night, and among mountains; without the help of magic. At the same time he had the agreeable news, that in three days time, he was to receive the relief he had requested from Argum, a piece of news which restored life to the Caravan, who was now in extreme want of all necessaries.

Accordingly this succour, by the Arrival of assistance of God, arrived upon the third day, and consisted of 25 oxen and cows, together with bread and oatmeal. But the sufferers who brought this store, laid hold on the opportunity to fleece the Caravan, obliging the merchants to give them a crown for a loaf, and in proportion for other things. Nor did they think themselves ill served, considering the circumstances they were in.

At length, having refreshed themselves a little, they continued their journey, and came to the end of the desert where they had suffered so much, meeting with more and more pittance the farther they got from it.

Upon the twenty seventh, they, with inexpressible joy, reached the banks of the Argum, which they crossed the next day, and upon the thirty first of March, happily arrived at
1694. at Nersinskoi, where they returned thanks to God who had been pleased to deliver them out of their disre- fers.

There they rested themselves, and upon the fifth of August departed thence by land, coasting it along the river, and upon the eighth came to Ulimskoi, where they met with vessels on which they embarked, and fell down with a fair wind, and by break of day were on the frontiers of Siberia. Upon the twelfth they arrived at Jakutskoi, whence, upon the seventeenth they departed for Jenisseiskoi, where they arrived after having escaped danger of being drowned in the floods, which had come down for several days.

Upon the twenty sixth, the Envoy continued his journey by land, and went through a wood which was almost 20 leagues in length, where there was plenty of game both of the fur and feather, which went off as soon as approached.

He afterwards came to the town of Makeiskoi, where he met with as many vessels as he wanted to carry him down the Keta, together with all his train, and upon the twenty eighth of September, arrived at the castle of Ketskoi upon the Oby. He happily fell down that river, and upon the sixteenth of October, arrived at the town of Samoreftskoi-jam, at the mouth of the Irissi. Here he flaid some days, waiting till he could use sledge to proceed on his journey by land, and upon the twenty ninth, he reached Tobol, where he stayed three weeks to refresh himself, and to provide himself with what was necessary for the remainder of his journey, which he heartily wished to see an end to.

Upon the twenty fourth of November, he went through the city of Wergator, without any accident by the way, and upon the first of January 1695, he happily arrived at Mofene, where he waited on the Czar, with an account of his negotiation, after a journey of near three years, during which he had undergone inexpressible hardships and difficulties.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Siberia in general. Many sorts of Samoëds. Description of Weygat's straits, illustrated by the Burgo-master Witten. The mountain of Poyas, &c.

Mr. Inbrants who has added what follows to the account of his journey to China, declares that he wholly applied himself to the pursuit of truth; without the addition of any thing to give it an air of the marvellous, or to set it off with embellishments, as the custom is with most travellers, who often relate great events upon a bare hear-say, without weighing the circumstances, and without knowing whether they be true or false. For the rest, he acknowledges he has not always followed the order of things, and that he has omitted several that it might be well worthy to mention, and even to be dilated on; for which he asks pardon, and leave to retouch and infist on them with a little more exactness, and more at length.

He, as we have seen, crossed Siberia and Dauria, and has described the cities, towns, countries, and rivers from north to east, that is, from Weygat's straits to the river of Amur, and from the west of the Offa quite to the country of the Mongals, and afterwards from the west quite to the south.
The frontiers of Siberia, says he, are every where provided with Russian troops, who do not so much as dream of subduing the Tartars in the southern parts of that country, or to make them subject to the Czar, because that Prince could reap no manner of benefit by it. The kingdom of Siberia, and the country about, is of very great extent, as appears by the map at the beginning of these travels: concerning which, particular regard must be had to the degrees, nor must the peruser be nice to a league more or less, in the distance of towns and rivers within the limits of this country; because, says he, the geographers and historians that have spoken of this country, never crossed it, and because it has never been measured with any accuracy. Upon the whole, he affirms us nothing has been wanting in him to attain this knowledge, and that, to this purpose, he made use of all the necessary instruments for the taking of observations, and that he afterwards ranged and fixed all the parts and places most regularly he could: concluding, that he with pleasure leaves it to others who may perform that journey after him, to reap the honour of more ample discoveries, thinking it enough for him that he has broke the ice, and that he was the first German that ever traversed those vast tracks quite to China, both going and coming.

He declares moreover, that he is obliged for his first instructions, towards forming a general map of this country, to Mr. Witgen, Burgo-master of Amsterdam, for whom he shall always retain, together with the whole body of the learned, a most extraordinary respect and veneration: that this Burgo-master was the first man that ever presented Europe with a general map of Siberia, and of the countries of the Kamtschak and Magalea, and many other people, quite to the famous wall of China, and in short, that this map was his guide when he travelled in those parts, and as a foundation for the map you see at the head of this work.

He begins to the northward, that is, at the country of the Samoieds and Wagules, which are under the jurisdiction of Siberia, and under the Waisodes of Pelan quite to the sea. Of these Samoieds there are several forts, of different languages, as those of Berefistiky and Puforje, who are reckoned as the same nation; those that inhabit the sea coast, to the east of the Obi, quite to Truchamskey or Mangazetiky, and those who are in the neighbourhood of Archangel upon the Donja, one part of the year, and in the winter under huts in the woods. These last are the aversion of those along the sea coast, which they have forlorn to come into those parts.

As for the Samoieds upon the coast of the northern sea, they have no more of mankind in them than the form, are almost quite void of understanding, and, upon the whole, look more like bears than men. Like wild beasts they feed upon the carcasses of horses, affes, dogs and cats; whales and seals that are driven on shore by the ice, and that, frequently without giving themselves the trouble of dressing their carriion, so idle they are and lazy, tho' the country they inhabit abounds with game, fish and cattle.

They have, nevertheless, certain chiefs among them, to whom they pay certain dues, which these afterwards send to the governors of places under the dominion of his Czarian Majesty. A person who had been some time at Pogloiser, informed this Minifter of the manner how they make use of their fleges drawn by rein-deer, which with an incredible pace traverse the mountains covered with snow. Here beneath you have a representation of a fledge with the deer harnessed thereto, as also of the Samoieds themselves, who drive them, covered with the skins of rein-deer, the fur outwards, and the bow and quiver upon their shoulder. Their chief have the like drawn, some by fix, and some by eight rein-deers, and have gowns of scarlet. The point of their arrows is made of the tooth of the narwhale, in the stead of...
of iron or steel. With regard to their persons it may be truly said they are hideous, and that there is nothing more disgusting upon the face of the earth. Their stature is short and lumpish; their shoulders and face are broad, their nose is flat, they have blubber lips hanging down, and a wide mouth, and ugly eyes. They are much weather-beaten, and have a great deal of hair, which hangs down upon their shoulders, some red, some fair, and mostly black; but they have little or no beard, and a very thick skin: they are however very nimble and dextrous in running or driving. The rein-deer they harness to their flegges, are not very unlike flags, their horns or branches are like theirs, with the neck of a dromadary; but what is most extraordinary of them, is that they are white in winter and grey in summer.

Their food, for the most part, is a moss which grows upon the ground in the woods.

For the rest, these Samedës are truly heathens, and morning and night worship the sun and the moon by a small inclination of the body, after the manner of the Persians. They have also idols hung to trees, near their cabbins, some of wood, of human form, and others clothed with iron, to which they pay certain honours. Their huts are covered with the bark of birch sewn together. When they remove them from one place to another, as they frequently do, in winter and summer, they fix the poles to one another, and then cover them with the bark of trees, leaving a hole at top for the smoke to go out at. Their fire place is in the midst of this hut, and they lie naked about it in the night, both men and
and women, and put their children into boxes or cradles, made in like manner of the barks of trees, and full of the raspings of wood, as soft as down, and cover them up with the skins of the rein-deer.

They marry without any regard to the proximity of blood, and buy their wives either in exchange for rein-deer, or for furs; and of wives they may have as many as they can maintain. When they divert themselves in company, they place themselves two and two, one before another, and making certain motions with their legs, they give themselves great slaps with the hand upon the soles of the feet. They make a noise like bears, and neigh like horses, instead of singing. They have also their magicians, who perform all sorts of diabolical practices, or cheats rather: but we have said enough of the Samoeds.

All the quadrupeds that are met with upon this coast, quite to Weggate's Straits and to Moscov, whether wolves, bears, foxes, rein-deer, and the like, are white as snow during the winter season; and the fame it is with some of the birds, as ducks, partridges, and some others. For the rest, the cold is there so excessive, the crows and such birds freeze as they fly, and fall down dead at your feet, a fact our author avers to have seen with his own eyes.

As for Weggate's Straits, of which the English, the Danes and the Dutch have given several accounts, after several efforts to go through the frozen channel of it, which they have never been able to do but once or twice, because of the impediments of the ice in those seas, no body has spoken so amply of it, and with so much knowledge, as Mr. Witwen, a Burgomaster of Amsterdam. And indeed he spared no pains to inform himself aright on this head, having to that purpose consulted with several persons who had been upon the Spot. This appears by the fine map he has given us of these straits, and its shores quite to the Oby, by which it appears, that sea is by no means navigable, from these Straits 1695, quite to the icy Cape, though even a second Christopher Columbus should undertake the voyage, seeing it is impossible to penetrate the mountains of ice that bar up the passage, notwithstanding the stars continue to point out the course you are to steer. The divine Author of nature has so inhorned and fortified the coasts of Siberia with ice, that there is no ship that can possibly reach the river of Tchuna, far from being able to double the icy Cape to go down to Tchinda or Tapan.

Mr. Ishants had been told by some Russians, who had often been through the Straits of Weggate, as far as the mouth of the river Oby, in certain vessels, to take Seals and the Narwhals, that when the wind comes from the offing, that whole coast is so crowded with ice, that those who happen to be there are obliged to shelter themselves in little gulfs, or small rivers, to avoid the danger, and there to ride, till a wind from the shore blows the ice off again to sea, which it does so effectually, that not the least of it is to be seen in those Straits for the distance of several leagues. That then they put out to sea again, with all possible dispatch, but take care how they quit the coast, till another gale from the sea reduces them to the necessity of running their Nove again into some gulf or place of safety, that their vessel may not be crushed or otherwise destroyed among the ice.

He lays also, that about fifty years before, certain Russians, who live in Siberia, obtained leave to provide themselves, in places situated on the coast, with the provisions they might want, as corn, flour, and the like, and in exchange for them to transport the productions of Siberia, by Weggate's Straits, in full liberty, in the same places, upon paying such duties as should be imposed by his CZarian Majesty. But that these people having abused this privilege, by conveying of several sorts goods by
1693. by other rivers in Russfia, to the great
damage of the revenues of his said
Majesty, it was forbidden to trade
any longer in those Straits, and
ordered that the said goods and
merchandise should come by Bere-
ford, the Kamensko, or the rocks
of Pojas. This however is very
difficult, and very inconvenient, be-
cause in going from Beresford they
are obliged to cut their little barks
or canoes, for they are hollowed out
of the trunk of a tree, into two,
and to draw them thus over the
mountains for several days; and
when they have reached the very
northernmost parts of the country,
they join them together again, and
proceed on their voyage to Arch-
angel, or to other places of Russfia
situated upon the Ob.

The Envoy also went to the Po-
jas, which is a rock, or rather a
chain of mountains of stone, which
begins at Petzerkai, and extends
without any discontinuation across
the country of Wergator, compre-
hending also that of Wolko; and from
thence to the south on the side of
the caille of Utka, quite to the
country of the Uffian Tartars, from
whence issues the river of the name
of Uffi, and to the east of those of
Nitra and of Tuma; the last of
which falls into the Kama to the
north-west. These mountains then
stretch away southward towards the
frontiers of the Calmes, and the 1693:
great river of Jatka, which abounds
in fish, comes out of it to the west-
ward, and goes and discharges itsel into the Cappian: The Tobol
also issues out of it to the north-
ward. They go on afterwards to
the eastward, along the country of
the Calmes and the frontiers of
Siberia, on one side of the two
lakes of Saifan and Kalkulan, from
the first of which issues the Oby,
and from the second the Iritis.
From this great lake of Kalkulan,
the Poja stretches away again to the
southward, from whence issues the
Jenfia, whose mouth is in the icy
sea of Tartary.

These mountains then form an
elbow, and afterwards divide into
eastwards into the north-east and south; to the north-
ward along the river of Jenfia, and
to the southward on one side of
the lake of Kasjogel, from whence
issues the Silinga, which difem-
bogues itself into that of Baitkal.
From thence this Pojas extends still
farther to the sandy desert of
the country of the Mongols, where
having penetrated a great way, it
again divides and stretches on to
the southward, quite to the great
wall of China, and then eastward
quite to the Sea, as may be seen in
the map of the travels of this
Minister.

CHAP. XXIX.

Tartars of Uffi and Baikir. Other boards. The towns of Tora
and of Tomdlhi, the county round about, &c. The Tung-
ugutes and the Burates, &c. Description of Dauria, of
the Korculi, and of other nations; of the Icy Cape; of
the town of Jakutskoi, and the like.

The inhabitants of the coun-
try which extends between
Penin and Wergator along the river
Zafanaya, quite to the country of
Uffi, are almost all Heathen. The
river of Kungur, in the neighbour-
hood of which are the Tartars of
Uffi, has its source in the coun-
try of Uffi, between the Sufuamaya
and Uffa, and goes on till it throws
itself into the Kama, upon which
is the town of Kungur, where his

Czarian
1695. Czarrian Majesty has a garrison.
These Tartars of Uffi and Baikir, 1695.
Their Tartars of Uffi and those of
Baikir, are in the country about
the town of Offa, scattered up and
down in Hamlets and villages,
built after the Russian manner, to
the westward, quite to the Kamix,
and along the Wolga, and stretches
almost quite to the cities of Sarat-
of and Sarapul, upon the left of
these rivers, where the Czar also
keeps garrisons to bridle the Tartars,
and receive his duties which are
paid in furs and honey. The go-
vernors of these places, however, are
obliged to be gentle with the inha-
bilants of these parts, for fear they
should revolt and withdraw them-
selves from the obedience they owe
that Prince.

There are also other boards of the
same Tartars to the south-west, and
in the kingdom of Afracan, who are
free from subjection, and join with
the Calmecs near them to scour the
country of Siberia. They never-
theless till the ground, and sow bar-
ley, oats and other grain, which they
carry home, after they have reaped
and threshed it in the field. They
have among them also the finest
honey in the world, and in very
great abundance. They commonly
dress in a Russian cloth, of a light
grey, after the manner of the pe-
asants of Muscovy. Their women
are commonly in their shifts from
the girdle upwards, except it be
very cold indeed, and their shifts
are striped and worked with filk
of all sorts of colours. As for the
rest, they wear petticoats after
the German fashion, and Slippers
which cover only the end of the foot
tied about the ankle. Their head-
dress consists of a ribbon,
four fingers broad, tied behind,
and wrought like their shift with
filk of various colours, and adorned
with coral and glass beads, which
hang about their eyes. Some of
them wear them higher upon the
forehead. When they go abroad
they cover this dress of their head
with a square handkerchief, wrought
with filk, and done round with fringe.

Vol. I.

These Tartars of Uffi and Baikir,
are brave and good horsemen, and
have no other arms than bows and
arrows, which they use with great
dexterity. They are robust; they
are tall of stature, with broad
shoulders and great beards, which
they suffer to grow. Their eye-
brows are so thick they cover their
eyes, and almost all the forehead.
They have a particular language
of their own, and understand that
of the Tartars of Afracan. As for
their religion, they are almost all
Heathens, but some of them are
Mohametans, which is what they
have had from the Crim Tartars,
with whom they have a very good
understanding. The Calmecs are be-
tween the springs of the Tobol and
the Oby, quite to the lake of
Ja. Lax fall
mustwa, which is all full of a rock
falt. Either from the town of To-
bol come yearly twenty or twenty-
five Cossacks, or Russian baris,
up the Irris, with a guard of 2500
men; and as this lake is at some
distance from this river, they travel
the rest of the way by land; they
cut this falt as it were ice upon
the borders of the lake, and then
carry it off to their vessels, not-
withstanding all the opposition of
the Calmecs, with whom they, up-
on these occasions, have frequently
very smart skirmishes.

As you go down the Irris, be-
dneath this lake, upon the little ri-
ver Tor, you meet with the town
of Tora, the last frontier place be-
longing to the Czar, bordering up-
on the dominions of a Calmec Prince
called Buxtan. The inhabitants
of this country are called Barabinis,
and it extends from the city of Tora,
to the eastward, quite to the Oby,
over against the river of Tom, and
the city of Tomskoi. They cross the
country of Barnabu, both winter and
summer, and especially in winter,
because in that season, the Oby is not
navigable by Sargut and Narum, so
that travellers are obliged to go by
Tomskoi and Jenmisko to go into Si-
beria. These Barabinis, who are a
kind of Calmecs, pay a tribute to
Mm his
1695. his Tsar, and to the Prince Bute-e-ban. They have three Chiefs or Taifs, who receive the duties imposed on them, and account with the Czar for the part that is due to him; the first at the town of Tor, the second at the castle of Telarza, and the third at the castle of Kolomba, the whole in furs. They are a mischievous and warlike people, who live in cabins in the woods, like the Tartars of Siberia. They make no use of flowers, but of chimneys or tubes, or pipes rather, by which they let out the smoke, and which they stop when the wood is burnt to a coal, to keep in the heat, and open them again when it is over.

Their houses.

They live in a kind of villages, under flight huts in summer, and in firm wooden cabins in winter. They have tillage in use with them, and they sow barley, oats, French wheat, and the like, but they have no rye; though they do not refuse the bread made of it when offered to them; indeed they only chew it with seeming disgust, and as it were against the Romach, and throw it away, or spit it out for the most part. Instead of bread, they take clean barley, which they parch in a hot iron pot, till it become as hard as a stone, and then eat it the same day. They make also flour of Sarina or roots of yellow lilies, of which they make a broth; and they drink a distilled liquor made of mare's milk, which they call Kusmis; and Karaza, which is a black kind of tea, which the Belgars bring them.

Their bread.

They have no other arms than bows and arrows, no more than the rest of the Tartars. Their cattle consists of horses, camels, cows, and sheep, but they have no hogs. In this country also they have all sorts of furs, that is, fables, squirrel-fur, ermines, foxes, and the like. It extends from Tor to quite to the Ob, and here you meet with no mountains; but it is full of cedars, birch, alders, and woods, divided by streams, whose water is clear as chryystal. These people, as well men as wo-

men, dress after the manner of the 1695. Cossacks, and they are allowed to have as many wives as they can afford to maintain. When they go out to hunt, they carry with them their Saitan, which is their idol, a wooden image coarsely cut out with a knife only, and covered with stuff of various colours, after the fashion of the women of Russia. This Saitan is shut up in a box, which they carry upon a particular pledge, and offer to it the first fruits of their chaffe without distinction.

When it happens that they have had good luck, they, upon their return, place this idol in the most conspicuous part of their cabin, in its box, and cover it over with the finest furs, in acknowledgment of the good it has procured them, and there leave them to rot, being persuaded they should be guilty of a sacrilege in taking them away, or applying them to any other purpose.

Beyond the Ob, you come to Tomskoi, a frontier place belonging to his Czar, it is a fine and large city, well fortified, and provided with a great garrison of Cossacks, to withstand the incursions and ravages of the Siberian Tartars. In the suburbs also, beyond the river, there are a great number of Cossack Tartars who pay homage and tribute to this Prince. This city stands upon the river of Tem, which rises in the country of the Cossacks. Here they drive a great trade with China, which is chiefly with Chinese, managed by the subjects of the Khan of Buchar, and by the Bucharis, among which we may reckon some Russian merchants. They perform the journey to China in three months, and come back again in the same time, but with inexplicable difficulty, because in some places it is even necessary to load the camels with wood and water. You must traverse the country of the Cossacks, and go to Kokozea, a city belonging to China without the wall. But it is impossible for the Russians and other strange nations to perform this journey, because the country swarms with rob-

bers,
1695, bers, who plunder all sorts of trave-
ellers, except they be well attended or
guarded.

As you go down the river from Tomukoi, the country is absolutely a
defart, quite to the town of Jamish-
koz, flat and full of copes. The
same it is between the two rivers of
Kia and Zulp, quite to the towns of
Kuiskoi and Krasnjar, where
the country is only inhabited upon
the borders, adjoining to those of
the Kurgi, under the dominion of
the Khan of Bajittu. The city of
Krasnjar is a fortress, with a good
garrison of Cossacks subject to his
Czarian Majesty, to withstand the
ravages and incursions of the Kurgi,
and accordingly in the great
market-place, before the Governor's
palace, there are always twenty troo-
pers well armed, and whole horses are
faddled day and night. For tho' the
Kurgis be at peace with the Siber-
anis, there is no great afires or depend-
ance upon this pacification, because
they frequently carry off by surprize,
both the inhabitants and horses, in
the neighbourhood of this town,
and in the villages round about. But
the Cossacks often make them pay
with exorbitant interest for the dam-
ages they are guilty of in this fraud-
ulent manner.

These Kurgis extend to the south-
eastward quite to the country of
the Mongales, a warlike and robust
nation, tall of stature, broad of face,
and very much like the Calmucis.
They are armed with bow and ar-
row, and never go out upon any ex-
pedition without fine coats of mail,
and good launcies, whose points they
trail almost upon the ground when
they are on horseback. They live for
the most part in the mountains, where
they are out of all danger of being
taken at unawares. Their language
differs but little from that of the Cal-
mucis, and they speak that also of the
Tartars of Crim, which the Turks
understand.

From Krasnjar, as you go down
the Kemha, quite to Jamishkoz, the
country is inhabited by Tungulees and
Burates. The castle of Illin is

upon the frontiers of the Mongales, 1695,
against the Paj, formerly mention-
ed, between Jamishkoz and the town
of Selenginsk. This place, thus
upon the frontiers of the Mongales,
is not large, but it is furnished with
a good garrison, confining almost all
of horse, to defend the western part
of the country of the Mongales, from
the Miroty, Mily, and Burates,
Tartars who are dependant thereon.
In the neighbourhood of this town,
there grows a kind of sandal-wood,
which is of an extraordinary degree
of hardnes. The Burates who are
under the protection of his Czarian
Majesty, lived formerly in the coun-
try about Selenginsk, but ever since
they have been guilty of joining with
the Mongales, at the instigation of the
Chinees, they have been trans-
planted into the country about the
lake of Baikal, in the mountains,
and there they pay their tribute to
this Prince, which consists of furs.

There is a mountain which ex-
tends from this town to the north-
ward, quite to the lake of Baikal,
where are also fine fables and other
furs. The country of the Mongales
contains the whole extent between
the lake of Kolgod to the eastward,
quite to the great defart; from thence,
quite to the lake of Mongales, called
Duvay, and to the country of Ar-
gum, and afterwards to the north-
westward quite to the rivers of Onon
and Sicks. They live under three
chiefs, who are brethren, the first
which is called Kuttug, and is
also the high-priest of his nation.
The second is called Aservoi-Sain-
Chon, and has a perfect good under-
standing with the first; but the third,
called Eisi, whole frontiers but up-
on the territories of the western Tart-
ars, is guilty of continual depreda-
tions and ravages, robs and plunders
quite to the great Chinees wall, with-
out ever sparing the presents which
the Emperor of China yearly lends
to the Tartars round about, to retain
them in their fidelity towards him.
The two others have thrown them-
selves under the protection of this
Prince, because they stand in fear of

2
1695, the Calmecs, and particularly of the Prince Bujucht-Chan, who did them a deal of mischief in the years 1688 and 1689. But we must now return to the frontiers belonging to his Czarian Majesty, and first to the castle of Argum, which stands to the west of the river of that name. It is defended by a Russian garrison, and the people round about are Komis Tungufes, and tributaries to his said Majesty. They are a warlike people, and in this place are able to bring four thousand men into the field, well mounted, and armed with bow and arrow. Nor dare the Mongols make any attempts upon them, but in the night and by stealth, to carry off their horses and cattle. In the winter they dress themselves in skins, or rather in the fleeces of sheep, and wear boots after the manner of the Chinefe. Their caps have a broad rim or border of fur, which they lift up and down according to the weather; they have a girdle armed with iron, four fingers in breadth, with an arrow that serves them for a flute. They go with the head bare and shaved in the summer, with only one lock behind as the custom is with the Chinefes, and wear a dreef of blue Chinefe cloth, quilted with cotton, but no shirt. To conclude, they have naturally little or no beard, faces rather broad than not, and are not very unlike the Calmecs.

When their stores of provisions begin to grow short, they go in bands to hunt the stag and the rein-deer, which they drive together and surround, and shoot a great number, which they divide among them, for it very seldom happens that they miss their aim. Their women dress much as the men do, and the only difference to be perceived is, that they have two tresses of hair which fall upon their breast on each side. Polygamy is lawful among them, provided they take no more wives than they can keep, and they buy them without troubling their heads whether they have been poissled by others or not. They believe there is a God in Heaven, and yet they pay him no divine honours, nor address any prayers to him. When they want to consult their Saitan or Magician to know whether they shall have success in a hunting match, or in any intended depredation, they go to him in the night beating upon a drum: And when they would recreate themselves, they make a kind of arrack of mares milk, which they leave to turn, and then distil at two or three repetitions, between two earthen pots closely stoppt up, with a little wooden-pipe, and this makes a good spirit, with which both men and women fuddle till they have lost their senses. Their wives and daughters mount a horse as well as the men, and like them appear armed with bow and arrow. Instead of bread they eat the roots of yellow lilies dry'd, and make a kind of broth of them when reduced to a meal or flour; but they profess nothing of tillage or culture. There, as well as elsewhere, they value those who are wealthy, who carry on a considerable trade with the Targsi and the Xini, who are under the dominion of China. This trade consists chiefly in an exchange of furs for blue cotton cloth, other sorts of cloths and tobacco. They pretend to be defended of these Targusi or the Aorfs, with whom they contract alliances, and live with as friends. Half a day's journey from the castle of Argum, in the mountains, you meet with a silver mine fallen in, and still see several melting-places which the people of Nieuwen and Dauria have formerly made use of. From hence quite to Nerjinsko the capital of Dauria, it is a ten days journey by land upon camels. It is a fine country divided into parcels by small rivers, where you meet with the finest plants, and the most beautiful flowers in the world; in the mountains and on the hills, and in the vales, you have grays three-foot high: But the country here lies uncultivated, being in the possession of Tartars, who are under the dominion of his Czarian Majesty.
Having travelled through the country of Argum, and crossed the great river of Amur, towards that of Gorbija, which is reckoned the common boundary of the dominions of his Czarian Majesty, and those of the Emperor of China, whose jurisdiction extends eastward from that river quite to the sea, and that of the Czar westward and northward, to the eastward of the Gorbija we met with the rivers of Tugur and Uda, which are to the northward of the Amur, and proceed till they discharge themselves into the Chinefe ocean, or the sea of Amur. They take a great many fables between these two rivers, whose borders are inhabited by Tungufes, Alemari, and Koreifi. It is likely these last are originally from Coela, which is not very far off, and whether it is possible to go in a few days with a fair wind. It is said they came first and settled upon the banks of the Amur, and that in process of time they extended their limits. Those who live upon the sea-coast, subsist by fishing, and those who are farther up in the country, by hunting, with which they intrench themselves, because here they have the finest furs in the whole world. This country is under the governor of Yakutskoi, who takes care to keep a good guard in the woods, to prevent the Chinese from sharing the fables that are there to be met with.

The inhabitants of the neighbouring islands come every year to the banks of these two rivers. They are people of a good mein and aspect, clothed in rich furs, under which they wear a felt vault after the Persian mode; large of stature, and with majestical beards. They come to buy women and maidens of the Siberian Tartars; for they love the sex, and in exchange for them, they give fables and black fox-skins, which according to their account, abound in their islands. They even endeavour to persuade the Tungufes of Siberia to come and trade among them, and give out that the country of Yakutskoi was formerly theirs, and in truth their language in some degree makes good this their pretention.

The river of Ogota is to the northward of these two rivers, and between them and the river of Uda are many whales upon the coast, and even quite to the frozen cape, where there is also narwhale and seals in abundance. The town of Kamfiskia, and all the coast beyond, is inhabited by the Xuksi and Keoliki, whose language differs from that of the rest. Those who live upon the coast are clothed in seal-skins, and live in holes under ground; but those who live farther up in the country are rich, and feed upon Venison and raw fish, and make use of their own water to wash themselves with. For the rest, these are by no means a people to be trusted, and have no fence either of law or honesty. Their only arms are flings, which they use with surprising power and dexterity. They have snow upon the ground for seven months of the year, and yet it falls only at the beginning of winter, nor is it there very deep. There is a gulf near Kamfiskia, where they take a prodigious quantity of the narwhale and other creatures of the sea.

As for the frozen cape, the farther it advances into the sea, the more it is cut and formed into islands and divided. There is a passage a little above Kamfiskia, where the narwhale fishermen find their labour turn to good account. One part of the inhabitants of Anadiskoi, and of Sabativa, are Xuksi and Keoliki; and the river of Salacia produces good herring, sturgeon, Sterbeth and Nebna. As you advance up into the country, you meet with several huts along the Sisamiko, inhabited by Cossacks, in subordination to his Czarian Majesty, and who there collect the duties the Tartars of those parts pay to that Prince: And as it is that part of all Sibera where they take the most fables and Luxus along the rivers, so it is the most heavily laden with duties. The climate of the frozen cape, which the Muscovites call Sweeteins or Holy Cape, is excessive.
1695. excessively cold, and it there freezes with such violence, that the iles of ice, driven by the winds, form high mountains there, which look like firm land. The wind however shatters them sometimes, and makes them fall to pieces, which joining with others that are floating upon the sea, they form new mountains again. It sometimes happens, that for two or three years together, this sea is frozen over, a remarkable instance of which was known from the year 1694, to the year 1697.

The Lena and the town of Jakutsko.

The great river of Lena rises to the southwetward near the lake of Batska, where Siberia is parted from Daouria. Upon this river you have the town of Jakutsko, from whence in summer there are vessels which go for the sea-coast and the openings of the cape of Sabatia, to Anadissoi, and to Kamtska, to get the narwhale, and whale-oil. The Tatars of those parts do for this purpose make use of small leathern barks with wonderful agility. The inhabitants in the neighbourhood of Jakutsko, and the river of Amur, are called Jakutes, and dress in a manner peculiar to themselves. Their coats are almost like those of the German fashion, and of furs of all sorts of colours sewed together, with a white border four fingers broad of hind-skin, and are open behind, and at the sides, but they wear no shirts. They wear long hair, and believe there is a God in heaven, who blesses them with life, food, wives and children. Besides this, they once a year celebrate a great festival, when they offer them Kunit and arack. They even abstain from drink during the time it lasts, and light up great fires, which they continually sprinkle on the caft-side with their liquors, in which confit their whole offering or sacrifice.

When one of them happens to dye, they bury his nearest relation with him; a custom not unlike that of some Indians, whose wives attend their husbands on the fatal pile, and burn with them, that they may not be separated from them in the next world.

Their language partakes of that spoken by the Mohomedan Tartars, who live in the territories of Obock, and are originally of the country of Bolgar. Polygamy is also lawful among them. They are chiefly drawn by ftrags, which they even ride upon, and travel with them a great deal of ground in a little time. They are a brave people, not destitute of genius, and fond of truth. And yet when it happens that the Governor of Jakutsko, in whose jurisdiction they are, does not keep a strict hand over them, they commit all sorts of disorders, and are continually scouring the country about; but when he keeps a heavy hand over them, they are obedient and peaceable, and are guilty of nothing amiss. On the contrary, they love him, and would be sorry to lose him. They pretend to be defended of the Mongales and the Kalmucks, and have been transplanted to the northward by the Russians. The scurry is a very common disease among them; but they easily cure themselves of it, by eating of raw fitch and Dungati, which is a kind of tar.

The Yukogates are another sort of Cossacks who live in that country, and have a custom very peculiar to them, with regard to their relations when they dye; they take off all the flesh, and drying the bones of the skeleton, they adorn it with coral and glass beads of all sorts of colours. They then carry it in procession about their cabins, and pay it the very same honours they pay to their idoles. The banks of the Lena abound with teeth of the Mammut, and other bones of that creature, which come out of the mountains and frozen grounds along the sides of that river, which are often torn away by ice. Many fine rivers from the southward come and fall into this. The chief are the Wittum, the Olekina, and the Maja, in the neighbourhood of which they have fine black tables, and other furs in abundance, and especially the grey fox, which, in winter, they buy of the Tartars, after the rate of
1695. a thousand for three or four rubles. The country watered by the Mejia produces also all sorts of grain, as well as the country towards the source of the Lena, and particularly that of Wergolenskoffo and of Kirenga, which are very fertile, and whence the country of Yakutsk supplies itself with necessaries for its support: And indeed, they do not give hare above ten pence or twelve pence for an hundred weight of rye: Cattle is as cheap in proportion, but then money is a great rarity there.

The coast between the Lena and the Jenifa, is un navigable quite to the river of Taraida, because it is always full of ice; but the country between the Taraida and Jenifa is inhabited by the Samoeds and heathen Tartar Tungusites, concerning whose manner of living and religion, we have declared ourselves already. As for the banks of the Jenifa which lies to the southward of Tartary, in the country of the Kalmucs and Kirigits, they are almost all occupied by Ruffians. Three fine rivers come here to discharge themselves, namely, the Wergnaja Tungushka, the Podkanemna Tungushka, and the Nishnaja Tungushka. The banks of these rivers are inhabited by a sort of wild Tungusites, not very different from the Samoeds, except that they are larger in stature, and more robust: They are a turbulent people, and love to be at war with their neighbours. When these Tartars go out to hunt the elk with bow and arrow in hand, the only weapons they make use of, and have shot one, they follow him by the track, sometimes eight or ten days together, with their wives and children; and as upon these occasions they never burden themselves with any sort of provision, depending wholly upon their game, they wear a girth, or kind of bodice, which they take in an inch or two every day; according as they find themselves pressed by hunger. At length, when they have laid hold on the elk they had been pursuing, they cut his throat, and spreading a light tent, they never stir a step from the place till they have eaten him up to the bone. Upon these occasions it happens sometimes that they take furs, which they fell in places where there are Ruffians. This country abounds in white and brown foxes, and squirrels, but cannot boast of any great number of foxes. The towns of Tungushes and Mangazes are not far from the Jenifa. They there drive a great trade by land with all sorts of furs, narabale and mammut's teeth. They even, from these two towns, send out several vessels to the mouth of the river, and upon the sea coasts to fish for narabale, and seal, whence they reap considerable advantage.

C H A P. XXX.

A continuation of the travels of Mr. Le Bruyn. His departure from Afracan. The course of the Wolga continued. Description of the Caspian sea. Situation of Derbent. Arrival in Persia.

1703. Upon the twelfth of July we embarked at Afracan to continue our way, and went to dine at the distance of three werfths from the town, at a place where the Arme- nian merchants had prepared a dinner for us, and where we diverte our selves for an hour, at the sound of several instrumants; after which we took leave of our friends. As we went down, we saw a great number of Tartar tents, which stretched up a good
1703. a good way into the country. At night we went to lye on shore under the guard of two soldiers, who had been granted to me. I there slept without thinking of my net to screen me from the flies, imagining I as yet stood in no need of it; but I was soon disturbed out of my sleep by the annoyance of these insects, who would allow me no rest. At day break we continued our course, the shore level and full of trees. About seven of the clock we saw the monastery of St. John, on our starboard side, and a little farther, an island in the river, and some great birds. At eleven of the clock we passed by a wear or place contrived to take fish, which looked very much like an island, opposite to which there was a Corps de guard, full of soldiers, who are there to keep an eye on the shipping that come up the river. This wear was formed by certain inhabitants of Nisima, who there salted the fish they caught, to send it home, and had a great vessel ready there for that purpose. The river runs somewhat narrow in some places hereabouts, because of the islands, around which it divides itself into several branches. A league from hence we came to another wear, surrounded about with reeds, and afterwards to another Corps de guard, upon an island where there are four small hills, about 60 wrefts from Aetracon. The river is here dammed or barracaded up, with an opening like a sluice to let shipping pass and repass. About two of the clock we steered away to the southward, having steer'd eastward hithero. At six in the evening we were 4 wrefts from the Caspian sea, which is 80 or 90 wrefts, that is, 17 German leagues from Aetracon. I there discharged my vessel and my soldiers, to whom I delivered a letter from the Governor. We that night, for the first time, lay in our ship, but I forgot not to cover my self with my net, without which the flies would have prevented me from sleeping a wink, as has already been observed. There have been even people that have died of the bite of these flies. A hound I 1703. had was so tormented by them, that he threw himself into the river, and we had much ado to get him again; after which I was obliged to take him under my net, where he slept quietly.

Upon the fourteenth, in the morning we held on our course by the help of our oars, the river being here narrow, and the sides full of reeds. We met with our lighter at a wreft from the Caspian sea, where we stopped. The pilot, however, went on before us to sound upon the banks, where he found no more than 5 palms of water; but as the wind was southerly, and blew up the river, it was known the water would rise very soon. He went to the same place again at five of the clock, and found it had accordingly risen 2 palms, so that our vessel drawing but little, we hoped we might be able to go over the sands in two or three hours time. In expectation of this, we threw our nets into the water, and caught a quantity of perch and some lobsters. I went afterwards on shore with a view to meet with some game, in a walk towards the sea, but I was soon obliged to return back to our vessels, because of the reeds which choked up the way, besides that it was marshy. However, I there met with butterflies of extraordinary beauty, being red without, and white mottled within. At nine at night they landed the lightest of the baggage belonging to the passengers, and every body went on shore except two or three that staid on board of the lighter. When we got to the mouth of the river, we found it very strait and narrow, the land running into it on each side in several places, besides that there are several banks of sand at the entrance into the sea, which are distinguished by branches of trees, instead of other sea-marks. At night we were obliged to come to, till the break of day on the fifteenth, when we got up our anchor to go over the sands, upon which we struck; but we soon got on float again by unlading some of our bales.
we struck upon them however a second time, and were obliged to make use of our lighter or tender, to carry the goods and all the people on shore. As we had a very fair wind at north, we were soon at sea, surrounded by land on all sides, with certain moun-
tains to the starboard of us. Upon the sixteenth, in the morning, the tender came up with our goods and our passengers; tho’ we had a bank of sand to go over, and a large island on the larboard-side, between us and the main sea. Having coasted along this island, we came up with this same sand, upon which again we had the misfortune to strike, but we soon got on foot again. Having got into the depth of a fathom and half, we took our goods and passengers out of the tender, and sent her back again to Afracan, with a letter I wrote to the governor.

About noon, we saw on one hand of us the four mountains which the Russians call Krańska-faffier-bogge, or the four red Mountains, whose farther point is 100 werfts from Afracan. We were soon out of sight of this land, and the wind being shifted into the southern board, we hauled away south-west, with very fair weather; but we were soon after obliged to drop anchor in a fathom and half of water, because the wind was come about easterly. Upon the seventeenth, in the morning, we got under way again with the wind at north, and flowd away to the southward. There fell some rain, after which, the sun having dispelled the clouds, there sprang up a fresh gale which laft till night, and raised a swell in the sea: Our patron or pilot being tired out, and defirous to repose himself a little, gave the helm to another, who would soon have carried us back again to Afracan, if it had not been for me, for I always carried my own compass about with me both by sea and land. The wind shifted about in the night, and fell all at once, so that we were obliged to let go an anchor in 8 fathom. Upon the eighteenth in the morning we got under sail again; 1703. it was rainy weather, and a calm came on, but a breeze springing up soon afterwards to the north-west, we steered away a southerly course. But coming on to be a brisk gale, every body was out of sorts with it, even to the seamen, and the soldiers who are obliged to help to work the vessel when occasion requires. Of these last we had twenty one on board, and about fifty pass-
fengers, most of them Armenians. Our vessel carried two small brass cannon, and might conveniently have been burthened with 250 bales, which I had reduced to 100, that we might have room enough, as has been said: she had three rudders, one after, and one on each side, which they use upon certain occasions. These vessels have nothing but a main-fall, which they double when the wind is fair, so that they are not at all proper to ply with to windward; besides that, they are not contrived to row. That day, in the afternoon, the pilot went to the helm again, but bearing too close upon the wind as the fall was trim-
ed, it came all into the wind; so that the vessel not feeling her helm, they were obliged to hand their fall: After which they made use of another helm to bring her about; then the fall was spread again, by which I perceived these people are not a whit better mariners than the Greeks. The wind continuing at north, we continued to steer the same course, and tho’ we were now far advanced into the sea, I found the water was still sweet and good to drink; but soon after it became salt, and greener, and the waves very short.

Having steered this course all night by a clear moon-light, we, upon the nineteenth, in the morning, to the westward of us, perceived one of the mountains of Persia, called Parnis. Samgael, and coasting it along south-

Sfamis gael, we about nine of the clock doubled our fall, with mountains continually on the side of us, together with woods,
woods, and a sandy beach. After a short calm, the wind sprung up at north-east, and we steered away south-east, continually coasting it along to double the outermost point of the peaked mountain distinguished by A, in the plate. This coast was a very dangerous one quite to Derbent, because of the Samgaels, who inhabit these mountains, and who plunder on all sides, so that there is no landing among them. They are Mohammedans, and lay hands on all the goods of such ships as have the misfortune to strike upon their coast, and think themselves under no obligation to account for them, but to their natural Prince.

About three of the clock the wind came about at east, just as we were at the point of the hill, and in sight of, and but a league from Derbent. The town We there came to an anchor, and at that distance it was that I drew the prospect you have in the plate marked with the letter B.

In the night we got again under sail, but the wind was but faint, and we made but little or no way, and at break of day, we were on the other side of the town. It stands upon the west on the sea-shore, and seemed to me to be about a league and an half in circumference. On the side of the sea, down hill, it is defended by a stone wall, and has three gates,
1703. of which only are opened. The citadel joins the town, on the right hand of which you see a well, with a subterraneous spring which rises up pretty high. This town is well provided with cannon, and as its situation is very lofty, it makes a considerable figure when beheld from the sea. Most of the stones of the citadel are 7 palms and an half in length, and 5 and an half in breadth, and are well wrought after the ancient manner; and indeed, the Persians will have it, that this city is as old as the days of Alexander. Not far off there are forty tomb-stones, about 15 palms in length, and 2 and an half in breadth; but they are not erected; besides several cisterns, a great table and benches of the same. The hill of Derbent is all of rock, and full of springs of fresh water, as well as the town itself. Those who have never been here before, are obliged to give the seamen something to drink, and this by an ancient custom, which if not complied with, they threaten the party to duck him in the water, and sometimes it so happens. This city is in the north-west of Afg, and of the kingdom of Persia, upon the frontiers of Georgia and of Zorilia, between the Caspian sea, and Mount Caucasian, where the passage is very narrow.

The pirates called Koératock are at a day's distance from Derbent, and the Russian Cossacks frequently leave their country, to cruise with them upon the Caspian, where they plunder all they meet with.

Dagistan. This country which borders upon Dagstan, a small province of Georgia and Zorilia, upon the Caspian sea, is about 40 leagues in extent. The inhabitants of it are Tartars, governed by their own Princes, between Mavouy and Persia, and their principal towns are Tarthu and Andry. It is but seldom taken notice of in our maps, tho' it be well known there are three or four Princes, the chief of which is him of Samgad, the 2d., the Crim Samgad; (3d.) him of Beki; the (4th.) Carabedagh, or the Prince of Carabedagh. 1703. The town of Tarhu is called also Tirk or Tarli, and by the Persians in Pirm.

Tarboz. It is open, and stands against a mountain upon the Caspian sea, to the east of Georgia, under the dominion of his Castrian Majesty, and about three days from Nisara-way.

About noon the wind chopped about to the north-east, and we soon lost sight of Derbent, steering away south-east. Upon this coast we saw several trees, and hills at a distance up in the land. But the wind coming about to the south-east, about an hour afterward, we were obliged to let go an anchor half a league from the land, in a place where the shore was full of trees. Upon the twenty-first in the morning, we cleared our course again, coasting it along with very fair weather. About eight we had sight of the point of Nisara-way, and at noon came to an anchor; upon that coast, in 3 fathom and an half of water, and there met with fix other vessels that had left Afracan before us. At three in the afternoon I landed with all my clothes, and this was the very first time I ever set foot on Persian ground.

The Caspian sea is about 100 Sitavim leagues in length from Afracan to the Calvin Forchabad (a passage which is Perim) formed with oars, without the help of any wind in fourteen or fifteen days time) and about 90 in breadth from Chorowam to the coasts of Circaflia or Shirwan. It neither rises nor falls, and when it happens to overflow its banks, it is owing to the wind only. They pretend that in and about the middle, and before the town of Derbent, it is bottomless; in other parts of it they strike the bottom with about 30 or 40 fathom of line. The water of it is salt, as has already been said, and the refreshments of that upon the coasts is owing to the rivers that fall into it. For the reft, it has no manner of communication with the other seas, being surrounded all about with lands and very high mountains. It is inconceivable to think what a number of
1703. of rivers fall into this sea; they make it rise to no less than one hundred; the chief of which are the Volga, the Cirus or Kur, and the Araxes; the two last of which unite before they reach this sea, and then fall in it together, having first brought away with them the waters of many others, as the Buthrouv, the Aksey, the Kaspi, the Kifstolen, the Laik, the Senus, the Nisor, the Oxus, the Arazant or Tanais, and the rest. This sea was formerly called the sea of Hyrcania, and the sea of Baebu. The Persians call it the sea of Koljum, and the sea of Afirakan: The Russians call it the sea of Guilensko, or of Gevailensko: The Georgians, Sgoa, and the Armenians call it Soof. Those who chiefly navigate this sea are the Russians and Turks. Tho' the Czar of Muscovy has sent several vessels for that purpose to Afirakan, under the convoy of one captain Meyer, who has been already mentioned, the merchants chose rather to freight the ordinary Russian vessels, for the transportation of their goods from place to place, because they are not so subject to leak; for otherwise they would be much fitter for the purpose, and would perform the voyage twice as soon, if due care were taken. But they labour under another defect, which is, that they are not so flat bottom'd as the common imbarcations upon that sea, and therefore cannot borrow so near upon the coasts of Persia and Nisawhey, where the others are sometimes obliged to winter.

CHAP. XXXI.

Situation of the country of Nisawhey. A great storm. Arrival at Samasbi.

There are neither villages nor houset to be met with upon the coast of Nisawhey, which is low; so that travellers are obliged to pitch tents there, or to go farther up into the country, just as they think most proper, and according to the stay they are to make in those parts. The Arabs repair hither with camels and horses, to meet travellers, and carry them to Samasbi; and as there happened to be several ships in the port when we arrived, there was a great crowd of us. Upon the twenty-second in the morning, we threw our nets into a small river, which empties itself into the sea at half a league from thence by two openings; but we caught no great matter, tho' at certain times it be full of fish. This river is called the Nisawhey, and communicates its name to this country; its spring is in the mountains.

Upon the twenty-third, the wind being at south-east, there failed five vessels for Afirakan. On board of these vessels several Armenian merchants embarked with their goods, and I failed not to take this opportunity of writing to my friends both there and at Muscovy.

Those who are concerned in carrying away the goods and merchandize brought by shipping upon this coast, are either Arabs or Turks, who in summer live under tents, and in winter, in villages a good distance from the coast.

Upon the twenty-fourth, there went away several camels, laden with goods, with some Russian merchants who had travelled with us from Moscow to Afirakan. The same day an Arab there robbed.
1703. there came to us an Arab, who had been stripped of his horse, and some rice he was bringing to sell, by three robbers, who upon this notice given, were immediately pursed by ten or twelve persons, but to no manner of purpose.

About noon, there came on a great storm, which raised so great a dust between the beach and the downs, that there was no knowing where to go for shelter. Tho’ we had a pretty large tent, supported by two good poles, and well flaked down to the ground, I withdrew from thence to the sea side, where the dust was not so great, because the sand there was wet; not to say I was afraid the wind would blow away our tent: And indeed the thing happened as I had dreaded, and we were glad to cover our goods and baggage with it, by tying and fixing it down the best we could, and as the air was all full of a thick cloud of sand, every one of us endeavoured to get under shelter, some behind a shattered vessel that had suffered shipwreck, and others within her, a sad and dolorous sight! This storm continued till night, when we got up our tent again, and with labour and pains recovered our bales which had been buried under the sand.

Upon the twenty-fifth, certain merchants who had been twelve days upon this coast, departed hence for Sanaجب, attended by very fine weather; but we were obliged to wait for the officer of the customs, to whom we were to pay the ordinary duties before we stirred from thence. These duties amount to forty-five pence per bale, every bale four hundred weight, the usual load of an horse. That day the storm came again with such fury, that it was all we could do to keep our legs upon the shore, and this drove us to the side of the downs, three hundred paces from the sea, where we passed our night. And here we fell in with the crew of a vessel belonging to his Czarian Majesty, who had retired under some huts. Among them were two Germans and a Swedeb.

prisoner, who made me a present of two birds which the Muscovites call Karasovyeke, and which are not very unlike to young herons, except that their plumage is black, or of a very deep blue. As these gentlemen came to see me every day, they also brought me a white Crane of extraordinary size and beauty.

The storm lasted all night, and the officer of the customs, who arrived upon the twenty-sixth, permitted us to depart, as soon as he had searched what we had. The next day we went away with above one hundred camels, ten horses, and three asses, skirting it along the sea side, whose shores we found to be in the same shattered state, as where we had suffered so much inconvenience. We crossed the four small rivers of Sanaefia, Balbulla, Bubolaetbia, and Mordova, proceeding on to the southward. Upon this shore they have large creatures with small heads, which they call sea dogs or seals, some of which are as big as horses, and whole skins make admirable covering for trunks. In the season when these creatures engender, there are thousands of them to be seen on the shores of Nisowacy. Having travelled four leagues, we went to rest ourselves in a plain beyond the Downs, half a league from the village of Mordov, inhabited by Arabians, who are in poor mud cabins, such as we have formerly described those of the Tartars to have been. Mordov, signifies a marsh, and indeed this village is very marshy, because of the waters which come down from the mountains; but it is owing to the same, that there is much rice here, and that it abounds with birds.

Upon the twenty-eighth, we continued our journey along the sea side, and travelled six leagues. Here we turned off from the sea, having at a small distance before us, the high mountains of Pefia. We there met with a spring of water, and some forry villages, consisting of a few mud houfes, inhabited, as they call them here, by Moors or Turks. The wea-

Vol. I
ther being very fine, these mountains and plains had a very charming effect. The Caspian sea affords little or no fish in these parts. There is, however, here a kind of carp, not very good indeed, and a kind of herring, not better worth.

Upon the twentieth, we went on, and in an hour's time entered the mountains, which are very lofty and very bare, full of rocks, without trees. There is even a great number of pebbles in the plains. Having travelled over the high and stony mountains of Barma, we halted at nine in the morning, upon a flat hill surrounded with others that are higher, and we met with a brook of good water in a deep valley. There shot a large bird that was black, grey and white, a fathom in extent from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other. It was a bird of prey, which they there call Tjallagan, and not very unlike a falcon. From his wings I drew good quills to write with.

The weather continuing fine, the wind was rather of the highest, we proceeded on our journey to the southward, and passed by several cabins inhabited by Arabians, at the foot, on the slope, and on the top of hills and mountains. Great numbers of them are in these parts to be met, with their wives, their children and their cattle. These parts are infested by robbers, which obliges travellers to be upon their guard, and to take care how they fall asleep. From time to time we fired off some pieces to let them know we were upon the watch, and ready prepared to defend ourselves; and yet one of these rogues was so bold as to come to reconnoitre us, but his temerity was rewarded with a sound cudgelling.

At midnight we moved on again, and in an hour's time we came among hills covered with trees. At break of day, we went through a narrow deep passage, where we were obliged to dismount and lead our horses by the bridle. When we had got down to the plain, we twice crossed the river of Astafaie, or the pater-inal River, which falls into the Caspian sea: Upon the top of a mountain, we found a great pond full of water, with a great number of birds, large and small, round about it; and afterwards a spring of admirable water, which comes out of a hill, and forms a small canal. This is a branch of the river we crossed twice the day before, which we crossed again a third time by fording it, there having been a great drought for two years before. About eight of the clock, we had on the left of us a great stone carvanera in ruins, and a place of burial near it, with many tombs of Arabians and Turks. We halted a little beyond this, by the side of a brook, in a plain, four leagues from a small place called Rasarat, where certain Arabians had pitched some tents. We were obliged to send for refreshments a league from thence.

At two in the morning, we moved on again, continually mounting on hills and going down the fame, and we crossed a river, which the Turks call Orofa, or the dry River; and indeed it was dry then and full of pebbles, and so it is in winter as well as in summer. Towards the morning we heard pheasants upon the hills, where are also hares and many springs of water. Upon the last day of the month, we halted in a great stony plain surrounded with rocks, where we found ten tents of Arabs who supplied us with milk, fresh butter, eggs, and pretty good water. We there killed a sheep which we had brought from Afracan, and feasted upon it.

At two in the morning we continued our way, amidst rocky mountains, and at break of day we discovered ourselves to be near a spring called Borbecleg, around which there were several Arabs under tents, in a place where every thing was burnt up by the heat of the sun, and the great droughts. This was upon the first day of August, and that day we went but three leagues, it being, in summer, impossible to travel with camels
1703. camels above five or six leagues in 24 hours; besides that it is necessary the Caravan should halt in places where there happens to be water. This is three leagues from Samachi, and as the mountains produce no wood, they are obliged to make use of camels dung for their firing, just as in Egypt.

At two in the morning, we moved on, and crossed the river of Sahandsha, where we found nothing but pebbles instead of water. As we drew near to Samachi, we passed by some fruit gardens. They made us stop at the custom-house that they might count our camels, which was soon done, and we went into the town. This was upon the second day of the month, and we went to take up our lodging in the Caravansera of the Armenians, where we were entertained by a merchant of that nation.

CHAP. XXXII.

Rejoicings on account of a royal robe. Description of Samachi. Ruins of a great fortress upon the mountain of Kata-Kulustahan.

When we arrived at Samachi, they told us the Khan or Governor of that city had just received a royal robe from the King his Master, whereupon he caused great publick rejoicings to be made for four days together.

It was so excessively hot when we arrived at this place, and no rain having fallen for the space of two or three years before, there happen'd to be a great scarcity of every thing, and they now sold a loaf for tenpence, which had never cost above twopence for a century before. Other provisions were dear in proportion, and they now sold a fowl for fivepence or sixpence which before was used to fetch not above threehalfpence.

They are very strict in examining all the goods that go through this city, for which purpose the officers of the customs come to the Caravansera, where they have an apartment; but they demand nothing for this visit, you only give them fifty pence for every camel loaded, whereas they formerly paid no more than a florin, but this is only with regard to the goods carried into Persia, and as the carriage is commonly by horses, the bales must be diminished by the half, a horse load not exceeding four hundred weight, whereas that of a camel is eight or nine hundred.

Upon the fifth of this month, at eight in the morning, the Khan repaired to a garden, a quarter of a league from the town, there to invest himself with the robe we just now mentioned. As great preparations had been made for this solemnity, I went with several others to have a sight of it. First there appeared a number of perfons on horseback, succeeded by ten camels, adorned with two little red standards to the right and left. Upon fix of these there were kettle-drums which the Persians call Tanhalpaes, of which four were of extraordinary size, pointed at bottom, which a drummer upon one of the camels struck from time to time. Four trumpeters floated at intervals on the way side to sound their Karamas or Trumpets, which are very long, wide at bottom, and according to my ear, make a very disagreeable noise. At some distance after these came four hautbois, which they call Karana-nafjer. The camels
mels were also followed by twenty musqueteers differently habited; some in green, some in purple, and some in grey, and after these came fix of the Khan's or Governor's menial servants; after these appeared their master himself upon a fine chestnut horse most beautifully caparisoned. This Nobleman, who was in a short kind of vest, and with a large turban on his head, after the Persian mode, was followed by four eunuchs, some tawny, others black, richly habited and well mounted. From these appeared the most considerable per- nages of the place, and a great num- ber of others on horseback; then nine led horses of the Khan's, sumptuous caparisoned, with each a small drum on the right side of the saddle. Most of the persons of distinction had the like, which from time to time they struck with their fingers. They were almost all of silver like those of the Khan. Besides all this, a great number of soldiers were ranged along the garden, on the right hand towards the mountains, and each of these soldiers had a feather in his cap, and in short, two horses, upon which were two men covered from head to foot with a gown quilted and wrought with all sorts of colours, representing monkeys; and as they were well broke to the tricks and play of that creature, they drew the eyes of every body upon them, and kept at the distance of twenty paces from each other, with musicians near them. When they had reached the garden, the Khan and the great men who had attended him, dismounted from their horses at the fore-gate, which was large and built of stone. He there robed himself with his royal vestment, and in half an hour mounting his horse again, he returned to the town in the same order he came out of it. This robe was pretty long, and of gold brocade, and upon his head he had a golden cap, in the nature of a crown. This cavalcade was attended by a great number of servants on horseback, who rode and pranced about on the sides of the procession, with a Kafjan, or smoking bottle in their right hand for the use of their ma- ters. These bottles are of glass, adorned with gold or silver at top, and extremely neat. Other of these servants had a little pot full of fire at the pummel of their saddles, for their masters to light their pipes by, but there was no tobacco smoked upon this occasion. Many of these great men diverted themselves on the way with darting the Ayruer, which is a kind of cane. Every body had run out of the town to see this cavalcade, some on foot, and others on horseback, a sight agreeable enough to the eye, because of the variety of objects: others came from the villages, of which the country about is full, from the tents of the Arabs, and from the gardens which are seen on all sides. The Khan be- fore he assumed his robe, covered himself with the gold cap just now mentioned, which was adorned with precious stones, closed at top, and carried at a small distance before him on horseback. They pretend that this cap represents the arms of the prophet Ali, who was wont to wear such an one. The Khan took it off when he put on his robe, and it was carried before him in going back, as it had been in coming. This cavalcade took up two hours. It rained in the evening, and it so continued to do till towards noon the next day. This made the ways so bad, that it was as much as the horses could do to get forward; but it was very fine weather from the seventeenth to the tenth of this month. We had, however, an earthquake, which did no damage, except that it obliged a great many people to go out and lie in the fields, for fear their houses should fall upon their heads.

Upon the eleventh, I drew a pro-
spect of the town from a hill to the southward, and from the place whence it makes the best figure, as it is to be seen in number 38. It is longer than it is broad, and as it is deficient of mosques, towers, or con- siderable buildings, I have only dis- flinguished
Corneilius Le Bruyn.

1703. distinguished the Khan's palace by the letter A; the Caravanfere of Circafia, which is on the east side of the town by the letter B; and a hill where are the ruins of an ancient fortrefs, by the letter C. It is to the northwest of the town, and we shall speak more amply of it hereafter, as well as of another, higher, which is to be seen on one side of it. This town is upon the slope of an hill; is about a league in circumference, and all open, the walls having been thrown down by an earthquake about five and thirty years ago. Tho there be here no remarkable building, there are, however, several molchs; but they are all small and low, so that they are not distinguishing from without the town. They call them Mussejft. There are two of them that have small domes, into which they enter by a court, and without any other ornament than a place raised up in a round form, and full of seats. The houses of this town are of the most ordinary fort, of stone and of earth, flat at top, poor and mean to look at, and low for the most part that you may reach the roofs of them with the hand. The chief of them are nevertheless neat enough within-side, and adorned with carpets, and such like things: the walls of them are plastered, and very white with some streaks of colour; some of these are even two stories high and raised at top. That of the Khan himself is upon an eminence, and yet makes no great figure from without. Here are also to be seen the ruins of a tolerably large molch, to which belong two or three forts of domes; which seem to have been formerly hand-som. This building is of stone well compacted together, the most ancient and finest in all the town, where are several other ruins to be seen scattered up and down. At the foot of the hill where the Khan keeps his court, there is a great market where they sell every sort of thing, and especially fruits. This is the quarter or district of the braziers, where there are, however, other shops, and a great number of cooks who have all great number of cooks who have all 1703. forts of victuals ready dressed. The bazars are at one of the ends of this market, and are also full of the shops of goldsmiths, shoemakers, saddlers, and so on. Some of them are covered with stone, and some with wood, and contain several streets. There you have coffee-houses, and all the caravanes, which have no prospect of the street, and where they go in by a great door. There is a score of them, whereof those belonging to the Indians, which are of stone and the finest of all, are twenty three or twenty four four foot high. Ours had forty rooms on the floor beneath, and was square. These are the places where they sell the principal sorts of goods; nor indeed are there any great shops of any sort in the bazars. This town is called by several names, some call it Samachi, others Sumachi, and the Persians themselves Schamachi. It is in about 40 degrees and 50 minutes of northern latitude, and is the capital of the province of Shirvan or Servan, part of the ancient Media, to the north-north-west of Persia; to the westward of the province of Gilan, and to the northward of that of I rak, and extends quite to the frontiers of Hyrcania. They pretend this city was built by a certain King of Persia called Shirvan Shah, twenty four leagues from the Caspian sea. The way over the mountains so turns and winds, that we were 24 hours in going over them, and fix days in performing the whole journey with camels; tho', indeed, it may be done in three on horseback. It is forty leagues from hence to Derbent, if you go over the mountains of Labati. The Khan governs here as a King; Extent of the Khan's government.

and has under him only a Kalantars, or burgo-master, who has no manner of authority, and has nothing to do but to prepare a lift of the subsidies the country is to furnish the Khan, who has a chancery, counsellors, and an arsenal in his palace, provided with some pieces of cannon; two of which are at the entrance, and are discharged upon publick re-joicings.
1703. joicing. He has a body of horse,
consisting of two thousand five hundred
men, three hundred of which serve him also
as a guard on foot, and attend him when he appears
abroad or goes out to hunt. The
Khan, who was in the sixth year of
his government, is a well made man,
and of a comely presence, tho' rather
too thin, and wears long muf
taches. He is called Allermedo-
dkhan, and bears the title of Begler
beg or Khan of other Khan. He is
a Georgian born, and a Christian,
and was formerly Gentleman of the
chamber to the King of Persia, to
whom his father, a Gentleman of a
good family, presented him, while
yet in his infancy, according to the
custom of Georgia. They say he is
of the ancient family of the Bergio-
desians, known before the birth of
Jesus Christ, and originally a Jew.

The Government of Samachi is
one of the most considerable in all
the Empire of Persia, and its gov-
nernors grow rich the easiest and
soonest of any, by reason of the great
subsidies they levy upon the country
round about, and especially upon
Gilan, which produce a deal of silk,
cotton, and saffron. The soil is na-
turally very fertile, and affords good
wines, both red and white, but the
white is so strong there is no drink-
ing it, but tempered with water. It
abounds with all sorts of fruits and par-
ticularly apples, pears, and cherries
of an exquisite flavour, and especial-
ly towards Georgia. In a word,
there is nothing wanting but people
to cultivate the soil. It produces al-
so great numbers of horses, cattle,
poultry, and all sorts of game, both
of the fur and feather, which are to
be bought at a very cheap rate, and
especially in winter. The bread
there is most admirably good.

The town of Baku, which has a
very fine port, has been lately for-
tified by the Persians, which was
owing to the misconduct of Captain
Meyer, whom we have mentioned
more than once before. He took it
into his head to demand free en-
trance into this port, for the ships
and

vessels of his Czarian Majesty, which
1703. gave such umbrage to the Persians, and
filled them with such a jealousy,
that they immediately resolved to
fortify this place. As the Muscovites
had, time out of mind, had free ad-
mission into this port, he was advis-
ed not to take so false a step, but the
advice was thrown away upon him.
Before this it had been an easy matter
to have seized it with an handful of
men, and with it to have seized on
the whole country quite to the Kur
River, and Axar, and to have secured it
by proper fortifications, as shall be
observed in the sequel; for the in-
habitants were in no condition to
have made a defence, and this had
proved a most advantageous article
to his Czarian Majesty.

This town of Baku stands in the Baku,
western part of Persia, in the country
of Shirwan, upon the Caspian sea,
and still prefers its ancient walls.
This part produces the best nut
sirup in the world, both brown and
white, the first of which is carried
into Gilan, and an hundred leagues
beyond into Persia, and the white
they send to all parts. They assured
me, that at the distance of two or
three leagues from that town, the
land burns continually, because of
the abundance of salt peter it is im-
pregnated with; and that 50 leagues
from Samachi, there is a city called
Ganja, which is four times as big as
Levant. In the former, full of fine stone build-
ings, mostly of two stories; handson
broad streets, noble bazars, and great
caravaners; that the Governor's
palace there is great and spacious;
that a fine river runs through the
town; that there also are many gar-
dens, good wines, fruits in abun-
dance. Fena, cyprexes and pines; so
that this city might justly be esteemed
ein of the most considerable in all
the Empire of Persia. All this was
confirmed to me by a French eccl,
siastic, who lives there, and by some
Georgians, who assured me, that in
Georgia, the Gurghidan of this day,
there are several rivers we know no-
thing of, as the Allefan, which crof-
nes the province of Ghoget; the Leg-


1703. **Le Bruyn.**

1703. *vix which runs on one side of the town of Cori or of Corri; the Kifanit, which runs by a great mouth called Schetta; the Simina which rises in Tarconman, near the town of Angbelska, and the Jurri, which springs from the mountain of Sirkies, which all fall into the Kar; besides many others that are not known to be distinguished by any names. In short, desirous to satisfy my curiosity with regard to the antiquities of the ancient and famous Media, I, upon the thirteenth of August, repaired to the mountain of Kala-kululaba, half a league to the north-west of this city. I stopped at the foot of this mountain to take a view of the remains of the wall and towers of an ancient fortress. There are some round ones still entire enough, and some foundations at a distance from the ruins of the wall, on the slope of the hill to the right hand between great stones, which appear above the ground as you go down. The same there were on the left hand towards the top, near the tower, and a greater than all the rest upon the very top of the hill. You have a representation of this in numb. 9. Then with a good deal of difficulty and danger, scramble up this steep hill, and was obliged to forbear several times in doing. Being arrived at the top of it, I found a subterraneous vault, where they defended seven or eight paces to the fourth, by a large arcade of great smooth and well-jointed stones, but it is sunk and full of rubbish. Opposite to this, towards the north-east, there is another arcade; this is entire, and the opening of it injects a horror when you look down it, because of its vast depth between the hills that surround it; nor is there any wall on that side, which is inaccessible. These two arcades by which you go into this vault are forty-four paces distant from each other. When you are got down into this vault, you, on the right hand meet with a passage pretty short and narrow, with a kind of window, which looks upon the rock of the mountain. Opposite to this, there is another entrance or passage, but very short, because this place which is to the east is at the extremity of the mountain. You go to the left hand, to the other side, which is on the west, under an arcade, in the manner of a gate way, but follow you must bend your self to go into a small apartment, from which you go on to another like it, by a small alley, and from that to a third, all the three vaulted. The wall from whence these vaults sprang, is five foot thick at the entrance, and eight farther on, and these apartments or these vaults are divided from each other by small passages. It was there so dark I dared not venture any farther, having but one person only with me, besides that the way to the last vault was full of stones and rubbish. I concluded, however, that most of these vaults must run through the mountain to the west and north-west, where it is of greatest extent. I observed also that the walls of the vaults of the passages, which are flat, were of the breadth of these passages, rested by the two ends upon the walls, and that all the stones there were well joined together and cemented, tho' not so neatly as those of the ancient buildings, and especially of the Roman, who excelled in that particular, and this is to be observed even in their publick ways, and remarkably so in what remains of that of Naples, called the *Via Appia*. Egypt also furnishes us with another example of the delicacy of the ancients in this respect, in the only one of the seven wonders of the world that subsists at this day, meaning the inner passage by which you go up to the famous pyramids of that country, of which I was the first that gave a description in the account of my first travels. These stones, which are of prodigious size, are so nicely joined together, that the joints are hardly discernible, besides they are polished like looking-glass, whereas those of the work I am speaking of, are far from being so.
When I came from out of these subterraneous vaults, I measured the breadth of the hill at top, and found it was fifty paces in the place where it was narrowest, and eighty to the north-west. Towards the middle of this mountain there is a great well, but I did not dare approach it near enough to look into it, for fear of falling in, for the brink of it was dangerous to all appearance: this is the only opening I found there. The towers wherewith the walls of the building, upon the hill, are flanked, are seventy or eighty paces distant from each other where they are nearest. This wall stretches much lower down about the mountain to the east, where I believe it is a good half league long. We went down much earlier than we got up, because as we came back, we hit upon the right way. In our way down we saw several ruins of great apartments between the wall below and the demolished fortress upon the top of the hill, the stones of which did but just appear above the surface of the ground; but there is no judging of the size of the building, but by that of the Arcades. When in our return we had reached the first wall, I drew the prospect you see in number 49, near a tower, which is still pretty entire, near some other ruins. Some writers have observed that these ruins are a mixture of stone and wood, but I there met with no such thing, and I am persuaded the stones are joined together with nothing but cement. The tradition is that this fortress was demolished by Tamerlan, tho' by the best information I could get, I would not vouch for the truth of the story.

In my return to the town, I saw a Turk dancing upon the rope, in the open fields. He was surrounded by a great number of spectators, the nearest of which gave what they thought fit to one of his companions who made the gathering, while he was doing his best to divert the company: but he was none of the most dextrous of his profession.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Remarkable ancient Sepulchres at Jediekombet upon the mountain of Pjedrakoes, and at Pyrramares. An horrible murder. Review of the Persian cavalry.

UPON the fourteenth, I went a way on horseback, from Samachi, attended by two persons, and some runners, in order to go to Jediekombet, that is, the seven Towers, where there are several ancient tombs. We went through several villages, mostly inhabited by Armenians, as we advanced westward towards the mountains, and at nine arrived at Kirkins, a village upon a fertile eminence, and covered with vineyards, which are for the support of the inhabitants. They have there a chappel built of stone, with the tomb of a saint, called Sabach War-tapeet. They say he was born a Turk and Mohammedan, and that having afterwards embraced their faith, he apply'd himself to close study that he became one of their priests; that after this, he had the misfortune to fall into the hands of the Mohammedan Turks, who burnt him at Samachi, and that rising again he came and rejoined them. There is another tomb upon the high road, half a league from this mountain or hill, with some characters, which I desired they would interpret to me; but they told me they were nothing but ornaments.
1703. That of the saint, who is buried upon the hill, is there held in great veneration; they there light up tapers upon their festival days, and eat beside him. As it was upon a Sunday I came there, I found a crowd of people, and they very obligingly invited me to dine there, but I excused myself, being desirous to go on farther. This village contains about two hundred families. There is a small altar in the middle of the chapel, where this tomb is, and it is surrounded by a small wall, on one side of which there is a walnut-tree, under whose shade they sit. In the same place there was formerly a small mound, which about thirty-five years ago, was thrown down by an earthquake, and instead of that they erected this chapel.

We left this village at half an hour after nine, and went over some fine hills to Jediekomhet, where we got an hour afterwards. I there found the ancient tombs I have mentioned, which are subterraneously built of hard stone, and neatly enough joined together; they were still most of them entire, and terminated in pyramids. The first I examined was the loftiest, and nearest to the mountain. The wall of the tower is five palms in thickness; the entrance six high and three broad; it is round within, and twelve foot in diameter. This tower is surrounded with a fine wall, whose front gate is fourteen foot and an half broad, and ten deep to the wicket through which you go in, five palms thick, and sixteen paces from corner to corner, or sixty-four paces in circumference. The wall is three palms thick, and the coping at top is in imitation of a camel's back, or an half oval. In this tower are five fine tombs, three on one side, and two on the other, which are adorned with foliage and other different things. These tombs are three palms high, two broad, and seven long, some more, others less. I left this, and went to the second tower. At the front gate in the porch of the wall, I found an elevation of three palms, an arcade of eight and an half broad at bottom, of eleven feet and an half deep, and seven foot high. Here you have three fine tombs. The wall of this tower is forty four foot long, and thirty three broad, and is not higher than the former which it nearly resembles. The left of these buildings which is the lowest, and goes downward, is surrounded with a wall which is seventy one foot broad, sixty six foot long, and nine foot high. The front gate which is fourteen foot and an half without, is twenty two broad, the arcade is eleven foot high, and fourteen deep; there is a wicket in the middle, which is two foot and an half broad, and five foot and an half high. You go there down by three steps, and having measured twelve paces, you come to a building which is thirty eight foot broad, and eighteen foot long, at the end of which there is another on the left hand, which is six foot as well in length as in breadth, upon which there is a tower. You go into this building by a small door, which is four foot, and four inches high, and two foot and an half broad, and corresponds with that in the front. The thickness of the wall of it is three foot, and going down two steps you come into a square apartment surrounded with stone benches one foot and an half high, and as much in breadth. This apartment or room is ten foot long and eleven foot broad, and the vault of it is twelve foot high. On the right hand you have a door made through the wall above the bench, through which, by going up a single step, you enter into a dark place, whose vault is lower than the former, tho' its other dimensions be larger, being thirteen foot long and ten broad. From hence through another door, opposite to the first, but smaller, you go up two steps, and come into a place, ten foot long and ten foot broad. Upon this it is, that the tower stands, which is hollow quite up to the point of the spire; and here you have on the right of you four small windows,
1703. two and two, one above the other, there found tapers sticking against the wall, and stones tumbled down, but perceived nothing like a tomb. We dined in that place, and there refreshed our wine with water from a fine spring over against and at a small distance from this building: It is very ancient, the water of it is admirable, and its source is from the mountains. Without the entrance of these monuments, concerning which the ancients have said so much, there are a great number of other tombs round about, some like these, and others of great common stones, and all without any characters and inscriptions, and only with some small ornaments to which I can give no name, except that some of them might be thought to be like bales. And indeed I am quite of opinion, they are no other than ornaments, which is what I have observed in many other places, and even in the royal sepulchres which are to be seen without the walls of Jerusalem.

To give a more distinct and perfect idea of these tombs, I have drawn one of them in particular on one side of the building, I have just now mentioned, near which there is a great tree, and others smaller, which come out of the tower, notwithstanding that the stones are still firm and intact, and tho' there is no opening or fissure to be seen. I have traced out the front gate, some tombs, and the melon garden, in numb. 4.1: and you will find the whole with the mountain in perspective in numb. 42: where nine towers are to be seen, notwithstanding the word Ἀρχιτάφιον signifies but seven, as has already been observed. There is a great number of young fig-trees against the walls within, which cover the tombs so thick, it is no easy matter to get sight of them. They hold them here to be very ancient, and have a report that Alexander spared them, because of their great antiquity.

About four in the afternoon, having satisfied my curiosity, I returned from thence, and, to the northward of these tombs, was surprized to see great heaps of stones, upon a fertile hill, where the soil was not at all given to be stony; from whence I concluded there must have formerly been a town or some fortres in this place, tho' no other vestiges seemed to be left of it: And I was afterwards informed by some people, of whom I made the inquiry, and they told me there had been a small one in times past, near the tombs; a thing very likely, for otherwise it would be difficult enough to comprehend for what reason they were erected in these mountains. Not far from thence we found a fine spring, and a little farther, several other tombs; among which there was one of extraordinary dimensions, but very much disfigured by the injuries it had received from time. Half a league from thence, we went back again through the village of Kirkos, inhabited by Armenians and Turks, and we got to the town about an hour before sunett, in the midst of a high wind, and so great a dust, that we had much ado to see before us: But there fell an heavy soaking rain the next day, attended with thunder, which entirely dissipated it.

Upon the eighteenth, I went up to the mountain of Pindaros, nearer in Pindaros, the town than that of Kala-kulflaban, and higher. Upon the top of this mountain, there is an open tomb, surrounded with great stones, which is full eighteen foot and an half long, and sixteen foot broad; together with several other ordinary tombs, a walnut-tree, and another great tree with small leaves: At the distance of twenty seven paces from hence, there is another tomb, which consists of a small round chappel. It is thirty three foot in circumference without, and ten foot diameter within; the wall of it is two foot ten inches thick, and there are stones here of four foot four inches long, and two foot and two inches broad. The entrance into it is five foot four inches high, with a flue. This small chappel is ten foot and an half high, exclusive of the needle or spire, and is surrounded
rounded with several other tombs. The wall of it is thick set with nails, to which they have fastned slips of various colours, and the like are to be seen in the former, being pieces torn from the garments of those who come here to perform their devotions, and who make these small offerings of acknowledgment to the saints who rest here, in hopes thereby to procure relief from such diseases as they may labour under. An Armenian servant I had with me, assured me he had experienced the efficacy of this means, but I gave as much ear to this, as I did to the story of the saint of theirs who arose from the dead.

In numb. 43, you see a representation of this small chappel, which is very much damaged and decay'd on the east-side, together with the hill of Kala-kuluftabou; and in numb. 44, the other side decay'd, with the open tomb I just now mentioned, and the town and mountain at a distance. In this small chappel, there is a great tomb adorned with foliages, such as it appears in the plate beneath, and forty paces farther, which is but seventeen paces from it, is like a grot hewn out of the solid rock of the mountain, and the entrance into it is so small, you must creep upon your belly to get in. Before this grotto there is a tree, upon the bark of which are the names of several...
1703. several persons cut out; and tombs round about, between which and the sepulchre upon the mountain there is the wall of a demolish'd building. This hill or mountain is also surrounded with tombs, except to the south-west where it is very steep. There are authors who affirm there is here a great subterraneous vault, into which you go down by several steps, and that therein are deposited the ashes of the daughter of a great King; but I made a fruitless search after it, and am persuaded it is no other than the little grot I have mentioned, and into which they had not the curiosity to go, to discover the truth of it; besides that the entrance into it is so small, I was obliged to undress myself in part to squeeze in. As to the rest, I have reason to believe the chief of the monuments hereabouts, is that of the small chappel which you see upon the hill. They moreover assured me, that most of the persons here inter'd, have been such as have left behind them the reputation of great sanctity, whence it is, that from time to time they come to visit these tombs. There is a small village at the foot of the mountain, and beyond that, to the north-east, a fine plain bordered with hills and mountains, and to the north-west the mountain of Kola-kuluflahan with some villages. The town which you see at a distance, and the country round about, have a very fine effect upon the eye. You have also, as you approach the town, a fine stone fountain or cistern, whose water is admirable, and a little beyond that, a spring which runs away thro' a subterraneous canal towards the mountains, and by another canal goes and discharges itself into the very town.

Upon the nineteenth, I prepared what I had, to send by the Caravan, which we followed some days afterwards. The next day I went to the village of Pyrmaraes, where there are two very famous tombs. In my way thither, I pass'd by a very fine spring, and crost several brooks up-on little stone bridges. Two leagues from the town, I saw one that seemed to be ancient, consisting of three ruined arches built of great blocks of stone, under which there ran a very clear stream. I saw several others under which there ran no water at all.

The town of Samaebi makes a considerable figure, when beheld from the hills, upon which there are several burying-grounds, and some pretty large tombs. About noon I got to Pyrmaraes, which is a large village built of stone and earth: it is about four leagues to the eastward of the town, in a great plain, as you go towards the mountains on the left hand. You there see the tomb of Seid Ibrabim, a certain saint, in great reputation over all this country. The place where he is deposited has a good deal the look of a fortress, and is encompassed with a wretched fort of a wall. Within side we found a stable where we put up our horses. Immediately there came a servant to invite me to his master's apartment, who had the care and charge of this place. He received me very obligingly, and asked me from whence I came, and what had brought me thither? Having answered him that I was moved thereto by curiosity, he very politely offered to wait on me himself, and shew me all the places that were worth the seeing.

There is a pretty large square before this building, to the right hand of which, as you go in, this officer has a spacious apartment, the floor of which was covered with carpets: from thence you go, on the left hand, into the court of this building, which is spacious and well executed, and afterwards into a second where are several tombs, upon which are Turkish characters and ornaments. You then come to the sepulchre of the saint himself, which is shut up with a wooden door, thro' which you go into a small vault, where there is a coffin, and from thence into a pretty apartment which receives light from three sides above, and is covered
1703, covered with carpets, striped stuffs and mats; here you must pull off your shoes, that you may not spoil this furniture. You then go thro' a small door, on the right hand of the first vault, into three apartments, in the first of which there are three coffins, five in the second, which is on the right, and in the middle of the third, which is on the left, that of the saint himself, covered with a great green cloth or pall. The portals of this building are about thirty fix foot high, and some fathoms in depth; and you go up by twelve steps, each of one stone. The top is not vaulted, and the wall, in its upper part, looks like a fortress, having at each angle a kind of garret. This building is forty paces long to the right, and thirty one in breadth. Over the tomb there is a small opening covered with a stone, and over the gate there are many Arabian characters, hewn out in the stone, and others traced out in black upon the walls which are white. At the distance of twenty paces from this building, you go down fifteen vaulted steps, and afterwards, down ten others contiguous thereto, and the light of which are not vaulted, from whence you go into a subterranean, which is thirty three paces in length, and nine in breadth, and which is vaulted from one end to the other, and is full thirty fix foot in height. The stones of this vault are fine, large, and well compacted or joined, but the platter they were formerly covered with is almost all fallen down by the length of time. I fancy this subterranean was formerly designed to keep water in; and water comes in still, whenever it rains hard, by a subterranean canal which comes from the mountains in the neighbourhood, and runs through an hole made in the second step. This subterranean has two vents at top thro' which it receives light. At the entrance into this building there is a stone wall, and ten paces from thence there are twenty stone troughs which serve for watering of cattle. They are put together, and each of them consists of one stone, three foot and half long, and two and an half broad. You have here also several open wells, as well as in the village and the country round about, many of which are stopped up at the mouth. It is likely enough that they formerly served for aqueducts, and this seems to have been more probably the case, several of them conveying water under ground into these subterraneous vaults, there to be kept. This is what was common enough among the ancients, and I have seen the same myself at Alexandria, and in the neighbourhood of Naples. It was after this manner the ancient Medes preferred their water. The Persians were mightily pleased to see how exactly I surveyed everything; I then thanked the Gentleman who had charge of this monument, and desired him to give me somebody to carry me to the other, which he accordingly did in the most obliging manner in the world. In our way thither, we rode over a mountain; but we were obliged to alight from our horses to the eastward, where it was so very steep we were often under a necessit of laying hold on the rock to prevent our falling. It is upon the declivity of this rock that the tomb of Tiribbaba stands. You there go down three steps into a square as broad as the building, which is twenty eight foot in front, and looks upon the steepest part of the mountain. The frontispiece of it is of great beauty, and consists of large smoothed stones. There are two windows which penetrate three palms into the wall: That on the left is glazed in the middle, and has a stone lattice, which seems to be all of one piece; to this they have fastned several slips of various colours. The window on the right is of great stones, which are four palms and an half broad, and eight high, and you go up three steps to get to the portal, which is shut with a wooden gate. From thence you go into a small square apartment, with pretty niches on all sides, and a small dome;
The TRAVELS of

1703. dome; it is not above five foot in extent from one side to the other below. The wall on the right hand, as you go in, joins to the rock. On the left hand you go up by three steps, one of which is higher than the other two; by these you go up into an apartment which is fourteen foot long, and ten foot broad, with a vaulted roof about thirty six foot high. Opposite to the door there is a flight of fifteen steps, the first of which is high, the second broad, and the rest most of them of one stone only, and about thirteen inches thick. This flight of steps is two foot and an half broad, and leads up to an apartment adorned with eight notches, with a great window in front, and a wooden lattice, and a dome over head. This room is covered with mats, and has three doors. There are also two openings on the right hand, one of which is a great notch, shut in by a kind of window of wrought stone; and that on the left of this notch with a well wrought folding door, which, however, is but four foot high and two foot broad; so that you must bend yourself to go thro' it. You have also here a small grotto hewn out of the rock, against which this monument is built, and in the corner against the same rock, a small stone balustrade in a semi-circular form, of which the other half naturally comes out. This is the place where the saint is at rest upon his knees after their manner: this is what they lay themselves, to which they add, that he is covered with a white veil, dressed in grey, and in the posture which he was the most naturally used in his life-time, without being altered in the least. This is a favour obtained of heaven for him by St. Ibrahim who was his disciple. This apartment is fourteen foot square from side to side, and is very much adorned, having two small columns on one side of each notch to the right and left, with a step raised two foot. This which is before the window in the front is about three foot deep, and that where rests the Saint is still more. 1703. the height of the vault is about twenty one foot. From thence you go up a flight of twelve steps into a small apartment on the left hand, and on the right hand of you, you have four or five broken steps, and a little door thro' which you must creep upon your belly to get to the top of the building, which is crowned with a lofty dome, around which you may go by three places among the rocks. The passage of the first is two foot and an half, of the second two foot, and one before, where there was an opening to the front.

We then went down the mountain by a path more convenient than the first, and we went up another eminence over against the first, there to see the other tomb; but we there only found a bare wall without the least traces of any monuments, from whence that place borrows its name. It is surrounded with a poor square wall, from whence you see the fine tomb we have been describing, and of which you have the representation in the following plate. In the fence I came by, I observed several grottos hewn out of the rock.

About four in the afternoon, I went from Pernaraz, and it was about eight before I arrived at Sama-cbi. The next day the Armenians entertained me in one of there gardens without the town, where they drest their vi^tuals among the trees, of which there were several forts, and among the rest, willows of an extraordinary size, quince-trees, mulberry-trees, and others unknown with us, and which I shall dilate on hereafter.

As we were returning, the Armenians began to sing and play by the way, after the manner of their country, and even to drink to the sound of a drum; after which they went to visit some of their friends in the Caravanera, so that it was late before they returned home. Now it happen'd that four Armenians, who had been all this time left to take care of the houses, were murdered in their sleep by some
Some Persians: Whereupon two of the Armenians in our Caravanfira went to complain of it to a Persian Lord, who promised the villains should be punished according to their demerits, in case they were discovered.

Review of the Horse.

Upon the twenty sixth, there was a review of some Persian horse in the great court of the Khan's palace. This review had been partly made the evening before, and the rest was put off to the next day. It was performed by three hundred troopers at a time, armed complectly as for the field. Some had lances, bows and arrows, others had firearms, and some had bows and arrows only; indeed these last had canes with a button at the end, which they use with great dexterity. Under their veasts they had coats of mail and bracers, and little morions in form of caps upon their heads, with visors; and were perfectly well dressed after the Persian manner, and especially the officers, who had veests of gold and silver brocade. There were some of these Gentlemen who had six or seven led horses; and private men that had one, besides another the servant that led him rode upon, and another servant on foot. The Khan was seated at the end of the court upon a place raised up above the rest, and the horse was in small divisions at the other end, expect-
1703. ing to be called each by his name; upon which they advanced upon the gallop, by two and two, sometimes three and three, and sometimes four, up to the place where the Khan was seated, and having been inrolled, they filed off another way. The review being over, the trumpets sounded a retreat, and this was done in two hours time, and sure it was a sight well worth the seeing. They went thro' some motions or parts of exercise with a very peculiar grace; tho' indeed there were some who were not so exact and adroit as the rest, either from want of experience in themselves, or use in their horses. As to the rest, those who acquitted themselves the best, were rewarded with a certain prize, in presence of the chief Lords of the country who waited up the Khan, together with a great crowd of spectators. The pay of these troops is very considerable, and particularly the pay of the officers. Every private trooper has yearly five or six hundred florins each, and they augment their pay in proportion, as they deserve it by extraordinary services in times of action; besides that it is no unusual thing to make them presents. The sons of these cavaliers are paid allo as such; tho' indeed they are obliged to furnish a man at their own expense, in times of war, when they happen to be under age. At this review there were children on horseback that were not above eight or ten years old, with a servant at the side of them.

I took my leave that day to go and join the Caravan, which was upon the very point of setting forward. My companion Jacob, "John de David" took another road, that he might go through some trading towns where he had business, and the two other Armenians promised to follow me in a day or two. I met with some fertile grounds in the mountains to the southward of the town, some springs and hoffes, and at sunset I came up with the Caravan beyond the village of Nagdi. The next day I went to take an airing upon the top of a mountain, from whence I descended to a beautiful plain we were to cross, and at the foot of the mountain I took notice of some fine running springs of admirable water. One of the guides of the Caravan came to us in the evening to let us know that it would move very early the next morning. As we went over the mountains, I for the first time saw pomegranate trees in the village of Langibus, as well as other fruit trees, and a vine loaded with grapes; its stem was short and thick, and not above an ell higher than the ground, a thing I had never before seen in my life. I there also saw a plant in blossom, from the roots of which there came out filaments a fathom long, and stretching along the surface; its fruit was as yet green, and looked like little cucumbers. When it is ripe, it is of a purple without, and a fine red within; many of them grow upon one plant. I drew one of them with its fruit, which the Turks call Tje-beer, and others Kuvrack; it is distinguished in the following plate by the letter A. In this same place I found another sort, whose fruit is red, and has small cots or blad-
bladders: It grows like the other, many upon a plant, which is higher by a foot and an half or two foot. This fruit is called Doosjandemage, and is of the size of those distinguished by the letter B. After we had travelled over the mountains of Derbent, we came down into the fine plain, as mentioned just now, and extends beyond the reach of the sight; but it was all parched up by the heat of the sun, and the great droughts. The inhabitants of the country call it Kraegh. When you are at the end of the mountains, you have an imperfect sight of the Kur. About ten in the morning, when we had travelled two leagues and an half, we halted in this plain; and there we laid that day, and the next, and had very fair weather. We there had Turks and Arabians in cabbin, or huts built of straw, who furnished us with milk, melons, and the like; but as there was no such thing as wood here, we were obliged to make fires of the camels dung wherewith to dress our victuals. They always flop in such places where there is the best pasture for the camels and horses. But the most inconvenient circumstance there is that the water is all foul, so that it must be left to settle some time, an hour or two, or so, to fine, which is quite terrible, when in the midst of these great heats, a man is ready to chock with thirst; nor is it possible to take with one a sufficient stock of wine, because of

Tt
the great number of bales a Caravan is incumbered with; so that in this cafe a man is obliged to make a virtue of necessity, and to take up with curdled milk, which they there call Towerti, and which they put into a cloth bag, through which the whey runs off. They then, to quench thirst, mix these curds with water, a practice very common with the Turks; so that you have both meat and drink at once. It is easily kept, and serves instead of cream, when mixed with sugar. We did not leave this plain till the thirtieth in the evening, and traveled away to the southward across this plain. We met with another Caravan, and some Turks under tents. At break of day, we got to the village of Sogawad, to the westward of the Kur, upon an eminence, on the banks of which we halted. This village is of great extent, and contains a great number of gardens full of white mulberry-trees and melons. The next day I went half a league to the confluent of the Cyrus and Araxes, famous rivers, now called the Kur and Aras. I observed in this place that the Aras came from the south, whence it derives its source in the mountains of Alagron, and the Kur from the north of Tolstoi, where it runs by the town of that name. Having united their waters together, they go away towards the north-east, beyond Sogawad, from thence they continue their course east, and go winding away till they are lost in the Caspian. For the rest, it would be no easy task to trace out their intricate meanders. I drew as well as I could the place where these two rivers meet, as you may see in numb. 45, where they divide the country of Mogun from Media, or Shirwan. The Araxes is distinguished by A, the Kur by B, and their united streams by C.

We sent our bales over to the other side in several boats to the village, where we had halted, and our horses and camels swam over, which amounted to a two days work. As the waters were very low at that 1703 time, the bottom of the river was to be seen in several places, and a great bank of sand in the middle, on the side of which, however, it was very deep, and where the camels were obliged to swim over. When the waters are low here, they commonly make a bridge of boats, made fast together by a large iron chain, which they cast off when the river swells and widens; but it was not yet ready. On the other side there are two or three small houses made of reed, where they wind off silk. I had the curiosity to go into them, and found that at this work they require not more than the assistance of one person at a time. There was, on the right hand going in, a stove which they heated from without, and in which there was a great caldron of almost boiling water, in which were the cuds of the worms. The person that wound off the silk fat upon this stove, on one side of the caldron, and with a small flick frequently removed the cuds; in this small cottage I also observed a large wheel of eight or nine palms in diameter, and which was fixed between two posts, which he turned with his foot as he sat upon the stove, just as we turn a spinning wheel; and before the stove there were two flicks, upon which there was a reed, round which turned two small pulleys which guide the flick from the cuds to this wheel. They assured me that this manner and method of winding off silk is the common one all over Persia; and confessed it must be that they this way do it with surprising ease and dispatch. The cuds, however, were not very large.

Most of the trees I observed hereabouts were young, and were very short, remitted, that they may always have leaves upon young branches, the worms not caring for the leaves of old wood. These gardens are surrounded with willows and alders, and are divided from each other by partitions of reed, as well as the houses, tho' there are some
1703. Some of them surrounded with earth: there was a row of them after this manner along the river side. You have the representation of this river and of the manner of carrying the goods over it in numb. 46. Provisions were there extremely cheap; a fowl was to be had for two-pence, a melon for a penny, and the rest in proportion.

Upon the second of September, there arrived a Caravan from Ardeuil; it had been ten days upon the road; and in the evening before another from Tébries, which had been a fortnight on its way hither. The two Armenian merchants I have mentioned, and a German I had, came and joined me here: this last, who was out of order, had fallen from his horse in the night, and had been left behind fainting in the plain for several hours. I sent some people in quest of him, but they returned without any tidings of the poor man, so that I was obliged to send back a second time after him when it was day; and these had the good luck to find him, and brought him on with them; and as the horse he rode upon all the time he was down, he had the good luck, into the bargain, to lose nothing; but his fall had so weakened him, that it was as much as ever he could do to keep pace with the Caravan.

This part of the country, which is low, is full of a pasture, which is a foot or two high, and which the Armenians call Poś, and the Turks Ooffiaen, which is most admirable for camels, who want nothing else when they can have that. Cows feed on it also, but horses will not touch it. Upon the third, the rest of our goods crossed the river, together with the beasts of burden, and we left two camels upon this occasion. The horses swam over, those in the boats holding them fast by ropes. We ourselves crossed it in the afternoon, and being now in the country of Mogan, I there a second time drew the course of the river, and the country of Shirwan, as you have it numb. 47. The village we have been speaking of, is so covered over with trees, that there is hardly any distinguishing the houses. The two other guides of the Caravan joined us the next day. In the mean time, I went to take a view of the two rivers on this side, and was above an hour before I could get to the Aras, the banks were so thick of brambles, reeds, and other lofty vegetables; besides that being attended by no body but my servant, I had not the good luck to find a beaten path, nor to meet with any body that could put us into one:

At last, however, we got to a sight of the river, and to some old empty houses, where we met with no foul. On the contrary, we were obstructed by a deep ditch, which obliged us to look out for another way to bring us nearer to the river, which after all we could not compass because of the height and steepness of the banks. From where we were, however, we had a distinct view of the two rivers, and I took notice that the Aras came a little higher from the South-west, and that it was much narrower in that place than the Kur, not being, at the utmost, as wide as I could judge, above forty or forty-five paces broad, whereas when joined together, they are above one hundred, and particularly near the village of Sgawod, which is in thirty nine degrees, fifty four minutes of northern latitude. I thought I should have met with a good deal of game here, but I saw none at all; there grows a good deal of liquorice here.

I came in again with the caravan at sun set, and at break of day we began to move after the camels, which were gone before. We travelled to the south westward, and left the Aras on our right hand, and we halted in a plain three leagues from thence, where we faw a small lake, which, in part, goes round a little hill, and stretches farther up into the country. This place is called Celfan, and is but half a league from the place where the Aras turns off to the right hand.
In this lake when the water which comes from the Aras is high, they take prodigious quantities of fish and tortoises, some of which we took were a foot in diameter, and some upon the shore. After the sun was set we held on our way, and had fix hundred camels in our caravan, and three hundred horses. In the night we crossed a very level country, full of a bitter and very lofty herb or plant, called Yassian; of so venomous a quality, that if cattle but lay their mouth to it, they die immediately, but great care is taken to prevent them from touching it: But the very worst of all is, that there is no water to be met with here for a stretch of twelve hours. We were all night in crossing this place, and at break of day we stopped by the side of a brook which comes out of the Aras to the west, and loves itself in the country a little farther. It was but three years that the Khan or governor of that country, who takes up his abode in these plains some months in summer, and in the winter refides at Arдавîl, had caused it to be dug. The Aras is but two leagues distant from it, and this brook is but five or six foot broad; the water of it is pretty good to drink, though somewhat foul by reason of the sand, but it fines when left to settle, and tastes well enough. On one side of this brook there are some houses, and some cabbins made of rufis, which have been here about three years. This place is called Ambaer, and is the only village in all these parts. I here met with a longish kind of water-melon, white and very sweet within, and different from all I had ever seen elsewhere: the seed of it is not black, like that of the rett, and is very small, and of a cheafnut colour. I here took notice also of a fruit they call Chamama, or Breast of a Woman, because it is in that shape; it is very wholesome, and of a very pleasant scent. It is not very unlike the white melons, but it is firmer, and nearly of the colour of the China orange; some of them are also of the same size, and the Armenians told me, they grow also at Isbaken, where they are in great request, and where they carry them in the hand by way of nosegay. Some of them are of the size of a small melon, and spotted with red, yellow and green; the seed of the is small and white; there are others which are all red. It is a grateful refreshment which abounds in this country, and which comes so cheap, that it does not cost you above an halfpenny or a penny. Other melons are there also very cheap, but they are not exquissit in their taste.

An hour before the setting of the sun, we proceeded upon our journey, travelling to the south eastward, and half a league from thence crossed a small river, five foot broad and eighteen inches deep. A horse laden with silt fell down here, the reit got safe over without any accident. In the night also we went over the plain or heath of Mobar, and upon the seventh, at two in the morning, we entered into mountains whose sands are as hard as gravel. An hour after sun rise we halted in a plain surrounded with hills and mountains, upon the banks of a river of clear water, called Bajfarusulvi, or Balava, whose spring is in the country of Talis, and whence it runs till it empties itself into the Calfian sea; but it does not abound much with water at present, being supplied but by two springs which come from the mountains: the Country round about bears the name of this river.

For a considerable time before there had been no caravans this way, because of the numbers of robbers, which infested these parts; but about three years ago the Khan's son offered the King to clear this country of robbers, upon pain of death, provided he would confer on him his father's government; the Prince hearkned to this, the new Khan repaired to his government, and acquired himself perfectly well of his
1703. his promise; for he cut them all off, neither sparing women or children, so that you now travel there without any danger.

Upon the eighth, an hour before break of day, we proceeded on our journey, and at three were got into a plain, beyond the mountains, and near a village called Sigomoeart, consisting of ten or twelve ruff cabbins, where we halted to wait for two camels which had strayed.

In the morning we met with several Persian peasants, together with their wives, their children, and their cattle; these people are in the mountains during the winter, and during summer in the plains; they had the evening before brought us down forage from the mountains, which seem to be green; they are rather sandy than rocky. In the night there fell a deal of wet, and the rain was attended with violent claps of thunder. Three hours before day, two Armenians and myself went on, but the night was so dark, we could hardly see before us, and upon observing, that the caravan did not follow us, we went back again to it, therewith to wait the appearance of day. As soon as ever it appeared, we moved on to the village of Barfand, on one side of which we halted in a plain incompanied round with high lands, and watered by the river we just now mentioned. As we were very wet, we would have dried ourselves in the village, but the cabbins were so thoroughly poor and wretched, that we were glad to go back again to our tents; though the village is tolerably large, and under the shelter of many trees. It rained so much all night, that our bales, which stood upon the ground, floated up on the water. The weather preventing us from moving forward, we returned a second time to the village, where we were obliged to change our quarters twice, not finding shelter from the rain, because of the opening these cabbins have at top, to let in the light. In short, we were obliged to dry our things by a fire made of cows and camels dung. Upon the eleventh of the month the weather changed for fair, and we sent our camels before us in the evening, and followed them three hours before day, with the weather tolerably clear and light, though we saw neither moon nor star. Half an hour afterwards we croffed the small river of Barfand, and the same we were forced to do fourteen or fifteen times together in the space of an hour. After this we went over some very high mountains, covered with snow, where we found it extremely cold, tho’ at the same time there fell a fort of a drizzling rain. The next day we got into the plains, near the village of Noerat, consisting of some cabbins and tents of Tartars. We there bought good fowls for three-pence a piece, and eggs for a penny a dozen; besides that, we had there good milk and good butter.

When we had travelled half a league farther, we halted between the mountains, in a fine level, upon the banks of the little river of Shiouf, whose waters are both clear and good. The hills and mountains there also are very pleasant, and full of villages. The weather grew better about noon; the sun diffused the clouds, and we moved on again at midnight, by a fine moon-light, over hill and dale. The next day we halted upon a fort of an eminence, five leagues from the place where we had passed the night, and two leagues from Ardevil, where we had sight of lofty mountains covered with snow. About nine at night we pushed on by a fine moon-light, which lasted not long, but was succeeded by a thick fog, which continued till morning, and made us straggle out of our way. Early in the morning however we got to the village of Adigarnello; we went over a bridge of six arches, under one of which runs the river of Gueroetsjote, or the Dry River. About ten in the morning, the caravan halted in the village, and we went on to the city, where we dismounted at the Armenian Caravanfira. The fog continued...
tinued till the fifteenth in the morn-
ing, and then it dispersed, and be-
cause we were to make some stay
at Ardevil, I sent for my baggage from the village.

CHAP. XXXV.

Sumptuous Mazzar, or Mausoleum, of Sefi, King of Persia.
Description of Ardevil. Fine tomb near Kelgeran. Depart-
ture from Ardevil. Arrival at Samgal.

As I was extremely impatient to have a sight of the magnific-
cent Mausoleum of Sefi and some other Kings of Persia, who are buried here, I shall speak of that before I begin to say anything of the city itself. These tombs then are near the Meyden, a square of pretty large extent; the entrance into them is spacious, and of a fine sort of architecture, vaulted over head, and the stones painted of various colours. You go in by a wooden gate, and enter into a fine long gallery, upon the top of the walls of which are several niches curiously painted with blue, green, yellow, and white, and at the end of this gallery you come to a door plated over with silver, which admits you into a magnificient apartment, on the right hand of which there is a great hall crowned with a dome, without any pillars to support it, like that of the Rotunda at Rome, but not so large. This hall, which is opposite to the library and a chapel, is covered with carpets; and on the left hand, opposite to the entrance of the dome, there is another lofty apartment, with great glass windows. From thence you go through another door plated over with silver, into a court which is nearly a square, and whose wall is about eighteen foot high, with three niches on each side, painted with blue and various other colours, and adorned with flowers and foliages in carved work. On the right hand of you, you have several tombs, with raised coffins, some of which are greatly ornamented, and others, on the left hand, divided by a small wall, where they say are the ashes of many Princes descended from the royal families of the country, against the wall of that of Sefi. To the right and left of this court there is an apartment raised three foot from the ground, and vaulted over head in the manner of domes. They are partitioned in the front by a wooden balustrade towards the court, and in one of the corners of this court, on the left hand, is a great folding door, with a balustrade covered over with silver, and with a chain of maffy silver. Here you must pull off your shoes to go in, nor presume to touch the sill, which is of white marble: The like there are to all the other apartments whose entrance is covered with mats. Here we found several Persians fitting to the right and left upon stone benches, and to these is committed the care of this sepulchre, and to these must you give a present of money before you go any farther. When it happens that the present you offer to them is not thought enough, they fail not to be so free as to tell you so, and sometimes demand five or six times as much; but when they find that the curious visitor is not in the humour to give them what they would have, and is about to put on his shoes to go back again, they begin to grow civil, and rather than take nothing, they accept of what you think fit to give them.
them. When you are got through
this door, you come into a small vaulted place in the manner of an
half dome; from thence you, on
the right hand, go through a door
adorned with a balustrade of gold,
or else of silver richly gilt, and
come into a magnificent room full
of candles or of lamps of gold and
silver, some of which are an ell in
circumference, and so many in num-
ber, that there is no counting them.
The floor here was covered with
carpetts, and on each hand full of
small reading desks, with large books
upon them. This room is fifty two
foot long, but thirty four broad:
The Mausoleum of Safi is at the
end of this place, raised upon three
steps, and the lamp which hangs
over it is of fine maffy gold, and
of the largest size. Beyond this you
see a balustrade which is also of
maffy gold, raised upon a step,
round, and of the thickness of an
inch, which is six foot and nine
inches long, exclusive of the fron-
ton of the door, and nine foot ten
inches high. This door has two
folds, through which you go into a
small round Chappeal, in the middle
of which you see the tomb of Safi,
made of marble and covered with
a magnifiques pall of gold brocade,
and crowned at each corner with a
great golden vase; and this chappeal
is full of silver lamps, intermixed
with others of gold. This tomb is
nine foot long, four foot broad, and
three foot high. There were two
before it, one of which was that of
a child, and two behind, five in all,
which are throfe of Safi himself, of
King Fedredin, a son of Safi's; of
King Tzenid, and of a son of Fedre-
din's, called Sultan Aider, who was
hied by the Turks, another of a
son of 'Tzenid's, and that of King
Aider. Every night they light up
the lamps about these tombs, and
two great tapers, which they put
into candlesticks of maffy gold.
Over this tomb there is a small
dome coverd over with gold, and
another on one side of it, incumbent
with blue and green glazed stones.
Some authors affirm, it is unlawful
for any layman, not excepting even
the King himself, to go in at the
golden door to get at the tomb of
Safi, but I experienced the contrary;
indeed I did but just step in, with-
out presuming to go any farther,
well aware of the veneration they
have for this place. For the reft
you must have money ready at every
step, though you have sufficiently
paid upon your first admission, you
must have your hand in your purse
at the door of every room. But to
do them justice, they answer very
civilly to the questions you ask
them, and never hurry you; on the
contrary, I thought it did not please
them a little, to obverse with what
accuracy I surveyed what they shew-
ed me.

At the entrance into this sumptu-
ous apartament, you have, on the
left of you, several small chambers
which are shut up, in which they
affured me there were other tombs
of Kings and Queens, among others,
Tombs of the Kings Ishmael, the fon of
Aider; of King Tamar, the fon of
Ishmael; of King Ishmael II. the
fon of Tamar; of King Mohammed Khoda-
bend, the fon of Ishmail; of Ishmail
Mirfà; of Hemfs Misfa, and of the
brothers of King Abbas, the fon of
Khodabend. These tombs are defcri-
tute of ornaments.

As you go out of the fine hall
of this building, you turn on the
right hand into a place which leads
to the kitchen, the door of which
also is plated over with silver; yet
this same kitchen, which is spacious
enough, does by no means corre-
spend with the magnificence of the
doors. In the midit of it there are
two great wells, and in the wall,
which is of a good height, there
are several holes filled with pots and
kettles, and beneath some large
stoves. Here they dress viettals for
Charity to
those who have the care and guard
of the sepulchre, besides that they
every night distribute Pible to some
hundreds of poor people.

Having thus satisfied my curio-
ry, I returned to the Meydan, to see
the King's gardens, which are di-
vided
1703. vided from each other by a wall on one side of the tombs. King Seif, there formerly took up his abode, in a stone building which is now falling into ruins. There are here still to be seen two apartments provided with chimneys, in which, they will have it, this Prince formerly resided; there are several others besides, and a small bath, but without any ornaments. The first garden, which is tolerably large, is ill kept and irregular, tho' well stored with fruits; but there are here neither flowers nor plants worth the notice; it is, in several places, watered by springs which cross it up and down. The second garden has no building in it, nor is it so large as the first, though the trees there are higher than in the former. Upon the whole, no body would ever have taken it for a royal garden.

Leaving this garden, I went to divert myself with fishing, in a small river which comes down from the mountains. I there met with a conduit or aqueduct for the conveyance of water; it was made of earth, and raised some feet above the ground, and on the top of it there was a gutter for the water to run in, and beneath, thro' a house, built on purpose to convey it to the town, where it serves to water the gardens. It falls like a torrent, beyond this house, into this small river which runs through the country. We caught only three or four small fish, which I preferred in spirits. The next day I rode out on horseback half a league to the southward of the town, to draw a prospect of it on that side; it was upon a hill I took my stand, the only place from whence I could have a view of it, because of the trees which every where else shade it; and indeed it is seen imperfectly enough even from thence. Mean time a shower of rain falling down upon me, I was obliged to return before I had been able to do any thing towards the completion of my design: Upon the way I saw an house where there is a water-mill for grinding of corn; the water that drives it falls from the top of the highest hills to the westward of the town; these hills are always covered with snow, and the water runs through a canal raised of earth for that purpose; this water falls with great violence beneath the house, and spreads itself over the flat country to the south-east, where the other conduit is, which I mentioned just now. These houses have a mill beneath, and two great millstones which continually turn upon a piece of hollow wood, where the corn goes through a wooden pipe under the millstone, and the flour comes out at the sides. The river runs near this house under a great and lofty bridge, of five arches, the lower part of which is paved with large stones.

Let us now proceed to speak of the situation of the city, which they of Ardevil, indifferently call Ardevil or Ardevil; and is in the north of Persia, and east of the province of Sestrwan in the ancient Media; to the south of the Caspian sea, and to the east of the town of Tauris. The buildings here are finer than those at Samach, though of the very same sort of materials. The Bazar here are also finer, and better covered; but they deal here very little in gold stuffs, or jewels, as they are pretend to have done formerly, and as they do in other places. They have here a great number of Mosches adorned with domes, the most considerable of which is that of Muszid, Muszid, or Masjat Adine, or that of Sunday; it is on the east side of the town, and within the wall of it; and being on a small eminence, is conspicuous at a distance off. It is divided into several parts where they perform their service; the chief of them is tolerably large and round, under a dome, which is raised upon a round wall somewhat low, which rises from the body of the building in the nature of a steeple. Before this Mosch there is a reserver or bason, supplied with water from the hills, whence it comes in pipes laid under

ground;
1703. ground; and this water serves to refresh those who in great numbers come here to perform their devotions: The rest are by no means so considerable as this. There are also many banaus, or bagnes in this town. For this, there are here but three or four large streets, where the chief shops are, the rest are not worth speaking of; the houses are flat at top, and nasty to look at. There are not here so many caravanseras as at Samachi: The Indians have three, tho' they are in no great numbers here; as for the Chinese, they have none at all, and indeed trade flags here very much. This town in many parts of it abounds with lofty alders and lindens, and the river runs on one side of it. The high-ways are there also planted with rows of young trees, which in time cannot fail to have a very pleasant effect. The finest place in and about this town is the Meydon, or square, where stands the Mausoleum of Sefi; to the right and left you have little houses inhabited by poor artificers. Most of the houses in this city, which are not in the Bazari, have the pleasure and convenience of gardens full of fruit trees; and there are some large spots in the out parts of the town, where the houses are at a distance from each other, which are full of trees. And hence it is that it is of a large extent, with a number of salient angles; so that it is much larger than Samachi, though it does not contain such a number of houses. It stands in the midst of a great plain, which is three good leagues in extent from one end to the other, and surrounded by lofty mountains, the highest of which, and upon which the snow continually lies, is called Sefulan, or Sehelabu, it is to the west, northwest of the town. That of Cabilan is to the east, or south-east. There is one the same at Derazis, called Saband, and a fourth not far from Hamdan, which they call Alvand, and which is the loftiest of them all: They are called the Brothers, because they have a resemblance of 1703.

In the midst of all this, I drew up a prospect of the town, from a small eminence, near the bridge I have before mentioned, which is on one side, to the south-west; you have it represented, in number 48, such as it is to be seen from without. The domes of the fepulchre of Sefi are distinguished by the letter A: There are but three of them to be seen; for the fourth, which is covered with gold, is not to be beheld from that place, because it is smaller and lower than the rest. The letter B distinguishes the great moat of Adine, and C, a bridge of eight arches, upon the river which crosses the plain. No more is to be seen, because of the height of the trees the town is surronded with. You have a representation of the bridge of five arches in number 49.

Upon the sixth of October, I went to the village of Keleran, which is a good half league to the northward of the town: You pass by the fepulchre of Sefi to go thither, from whence the way is full of alders and lindens on each side of a small river. This is the habitation of most of the Armenians, who have here two small and very dark churches.
1703. As you go out of the town you have a great road planted with trees on each side, which leads to a garden of the King’s, inclosed with a mud wall, tolerably large, tho’ as ill kept as those we have mentioned already. There are here, however, pretty good fruits, and especially apples, pears, and small plumbs; but the flowers are quite of the ordinary sorts. There is no over against this with a ruined building, full of various apartments. As you go into the village you see the tomb of Seid Tzeibrail, the father of Seif, where are also deposited the ashes of Seid Sala, the father of Tzeibrail; and those of Seid Kudbeddin, his grandfather. This tomb is in a garden surrounded with a mud wall with two great gates: That behind comes out to the road, and that in the front is in the village. Again, this tomb is square, indifferently lofty, and caved with small stones. At top there is a round tower, somewhat low, which supports a green dome, inlaid with gold and blue ornaments, surmounted with gold balls. There are six windows on each side of the walls, the highest of which are of exquisite workmanship, and painted and ornamented like the dome, and those beneath have an iron grate and shutters within. Beneath the cornith there are three small cavities adorned with variety of colours, and in the middle of the building behind, a wooden gate, with a step to ascend by. There is also above this door an ornament in form of an half vault, with three small windows. I found this door shut, and a fine portal to that in the front. As I could see no body about this sepulchre, I drew a representation thro’ the crevices of the gate, such as you see it in number 50. Near the front of this building, in the village, you see a bason on the level of the ground, which is sixteen feet broad, and fourteen feet long. You go up to the door of this building, by six steps, and you must pull off your shoes to go over the fill of it, as the ceremony is at the sepulchre of Seif, and most of those who pay 1703 a visit to this tomb kiss it. When you are come into the first apartment, which has a fine glass window aloft, and whose floor is covered with carpets, you see thro’ a second door, opposite to the first, this tomb raised six foot high, and in the midst of a fine apartment; it is made of wood, and the incahings are of gold, as they tell the story; the pall over it is of brocade, and above and before the door there are some lamps of gold and silver. They would not suffer me to sit beyond the door of the place where the tomb stands, though I took care to make particular observations upon all I saw there.

While I was busy in taking this view, my Armenian guide fell into a quarrel with the people of the place, who from words came to blows with him. I was sadly troubled at this, and did all I could to reconcile them, and prevent the ill consequences of such a disorder, well knowing the inhabitants of this place were proud and vindictive, and that the Governor of the province had been forty years in reducing them to a due sense of themselves, which he had not been able to effect, but by sending a part of them to Isbahan. They had formerly carried their brutality to that pitch, as even to force women from their husbands, whenever they pleased, not in the least caring who they murdered, if they offered to make head against their fury. At that time, not even the merchants were safe in their caravanserais from the inrits of this rude untractable mob: but the Khan who governs them at present, has found out a way to repress their insolence, tho’ he has but a guard of three hundred horse, without any foot.

Upon the second they carried the merchants goods to the village of Afdigarmote, where the guide of the caravan lived, who contrived matters so well, that he made us lose the very finest part of the feation. Upon the ninth, he resolved to depart,
We there halted in the plain, by the side of a small river which runs through it, and saw a number of fowls, which I killed a good number, together with two young wild ducks. The grounds about these villages are full of willows, alders, and fruit-trees. We here waited for the rest of our companions that were left behind, and in the mean time I drew the prospect you have in number 51.

Towards evening, the fog came upon us again, and continued till midnight, when we came among the highest mountains, with a fine moonlight. and upon the fifteenth in the morning, came to the village of Fattaba. At break of day the next morn we moved on again among the mountains. The two Armenian, my friends, who had been behind us, came and joined us this night; and upon the seventeenth, having travelled over many rocks, we halted among the mountains. That day we came up with our camels, which had gone before us, and half a league from thence we saw the famous mount Taurus, called by the inhabitants, Mount CAtlasius. It stretches far away up into the country, and assumes different names, according to the places it croset; but it retains its true name in the southern parts of Asia Minor. There are authors who confound it with mount Cucusus. At three in the morning we began to ascend it, found it very steep and full of rocks, with vast fissures, and frightful precipices, and as the roads and paths of it are very narrow, and very dangerous usidal, we were obliged to alight from our horses and go on foot. It most commonly requires an hour to go over it; but we took up two, because our caravan was more than usually numerous. As you go down, you see precipices which strike the traveller with horror in the night. When you are clear of this mountain, you come into a plain of pretty large extent, which you cross to the left, and come to another mountain, or another...
ther branch of mount Taurus, which here divides itself into two, between which runs the river of Kishian, which they also call Karp: it is very rapid in its course, and has several falls among the rocks, where it tumbles down with great violence; it springs up in the west, and runs into the Caspian sea. Over this river King Tamar built a stone bridge, which is ten paces broad, and one hundred and fifty paces long; it is tolerably lofty, and has six arches, three of which are very wide. Between four of these arches, there are three openings, and between the rest a kind of an half round tower. The river at present only runs under one or two of these arches, unless the waters be very high indeed. Having got over this bridge, we halted to wait for the caravan; in the mean time the Armenians offered them to their coffee, and I, to take upon paper the prospect you have in number 52. We then ascended the second mountain, or branch of the Taurus, which is higher, vaster, and more steep than the former; but as we were much fatigued with having travelled over the first on foot, we were obliged to stop several times to take breath. At length coming to a better way, we mounted our horses again, and at break of day gained the top. The rest of the caravan did the same two hours after us, and half a league farther on we came into a fine and well-cultivated country. At nine in the morning we got to the village of Kasebeggidaraff; there, for the first time, they brought us grapes, at the rate of four-pence a pound; and the ways are very good beyond mount Taurus, as well as the soil. From thence you have sight of another mountain, higher than the former, and continually capped with snow; but we halted a day to rest ourselves. Upon the twentieth, at three in the morning we proceeded on our journey, amid very fine weather, and by seven, we reached the neighbourhood of a brook not far from Yanikafela. Here they have extraordinary birds called Baken-Kara. We then went through several villages, whence you see mount Taurus at a distance, in the manner it is represented in number 53. Upon the twenty second, we crossed a great plain, bordered by hills and mountains on the left hand, where they brought us grapes of a most exquisite flavour. Upon the twenty third, we arrived at the town of Samgaal, beyond which we halted, and there met with very fine pomegranates of a beautiful colour and middling size, grapes and other fruits.

### CHAP. XXXVI.

**Description of Samgaal, and of the places on the road thither.**

**Arrival at Com.**

We were obliged to stay here the next day to wait for the officers of the customs, who live without the town. Samgaal has the look of a village, though there are there some lofty and well built houses, considering the country, some of earth only, and others of earth and stone together. They have here a fine bazar, which is covered and vaulted, and where they keep the principal shops, and particularly those of the drapers, where they sell all sorts of cotton stuffs and cloths. There are, however, other covered shops in other parts of the town, and a number of molichas adorned with domes, the chief of which
which is painted a fine green, and

glazed blue on the outside. There

is one running to ruin, which is pret-

ty lofty with a dome, and which

the Turks made use of, when they

became masters of this place; but

though it is not very large, it stands

pleasantly in a plain, with high

mountains to the west. Half a

league from thence there runs a

dream of fine clear water, where

our caravan halted, in a place full

of trees and walled gardens. I drew

a prospect of this town to the north-
east, as you see it in number 54.

The letter A distinguishes the ruin-

ous mosque of the Turks: the letter B

points out the principal mosque, and

the great demolition'd building. And

this is all that is remarkable at this

place, which is destitute of all traces

whereby to guess at its antiquity,

tho' very ancient it is, and tho' it

was a very flourishing place in the
days of Tamerlane; but it was after-

wards destroyed by the Turks. There

is but one caravanera here; it is

indifferently large, built of earth

and clay, and the small river of Sa-

ganfancy runs to the east of it, and

thence goes and throws itself among

the mountains, where I drew the

prospect you have in number 55.

This town is governed by a Daroga

or Bailiff, and there for every hor-

ble load of silk and cloth you pay the

sum of thirty pence, and but fifteen

for commodities of less value. In

the evening it began to rain, which

continued to do till about two

hours before sun-rise. Upon the

twenty fifth we pursued our journey,

with a fine road, the officers of the

custums having agreed to meet us

at the place where we were to bait

day, there to receive their dues.

We passed in sight of severall vil-

lages, and stopped at Karkijandy, three

leagues to the south-east of the town.

In this place there is a branch of the

Taurus, which stretches away from

north to south, towards Curdijdan,

inhabited by the Guards, who live in

villages; they say they have never-
theless a small fortres in the moun-
tains, called Kuyder Peyamber. Up-

on the twenty sixth, we had much

rain, and croosed the plain in the

midst of it, travelling on towards

the mountains, and at break of day

we saw Sultania on our right, two

leagues from the place, where we

had passed a part of the night. This
town stands in a plain, near moun-
tains which almost incomparably it

round, with that of Kuyder on the

right hand; but as the guides of our

caravan had no manner of business

there, and as there is no going into

it without paying certain duties, we,
to my very great regret, passed by it.

They had, however, flattered me

they should stop at a place not far

off, but they not doing as they had

said, I rode back towards the town,

and stopped upon an eminence near

the east side of it, where I drew the

prospect you have in number

56. It has four great mosques, the

three chief of which have large

domes, and in one of them is the

tomb of Sultan Mohammed Khoda-
bend, who, as they say, laid the

foundations of it about four hun-

dred years ago: they assured me

this tomb is magnificent and well

built, and that the chapel of it is

adorned with gold and silver. It

looks most charmingly from with-

out.

This town has neither gates nor Descricp

walls, and all the houses of it are built

of earth, lime and clay. It

has eight or ten caravaneras, and

some bazars, but not considerable,
nor, indeed, can it be reckoned a

trading place; tho' formerly, before

it was destroyed by Tamerlane, it was

one of the first towns in Perzis. The

royal palace, once its most pompous

building, is now no more. Half a

league from the town, there are

the ruins of an old stone tower

and gate, which it is likely belong-

ed to the old city, which is in 36

degrees, 30 minutes of northern la-

titude.

I was two hours before I could

overtake the caravan, which had

held on its way, and about noon we

halted at the village of Talats, the

neighbourhood of which abounds

Y y

with
with *barber-kraares*, birds not very different from our partridges, except that they are larger, and have white bellies and wings: they fly in flocks, pretty high, and delight in tilled grounds: I killed one of them; it was very heavy, well fed, and of a delicious taste.

Two hours before day, we pursued our journey, and after a stretch of five hours, we arrived at *Gromdora*, a town of large extent, full of trees and gardens, and by the side of a fine stream. Its houses are indifferently good, and some of them are even pretty lofty. We departed hence at the same hour as the day before, and travelled over the same plain, the mountains that compass it being at the distance of about a league from each other. The grounds were town, and the country thick set with villages. The country people there make little mounds of earth to keep in the water, and by the road side there are conduits of water to water the land. We then went through two villages, whose morts had a kind of steeple, a sight rare to be seen in this country: they are very broad at bottom, and terminate in a point or spire: they told me they were the tombs of saints to which they had added morts. About noon we went down a hollow way almost quite surrounded by a conduit or canal of water, which was five or six foot broad, whose water ran over violently in two places, and spread over the lands from north-west to south-east. In this place we found two villages called *Purlobeim* and *Tewobb*, the last of which, which is the smallest of the two, is inclosed with a mud wall like a garden, which you go into by a large gate. The first is very large, full of trees and gardens, and the country about is very pleasant. The two villages with steeple, which we just now mentioned, are of the same name and in the same district, tho' at a good distance from each other. In this place the mountains seem to terminate. That day we travelled a journey of five leagues, and at three in the morning we proceeded farther through a road full of hills and villages to the right and left, whence at the break of day we descried some mountains covered with snow. We afterwards crossed a small river three or four times; we had very fine and mild weather quite to *Ghinda*, where every one sheltered himself under the ruins of a low wall, a thing common enough in these parts. This town contains above five hundred houses, most of them low and upon an eminence; so that from a distance a man might mistake it for a fortres. It is full of trees and gardens, and about it are a great number of uninhabited houses. You have a representation of it in number 57.

Provisions abound in this place, *Angoert*, a bird so called, which I preferred. I there shot an *Angoert*, a bird so called, which is somewhat like a duck, but it flies higher, and struts with the head up like a cock, and delights in water. The body of it is red and the neck of a yellow ruffet quite to the eyes, about which it is white to the bill, which is black: its wings are white, red, and black; my dog brought it to me alive. You have the representation of a small village in number 58; and of the bird in number 59. This part of the country also a cotton-bounds in cotton-trees, a branch of which I drew as you see it in number 60. It has three or four pods, in the condition they are in when the fruit is not perfectly ripe; as you may observe by one of the four which is burst open and full of cotton. They either gather them, or they fall of themselves, when the pod is open, and begins to wither. The outward colour of it is purple, and has a delightful effect with the white within, when it bursts and opens.

Upon the thirtyeth, we continued in this same place, to give our horses some rest. About noon there passed by a *Polish* ambassador from
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

1703. Ispahan, on his way to his own country. I was alone at my sport when I met him, and some of his train observing me to be drest in the fashion of Holland, called out to me, but I not minding them, as thinking they were Perfians, two or three of them rode up to me, and told me, in Italian, that they were Europeans. While I was talking with them, the Ambassador himself went by: They asked me what news from Europe, but I told them it was six months since I came from Moscow, and that, consequently, I could give them no manner of information about the matter. They had passed the night in the village next to where we were, and desired me to recommend them to their friends at Ispahan, and promised to do the same for me at Moscow, and thereupon they pursued their journey. They were about thirty persons on horseback, and had three or four banneroles or small standards with them, and were followed by twenty three camels, laden with their baggage.

At three in the morning we resumed our road, and having travelled four leagues, we came to Sak-sawa, a great village, like the former, full of trees. On the right hand there are ruins of a large building, and on the left those of a large caravanera, represented in number 61. We were here obliged to stay, to pay the ordinary duties, and I in the mean time divested myself with shooting at pigeons.

As we travelled on, we passed by a place full of fena; this tree is a very pleasant one to look at, and, as I had never seen of them before, I was charmed with it, and shall give a description of it in the sequel. In the village of Arafang, we found store of pomegranates, a very refreshing fruit of fruit, and very cheap. Leaving this we went over a hill, leaving the plain on the left hand, to get into the road that goes to Com. There is another on the right hand of this village that goes to Savaw, whether we should have gone to pay certain duties; but as it is going a day's journey out of the way to Com, and as they are thereby liable to the payment of three different imposts, whereas they are liable to but one by going directly to Com, the caravan commonly chooses this last.

After a journey of five hours we refitted ourselves in a plain, between some hills, near the village of Hangaran, where there is very good bread, and from thence we went on to Saranda. There we, for the first time, drank wine of Ardevill, which is white and pleasent enough to the palate, but it is not allowed to be sold. This village is surrounded with wells, supplied with water by a subterraneous canal in the village. Upon the fourth of November we departed, and after a stage of seven leagues, we, at one in the afternoon, reached Angelows, two hours before the rest of the caravan: this village is but seven leagues from Com. This part is also full of wells, or springs, four or five paces from each other, and the water of them is also conveyed under ground to the village. Persia is all over full of such springs and subterraneous conveyances. Here there are ravens of extraordinary size: but the land here being strongly impregnated with salt-peter the water is brackish. Our camels went on before us in the night, but the custom-house officers of Savaw having seized upon one of them, laden with two bales of cloth, because we had not passed by that place, and because this is under one and the same territory or jurisdiction, we were obliged to turn back again, and stay in this place till the sixth of November, whence we departed before day. Coming upon a small ditch or trench which we did not perceive, several of our horses fell in, and amongst the rest mine, but by good chance they were got out again. At nine in the morning we came upon the banks of the river Sawashae, which comes from Savaw: it is very broad in some places, and runs away to the southward,
went through a town full of houses; but they were all empty; it is likely the inhabitants were all in tents abroad, tending their cattle. There is a great stone bridge at the entrance into the town, by the side of which we saw a great number of tents pitched, and in them people of all sorts of condition, with horses by them, tied to each other. They told us these people, among whom there were more women than men, were upon a pilgrimage, to visit the tombs of several Saints. We were half an hour in going through the town, to the end of the old walls, where we got up our tents in a place where there are many ancient ruins. The rest of the caravan did not arrive till two hours after us, having been under a necessity to cross several narrow bridges, which had delayed them. We stayed here the next day, and had very charming weather.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Description of Cachan or Caftan. Arrival at Ifpahan.

During the time I staid here I visited the inside of the town, after I had satisfied my curiosity with a view of its antiquities and ruins, concerning which I shall be more diffuse in the sequel. In the great moshch of Muzeyd or Ma-zyt-matfesma there is the tomb of Fatima-fosta, the sister of Mohammed and wife of Ali; and near that another moshch where they preferre the ashes of Abbas King of Persia, of some other Kings, and among the rest of Shah Sultaman, the father of Shah Hojim, the King that reigns at present. These two moshches are of a fine sort of architecture, and have domes glazed with green. As you go into the town, you see four columns of about thirty six foot high, the two first of which are joined together, and belonged to some public edifice or some moshch. They stand upon a square wall raised above the ground, nearly of the height of these same columns, and the portal of this wall is a great vaulted arcade; the two others are at a distance from each other and more damaged. Upon the top of the two first there is a kind of capital of no order, and three different faccia's about them. They seem to be pretty equal to the fight, and yet they are more taper at top than at bottom, and above the capital they have a moulding of green and gold, somewhat disfigured. They are at some distance from the Bazaar, which is of the most ordinary sort, as well as the rest of the town; nor was I surprized at it, for it is
1703. by no means a trading place. There is a great building near the bridge over which you go into the town, with a fine and spacious court, in the midst of which there is a bason. It is a kind of mortch or chapel, where they pretend to have the remains of the sister of Imam Riza, and Imam Abu Hamza who flourished seven hundred and fifty years ago. This tomb is held in great veneration, because this Lady, as they will have it, was of the posterity of Mahomed, and accordingly there are always some person of distinction there.

The bridge, we just now mentioned, is one hundred paces in length and eight in breadth, with a small brick parapet two foot high. This bridge, which is built of small stones, has ten arches, under some of which runs the river of Combay, when it is low, but especially when it is high. They relate that there was a great inundation in this town in the year 1591, and that it swept away about twelve hundred houses; which being reported to King Abbas, he ordered a dyke of two leagues in length to prevent the like disaster for the time to come.

This town is divided into twenty four quarters or districts, and contains two thousand one hundred houses, in each of which there is a well, not to speak of three hundred abenbaars or cisterns. It has four gates, four Bazars, and a public square, several bagno’s and a great number of molchs and chapels. There are no antiquities to be seen on this side, but there are on the other, where the caravan stopped, within the eeneint of the old town, formerly called Cblana standing in Meida, which as is supposed extended to Carban, and to a mountain which was as a boundary to it; a tract of country, which the inhabitants call Arak.

In this place, at some distance from the wall, there is a round pyramid, which is seventy eight paces in circumference and forty eight in height, provided with four shelving walls without steps; its entrance is flopped up with rubbish. The walls are a fathom thick, and the defecit, taken obliquely, a fathom and an half; then they fetch a great slope and go as deep into the ground as they are above the surface, where this pyramid is smooth and round. You may look into it by certain holes, but into it there is no going, and what is more extraordinary it seems to have been done designedly. Upon the whole, it is most likely to have been a monument: you have it represented in number 64. There are other ruins on the right hand of this pyramid, and among others, the remains of a small chapel. The decayed wall of the town reaches a good way beyond these ruins, but it is difficult to distinguish any thing of it in particular. However, two or three hundred paces from the pyramid, as you return to the town, there is a part of this wall tolerably entire and flanked with round towers, which are very much gone to ruin: they are to the number of ten, are about forty foot high, and very thick and substantial at bottom; you see them represented in number 64, with the ruins of a gate which was five paces deep, as much in breadth, and the wall was of the same thickness. All the rest of the buildings are of earth, clay, and small stones dried in the sun. For my part, I own, I never saw any ancient building of this kind; but I am nevertheless perfectly persuaded these are ruins of the old town, and the rather as the ancients make mention of the like buildings of earth dried in the sun, and a kind of lime made of clay. The sacred historians likewise take notice that the builders of the tower of Babel made use of the like kind of earth instead of stone, and of clay instead of lime. And this is the more natural to conclude with regard to this country, as the sun is here very powerful, and consequently soon able to dry up earth to the nature of stone. It seems to
1703. me alfo that they have mixed chopp-

ed straw with this earth, to make it bind the better. In the fame manner they continue to build to this day, and all over Perfa you see of this earth dried in the fun, and clay, of which they make lime. And, to fay the truth of the matter, their houses are mean enough, and laft but a little while, nor do they ever think of repairing them.

From thence I went to the north-
west of the town, where there are no eminences, and from thence drew the view you have in number 65. The letter A distinguifhes the great mosch called Matfama; B that of the Kings; C the bridge; D the mosch of the great building; E the two principal columns of the edifice we have mentioned. In the fame plate you may alfo obferve how the other columns are divided from each other.

Upon the eighteenth of November, we left Com an hour before day, and paffing by the old wall, we came into a plain full of villages. A league farther we faw two great ruined towers. We paffed the day in a village where there is a fine fream of clear water, three leagues to the southward of the town; and a league beyond we faw the remains of an ancient fquare building with very fubfianial walls: they fay it was formerly a fortrefs. There is an-
other on the fide of this, with fep-
veral apartments. A league and an half from thence, we faw a large garden, furred around with a high fquare wall. About eight, we got into a rough floy plain, with lofty mountains on the right hand, and villages on all fides. Upon the ninth, we refelfed ourselves at the village of Sinjin, feven leagues from the place where we had paffed the night: this village is tolerably large, and in it are feveral ruined build-
ings and caravanseras. We left it at two in the morning, and at break of day met with feveral travellers in a place full of trees, and well cultivated. At break of day we per-

ceived Cachan [Cafihan] where we arrived at seven in the morning. 1703.

One part of the caravan went to lodge in the town, and the other in the caravansera in the suburbs. The houfes of it are fair and regular, and larger than thofe of the city, which is reckon'd one of the chief in Perfa; nor indeed had I ever feen any till then to compare with it. As it is at no very great distance from Jaffatan, we there found the inhabitants more civil and polite, than in the other cities we had paff-

ed through. It is in 35 degrees Dnephi-

51 minutes of northern latitude, in 51.

and is called Kaffatan, Kaffan, Kaf-

faan and Cakhan, and it stands at the end of a great plain, near the foot of a lofty mountain. I drew it from the north-eaft, in this plain, whence it makes the moft confeider-

able figure. On the left of this town you fee a pyramid like that of the ruined building at Com: the whole is to be feen in number 66.

The Governor or Commander of the Governor: in chief here is called a Vifier, who is inferior in dignity to a Khan as a Khan is inferior to a Beglerbeg, whom they muft both of them obey; he even frequently fends them into other places.

The walls of this town are about thirty six foot high, and it has fe-

ven gates without reckoning that of Danlet. To the north-west there is a fine meydooen, with a kind of till-
yard, above which are two small columns; upon that without there is a staff on which they hoift a flag when there is a tournament. This

meydooen or till-yard is seven hun-
derd and feventy paces long, and one hundred broad. As you go out of the gate, on the right hand, you have the royal garden, inclofed with a wall thirty foot high. It is large and traversed by a well kept canal, and full of fine trees, well disposed, among the rest pines and pomegranate trees; and thereo belongs a pleasure-houfe built by Abbas the Great. This wall has four great gates, and two small ones; from the fit of them which is near that of the town, you go into a fine ca-

ravanera
Corneelius Le Bruyn.

1703. Ravanfera inhabited by Indians: it is spacious and of surprizing beauty, being thirty fix paces deep, and seven broad: the vault of it is crowned with a dome, upon which there is a lantern after the Italian manner; and it has two arcades on the side, whence you fee the apartments. Having crossed it you come into a court one hundred paces long, by eighty broad, surrounded by a building two stories high, which has fifteen arcades on each side in length, and ten in breadth, under which there are rooms one upon another; besides which there are small projecting rooms or closets which have a charming effect; so that this caravansera surpasses all I ever saw. A little beyond this gate you come to a second with a fine arcade; and upon finding it open, I went into the garden which is full of great and small trees well kept: the third gate is that of a great and very lofty building, above the wall of the garden. From the fourth you go to a wide court, and all round it is shelter for horses: the two small gates admit into the garden only. On the other side there is another, but neither so fine nor so large as the first, tho' as well as that, it be surrounded with walls. Over-against this caravansera there is an ascent of fifty stone steps, and beneath, a place which apparently must be a tank or reservoir for water, the walls and vault of which are of small stones, very neatly put together. The gate of the town is vaulted also, and eighty paces deep, with a dome like that of the caravansera. From thence you go into a fine bazar, well vaulted and plastered, and stowed with the shops of confectioners, druggists, pastry-cooks, goldsmiths, farmers, bakers, and cooks, where you have all sorts of victuals ready drest, roasted and boiled; bakers, fruiters and the like: every shop takes up a vault, and the whole is very regular and charmingly neat. This bazar, in the midst of which there is the mint, runs cross the town from one gate to the other. There are several others near this, and particularly one which has gates and is shut up, where they sell cloths and all sorts of silks and the like. Another there is belonging to the silk-dyers, where you see delightful colours. These bazars are so well covered that you are always sheltered from the rain, and the coffee-houses are there always full of people smoking. The caravanseras are on one side of these bazars, and you go into them by a great vaulted gate; some of them are fine and two stories high, with five or six steps before the apartments, and the number of them is very considerable in this town, where they make most of the silk and gold and silver stuffs in such quantity that they every day use seven bales of silk, which weigh one thousand five hundred and twelve pounds. The *meydoens* here are small, and in many parts of the town there are wells like that in the royal garden we have mentioned. The moschs here have pretty lofty towers, but few large domes, and those there are, are not coloured. This city has seven gates, as has been said, two of which are always kept shut, and several meydoens.

They have here fruits and flowers at all seasons of the year, and the fruits are here sooner ripe than elsewhere; so that in the spring-time they here fell melons, grapes, apricots, mulberries, pomegranates, cucumbers, and especially most charming water-melons. They lay there are seventy aqueducts, which convey water to this town; and they there also reckon one hundred and twenty bagnio's and a great number of tanks to which they go down by several steps. The number of mills here amounts to one hundred and twenty, and that of the houses to three thousand, divided into three wards or districks, one thousand in each. Besides all which there are sixty villages under the jurisdiction of this town.

At Fier, there is a royal house, Remarke-

ble foun-

where.
1703. where there is a fountain or basin made, as they say, in the reign of Suliman, the water of which comes from a high mountain called Rocbi 't Sabiil, and is conducted to Cathan by the means of 27 mills built in the reign of Abbas. That which comes from the mountain of Demawend runs away towards Ker and Thbaraan: they call it the river of Dedaie-raan, and it goes and empties the rest of its water in the Caspian sea. You have a height of this mountain when you are between Com and Cathan.

Upon the thirteenth, we left this town two hours before day, and crossed a sandy plain, and for some leagues had small raised downs on our left hand. That day we travelled six leagues, and having refreshed ourselves a while, we proceeded on our journey at two in the morning, continuing still in the same plain, bordered by mountains covered with snow on our right hand. At break of day we came to the foot of the highest of them, and crossed a river among the rest, and afterwards a plain, at the end of which we perceived a village, together with several others between the mountains and hills. After a stage of seven leagues we got to the village of Gbor, a league from the small town of Nathans. This village is a charming place, and you have it represented in number 67. Being upon an eminence, it looks like a fortress at a distance, on the left hand of which you see a small moat, and a country which extends beyond the reach of the sight.

We departed from hence two hours before day, and about seven came to a large plain, where there were five or six villages by the side of each other, and two fine gardens, the last of which was surrounded by a good wall, half a league in circumference, and has a remarkable dove-house concerning which we shall speak in the sequel. On one side of this garden is a large house which belongs to the King, and a small village called Padja-batt. Having crossed this plain we came among hills and mountains, some of which were capped with snow, and after a stretch of seven leagues, we came to the caravansera of Sardaban, where certain duties are paid. We there went over a kind of torrent, which falls and tumbles among the rocks, and whose water, consisting of melted snow from the mountains, is admirable. You have this caravansera represented, and another near it in number 68. The first is a spacious stone building with a vaulted entrance, twenty foot deep and with a step of three foot. There is a spring of water near the second, which is but small.

An hour after midnight we travelled on with a fine moon-light, and having got over the mountains we came into a great sandy plain bordered with mountains. In the night we passed by two other caravanseras, the first of which was perfectly fine, and after a stage of seven leagues we came to the village of Riek, where we stayed till three in the morning. We then rode over some plowed lands, and at break of day arrived at 1phaban. When I had refreshed myself a little at the caravansera, I went to wait upon Mr. Kaffelein the director of the affairs of our East-India company. He received me in the kindest manner imaginable, and assured me I might command all that was in his power. He kept me some time with him, and gave me one of his servants to conduct me to Mr. Owen, the agent for the English East-India company, who received me with the same kindness and complaisance. From thence I went to the caravansera of Joddo, in the medow, or great square of the palace. This caravansera, which belongs to the Queen mother of the King, is the place where all the Armenians have their ware-houses and keep their shops; and as it is the chief of all in the city, and the best situated of all, I went there to lodge, by the recog-
1703, mendation of Mr. Kafkelein, for whom they had a great regard, and there I continued all the time I staid in this city. The King happened to be at that time in the country with his concubines. After I had rode about the town, and in the Armenian district of it called Jufsa, I went to visit some Euro-pean, Ecclesiastics and others, mostly of the French nation, who returned my visit. The next day Mr. Kafkelein invited me to dine with him, and afterwards carried me out of town.

CHAP. XXXVIII.


As the weather was perfectly fine, we went to see what was most curious in and about the city, as the Chiera advances or fine alley or walk of Ispahan, and the place of burial for the Armenians and Europeans, which shall be described hereafter. We went out of the town in great form, according to the custom of the country. Mr. Kafkelein himself appeared first, with twelve runners, and preceded by two interpreters. After him came his second, whom I followed, and all the rest two and two, each according to his rank. We were twelve on horsecar, and twenty fix persons in all, and yet the Director used to be more numerously attended in the life-time of his wife, who had been dead five or six months before we arrived at Ispahan, and had been magnificently deposit- ed under a fine stone vault, open on the four sides. Her name was Sara Jacoba Six, de Chandeler, of a family originally French, and was a Lady of great senfe and worth.

Returning back in the evening we met with two runners in the Chieraad with lights, or sort of flambeaus made of balls of cloth steeped in oil, and fixed in an iron contrivance, fastened to the end of a staff with a round tinned copper plate in form of a sawcer to catch the droppings of the oil. It was light enough of all conscience, but this is a ceremony in use among people of distinction. In this manner we rode through the town, and I staid to sup with Mr. Kafkelein, perfectly well satisfied with my little journey.

The next day he sent me a sea-lizard, dry and whole, of the size and form of an ordinary lizard. It is a creature they take in the Persian gulf, and the Persians, who call it Seck-amber, make great account of it. They give it to be hot in the third degree, and having dried it they leavigate it to a powder, and mix it up with pearl, amber, saffron and opium. They say this cordial invigorates and restores a weakened constitution: they make this mixture up into pills which they swallow, and are hardly ever expos- ed to fail, seeing there is scarce any but Merchants, and those who have business at court, who buy them to prevent to such as they solicit. They have here also a certain fish called Sipra-fa-fa, or Milk-Fish, of most beautiful colours. His belly mostly yellow, his fins red, and the rest of the body of a blueish green. The flesh of him is firm, white and delicious, and he is represented in number 69.
1703. Mr. Kaftelein also made me a present of four feet of small birds or other animals, which had been found at Isphan in a lump of ambergras, which weighed about thirty three or thirty four pounds, and which the King had purchased to melt it into a ball, which he incased in gold, and enriched with precious stones, to send it as a present to Mohammed's tomb. Hence it might be concluded that ambergras is a gum, produced in the sea, which hardens in the air, when it happens to be torn and tost up by the violence of the waves. This precious gum is chiefly found in the eaff, and in several parts of the Indies.

They brought me also a bird called Paez-jelak, nor very unlike a duck, except that it had the head, bill and feather of a crow; its feet were broad at bottom, and divided into three parts; its body was long, and it tasted very bad. It is represented in number 70.

Upon the twenty third of this month, we went, again, in form to the village of Kaladoen, a good league from the city, there to see the tomb of Abdulla. They say this saint had former the inspection of the waters of Emaen Offcen, and that he was one of the twelve disciples, or, as they pretend, one of the Apostles of their Prophet. This tomb, which stands between four walls, faced with small stones, is of a grey marble, adorned with Arabian characters, and surrounded with lamps of tinned copper. You go up to it by fifteen steps, a foot high, and there are fifteen others a little higher which go up to a square platform of thirty two foot every way, and upon the front of which there are two columns of small stones, some of which are blue. The base of them is five foot in diameter, and they have a small door with a winding stair-case which also consists of fifteen steps. They have suffered much by the common injuries of time, and it seems as if they had been once higher than they are at present. The stair-case with-
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

1703. matter. Upon the thirtieth, we went out of town again, and I looked out for a proper place from whence to draw a view of the city, at the time of the year it then was; for in summer it is impossible to do it, because of the numbers of trees that hide it. We went up an eminence to look at a building against a rock, which we shall resume hereafter, in our description of this city. I there found canals and springs frozen notwithstanding they were running waters.

Mean time the King's servants and baggage arrived, and so filled the chiaer-bag, with dust that they were obliged to water it. Mr. Kafstelein being informed of this, sent me with all his family to the place I had pitched on for drawing a view of the city, to see the King who was to pass by there. We went thither dressed in the neatest manner we could, and our horses were well caparisoned, in which the Persians are excellent. We waited a full hour at the Christian burial-ground, and presently saw a great number of horsemens appear, and his Majesty's equipages or baggage carried by mules. They had sent out six elephants to meet this Prince, four of which stopped in the chiaer-bag, and the rest went on. The King himself came half an hour before sun-set, followed by the principal Lords of his court, and a prodigious crowd of people. He was at the head of them, and rode upon a fine cheetnut horse, and went by us near a small river, where we had drawn ourselves up on horse-back to wait for him. We saluted him in the most respectful manner, and he fixed his eyes upon us. As the bridge he was to go over was but narrow, most that attended him forded the river; for many who had been eager to get upon the bridge fell off; to avoid the danger of which we turned off towards Jufa and came home with the night. It is hard to conceive what a multitude of people attend the King upon such occasions; a man would think it was an army. The number of his camels is not less surprizing, nor indeed had I ever seen so many together in all my life. Besides all this there was a monstrous crowd of spectators both on foot and on horseback in the chiaer-bag: the King went thro' one of his gardens to go to his palace, preceded by two leopards which he uses in hunting, and some falcons. His women came to town the same night.

Upon the fourteenth of December, we celebrated the festival of Chriftmas with Mr. Kafstelein, and the next day went to visit the monks of the three convents without the city. At the company's house, two days afterwards, we saw a white crow, which had been seen there several times before, but they could never shoot it, and was at last taken in his Majesty's nets. At the same time they cleaned a small pond, in which they found four sorts of fish unknown in our parts, namely the gōarkmaj, or aš-fīsh, marked as it is in our maps, he had been covered with a net; the sšir-ma-fi or milk-fish, with small spotted scales; the saraep, a fifth green upon the back and white under the belly, and which commonly swims upon the surface of the water; the fourth to be described is a small fish, which had not grown at all in two years it had been taken notice of; I kept it with several others in spirits of wine. They are all admirably well tasted, and especially from the frying-pan.

Upon the first day of the year 1704, we went to pay the usual compliments, after the manner of the country, to Mr. Kafstelein, who kept us to dine and sup with him to the number of thirty, and entertained us splendidly, not to say that they served up sweet-meats and refreshments between the meals. The English Agent was some how or other out of order, so he could not be there, but his second came with the chief officer of his house; as well as father Antonio Difio, the Præ-Resident of turgueñ Resident, a man of merit; and who had seen the world, and knew
1704. knew very well how to live in it: there were also several Armenian merchants. This entertainment, however, was not so grand as it had usually been, because of the death of the mistress of the house; and there was but one discharge of four field-pieces in the morning, to give notice there was to be a feast, instead of several which are commonly fired upon those occasions; this signal brought a number of people from Julfa. As I had my eye up on the watch, I took notice of a lighted taper, five or six foot long, and thick in proportion, different from all I had ever seen before, and adorned from top to bottom in a very particular manner; it stood upon a great dish to save the carpet from the wax that dropped from it, and gave an amazing light. It rained very hard that night and next day, so that the ways became impassable, which is extraordinary enough at that season; but upon the sixth, which was twelfth-day, we had fair weather again. We were some days afterwards entertained by the English Agent, in the manner we had been by our own upon the first day of the year, with this addition that the cannon went off at every health: there was also music after the manner of the country. About the evening there came a Georgian dancer, who wanted to shew his agility, but he did no great feats. They brought a man swaddled up in a white cloth, so that you could only see his arms done up in imitation of two children, the one representing a boy, the other a girl. He was stretched out like a dead man, and yet he made several comical motions to the sound of instruments; he had his hands done up in the heads of the two pretended children, who first caressed each other, and afterwards concluded with blows.

Mr. Kaffelein, to whom I am infinitely obliged, sent me, after this, fourteen large bottles of an excellent white wine, which he took care to furnish me with during all the time I stayed in this city, besides that he constantly entertained me at dinner and supper; but when I rose from table I never failed to retire into my apartment, and there apply my self to the things I had had in view when I set out upon so long and dangerous a journey. The wine I speak of is the best in all Persia, for they take no care to fine the wines at Isfahan; all you drink there is foul and unpleasent to the palate: they fine none but the wines of Zijereai [Shiraz] which are the best of all, and which we shall mention in the sequel. Most of the Europeans that have lived here some time fall into the taste of the Persians, and care but little whether the wine be fine or foul so it be but strong. The wine he gave me was as clear as crystal, nearly of the taste of Rhum, nor yielding to any French wine I ever drank in my life: there is also a red very much unlike Florence. They fine down these wines in large earthen pots or jars, instead of casks, as in the Isle of Cyprus, and after they have been well fermented, they put them into great glass bottles, which hold sixteen of the common size. To make these wines, they pick out the very best of the grapes, and are careful in throwing aside all such as are rotten or bruised; and hence it is that the flavour of it surpasses that of all others: they use also sulphur and cardamums, to preserve them, and give them a good scent. For the rest they never drink them before they are a year old, nor are they amiss for use at the end of two.

During the time I stayed in this city, we, by letters, dated the eighth of November, from Aleppo, received news from our country, by runners employed for that purpose, by the companies of Holland and England. They in like manner go to Conon and other places.

That day was the first of the Boyram or great fast of the Persians, which lasts twenty nine or thirty days, that is, till the return of the
1704. the new moon, as it is observed among the Turks. During this space of time they are forbidden to eat or to drink in the day-time, or even to smoke, which is their most favourite amusement; but then they turn the night into day; as soon as the sun is down they begin to pray, and smoke about half an hour afterwards; they then eat and drink as much as they please till day-light. But all this is done in form and with regard to certain circumstances, for after they have smoked, they eat nothing but fruits, sweet-meats and the like, and have no regular meal till after mid-night. Nor are they allowed to blow the trumpet or sound any of their other instruments at mid-night, as usual; they must wait till four or five in the morning; and indeed then they make the greater noise with them, torous the artians, and admonish them it is time to rise to their work. This sign is also of use to those without, giving them to understand they may bring in their goods, their fruits, herbs and the like, which, at other times, is done at mid-night. These trumpets are also heard half an hour before the sun goes down to give notice to the King’s guards to repair to their several posts. The shops must also be shut up between eight and nine at night, and every one must withdraw to his home; and two hours before it is day the mallas, churchmen whose business it is to give notice of the fixed times of prayer, from the top of the mosques, begin 1704. to call the people together; they begin again at noon, and after the sun is down. The Persians also begin to reckon their hours from the rising and setting of the sun; without minding how far the day or the night is spent, or whether the day be longer or shorter than the night, they go all by guess.

The following days, the river was full of ice; but nevertheless a servant of Mr. Kafselein’s caught out of town a fish of extraordinary size in this country; it was a kind of carp, three quarters of an ell in length, and admirably well tasted. This fish they call Sbrimaftis, as hath already been said.

Upon the sixteenth, after I had written to my friends in Holland, by the way of Aleppo, I went with Mr. Kafselein’s family to Julfa, to see the festival of the consecration of water, which the Armenians were to celebrate the next morning before break of day. This festival is called Goeroortng, or the Baptism of the Cross, and is celebrated as with the Ruffians upon the sixth of January. In the evening we got into Julfa, and went to lodge with Mr. Salab, our interpreter, who entertained us with a good supper. About three in the morning, which is the hour when they open this ceremony, we went to the church of Anna-baet, which is the episcopal church of the Armenians.

---

**CHAP. XXXIX.**


They opened this solemnity with a leison, with hymns and with maffes, quite to the break of day; at that time the Priests, who appeared in black, all but the Bishops, the cross, who officiated, put on their rich vestments.
1704, vestments of gold brocade; and the Bishop covered himself with his mitre, adorned with pearls and precious stones. In his right hand he held a cross of middling size, and embellished with jewels, but covered with a white embroidered handkerchief; and another in his left hand not so magnificent as the former.

The number of ecclesiastics together upon this occasion were twenty-four or twenty-five, who came out of the church with all their ornaments to go to a covered place over against the church, somewhat lofty and very much adorned, and above which there are two bells.

They here had a great copper cistern full of water, by which they read and sung for above an hour; after which the Bishop dipped the cross three times into the water of the cistern, and then they gave him a large cup of oil, which he threw into the water, and so put an end to the ceremony. The Priests that assisted, hastily ran their hands into the water, and washed their faces with it, as did all the Armenians that could get at it; and some of them filled small canes with this holy water. This solemnity was observed in several other churches, and even in a small river which runs by Jyufes. But this you must take along with you, they cannot practise this religious custom without leave from the King, which the Kalian-ter, or Burgomaster of the Armenians never fails to ask some days beforehand. Upon which this Prince sends to demand the tribute of two hundred ducats, which they pay him yearly upon this account, and sends them a guard to prevent disorders; a precaution absolutely necessary because of the crowd of Turks and Persians who came to see this ceremony out of curiosity. There was so great a throng of them this day, that the Bishop himself could not have got to anything, if the guards had not cleared the way for him by laying on all sides unmercifully with their flaves. The seven Bishops who were here present, reside in the episcopal monastery of 1704, the church of Annabae, together with some Priests. This monastery which goes round the church, consists of small cells, where nothing is to be seen but two or three small niches, fit for nothing but to hold books, together with a desk, before which they sit upon the ground. The walls are white and well kept, and the light comes in on one side by two or three small glazed windows. The refectory may be called long, and is provided with a pulpit, in which they read some chapters during the time of dinner: the chapel is painted from top to bottom, with representations of sacred stories, but without any art. It is not lawful for their Bishops to marry, but their Priests may. They have two Patriarchs, one of which resides here, and the other at Betjaranes, or the Three Churches, near mount Ararat, and at the distance of three leagues from Erivan.

Upon this occasion we happened to see a strange combat between two mules and a black hog, which they had certainly torn to pieces if help had not come in. Mr. Kasle-bien informed us of the reason of this antipathy between these creatures and the black hog, saying it proceeded from a natural aversion they have to bears, which the black hog nearly enough resembles. He told us that one day letting loose one of his mules upon a large bear, the former tore the latter into pieces. Whence it is that the guides of the caravans when they understand there are bears about them, which frequently destroy hores, set the mules at their heels, who never give them quarter. It happened even at that same time that a bear-ward, shewing away with one of those creatures near the cbiar-bag, a Persian came riding by upon a mule; the mule no sooner scented the bear than he fell furiously upon him, and obliged his rider to cry out for help, tho' not a fool dared to go near him. The mule still pursued the bear, and threw his rider, who was a long time.
1704. time sick of the fall, but the bear
    got through a hole where the mule
    could not follow him. This seemed
    the more surprizing to us, as we had
    never once heard of this antipathy;
    nor do I remember to have any
    where read that the Romans made
    use of these creatures in their pub-
    lic shews; whence I conclude the
    mules of this country must be in
    this respect different from the mules
    any where else.

    Upon the twenty ninth, all the
    shops of Ispahan were shut close
    up, on account of the anniversary
    of the death of their great prophet
    Ali. The heat was so very power-
    ful in the month of February, that
    several plants began to shoot up.

    At that time the English Agent,
    accompanied by father Antonio De-
    firo, and several others, came to
    pay a visit to our Director, who
    gave them a splendid entertainment
    both at dinner and supper, so that
    the night was far spent when the
    company broke up. And this was
    what happened often enough; for
    this Agent and Mr. Kaffelaun were
    very intimate friends; and as they
    were always well attended, it was
    always done in a pompous manner.

    Upon the sixth of February, the
    Persians had sight of the new moon,
    and immediately concluded their
    fast, and rejoiced all night to the
    sound of all their instruments. Up-
    on the seventh, they celebrated the
    festival of it according to custom,
    with the same flamour, and the
    King entertained the court and the
    foreign ministers. The next day be-
    ing the festival of Gaddernabir,
    which is celebrated by none but
    the King himself, he, according to
    custom, gave audience to all the
    counsellors of state. Their wives
    and their daughters repaired also to
    the palace, where the King kept
    such as he liked best for some days,
    an honour they value at a very high
    rate. There were great rejoicings,
    and fire-works at the palace.

    The tenth of this month is a day
    when they always make presents to
    the King: they consist of wax done
    up in the form of houses, gardens, 1704.
    and the like. That day there arose
    a very high wind at north-west, a storm.
    where it every year prevails, for
    some days, at this season of the
    year: they call it Baad-Biedmusk, or
    Bed-mufseint, from a flower which
    blows at this time. This flower
    Remarks the kind of willow, from a
    bud of the size of a small nut; the
    is but little and very odoriferous. From this same flower they
    distil a very pleasant liquor, some-
    thing like sherbet and lemonade.

    When sweetened with sugar, but it
    is more wholesome and stronger.
    They keep it all the year round in
    bottles, and they also dry the flower
    itself, and put it among linen to
    scent it: the country people bring
    it in abundance to market. As I
    never observed the like with regard
    to the willows of our country, I
    have drawn the representation you
    see in number 72, together with that
    of the leaves which do not appear
    till the month of April. The wind
    which blows these flowers common-
    ly lasts till the end of the month,
    during which they have fine weather
    with considerable heats. Upon the
    first day of March there fell some
    rain, and presently after it a strong
    wind came on; it was cold; the
    weather was variable; and so it
    continued to be to the end of the
    month.

    Upon Friday, the seventeenth of Pythical of
    this month, they celebrated the festi-
    val of the Solar year. Upon this
    occasion the Bazzars have a charm-
    ing effect by candle-light, all the
    shops in them are very much ad-
    ored, and especially those of the
    confectioners and fruiterers, which
    have a pleasing effect upon the eye.
    The cooks shops are full of all sorts
    of viuals, which they sell all about
    the town, a practice in no other
    country: but they are all for
    tript by the concourte of strangers
    who come to Ispahan to keep this
    festival.

    Early in the morning I went to
    the palace with our master of the
    horse, who was a Perjian and very
    well
1704. well known, where the King was to entertain the principal Lords of his court. They sat down to table at ten of the clock, and the feast lasted but half an hour; the victuals were served up in gold and silver dishes, in which consists the great magnificence of the King of Persia; these dishes were all covered, to the number of two hundred, and they serve up as many again when there happens to be more company. Most of the Lords, invited upon this occasion, wore a sort of turban adorned with pearls and precious stones; they call it Tha-eif-timaer, and they are sometimes adorned with herons feathers of great beauty. They take them off when they are out of the hall where the feast is, and put on those they commonly have upon their heads: a servant carries it before them. During the time of this festival, these Lords appear with extraordinary magnificence, and especially upon this day, when every one is seen in new cloths. Not far from the place where the King gave this feast there were twelve of his led-horses richly caparisoned; their hougons and saddles were set with pearls and precious stones, and their bridles were of maffy gold. They were tied to filken halters which hung upon the ground, but care was to be taken how you trod upon them. Seven of these horses were white, but had a part of their body, the tail, and the feet stained of a red or an orange colour. I could not get near to look at them till I had given something to those who had the care of them. They had a great carpet spread before them, upon which sat a gentleman who had the immediate care of them; and by him was a great golden hammer wherewith they were shod, and a trough of the same metal. But I could not, even for money, get in to the hall where the feast was, and was obliged to take up with a place where I saw every thing pass by. During this festival there are great presents made to the King, and particularly by the Grandees of the court, the bails and governors of places; their presents consist of rich goods, purfes of gold, horse, calves, and mules; which are carried and conducted separately by citizens who are employed for that purpose by the King’s express order. Around the great square of the palace they, at the same time, carry ten or a dozen vessels full of straw, hanging by the end of certain poles, in token of a victory they formerly obtained over the Aesbeck Tartars; thus they give out, and then they lead a certain number of horses, covered with filk, but without saddles, into the court of the palace. However I thought nothing so extraordinary as to see such a number of the grandees cross the court in their return from the feast, amidst a vast crowd of spectators. During the course of this festival also, which lasts for several days, they present each other with eggs: The Maer-Egg pres- sefjeldaar is even obliged to wait on the King with some adorned with gold and silver neatly painted, a present in very high esteem among them.

Upon the twenty third, we cele- brated the feast of Easter at our Director’s, and the next day the English Agent, with a numerous train, came to congratulate him thereupon. He was received after the usual manner, and it was late before they parted. We received several other visits the next day, which insensibly brought us on to the end of the month.

In the beginning of the month of April, Mr. Kaftelein had a present of young asparagus. It was even sold in the market the next day, but then you had not above fifty or seventy for a score of flowers. This asparagus is always dear at the beginning of the season, and there are few that buy them, but to make presents to such people of distinction as they sollicit. They sent us also some stalks and suckers of rhubarb, preserved in the gravy of lamb. They are very refreshing and laxative, of a delicious taste, and very much esteemed at this time of year.
1704. well known, where the King was to entertain the principal Lords of his court. They sat down to table at ten of the clock, and the feast lasted but half an hour; the viuitals were served up in gold and silver dihes, in which consists the great magnificence of the King of Persia; these dihes were all covered, to the number of two hundred, and they serve up as many again when there happens to be more company. Most of the Lords, invited upon this occasion, wear a sort of turban adorned with pearls and precious stomes; they call it Tba-eiff-timaer, and they are sometimes adorned with herons feathers of great beauty. They take them off when they are out of the hall where the feast is, and put on those they commonly have upon their heads: a servant carries it before them. During the time of this festival, these Lords appear with extraordinary magnificence, and especially upon this day, when every one is seen in new clothes. Not far from the place where the King gave this feast there were twelve of his led-horses richly caparisoned; their housings and saddles were fet with pearls and precious stones, and their bridles were of maffy gold. They were tied to silken halters which hung upon the ground, but care was to be taken how you trod upon them. Seven of these horses were white, but had a part of their body, the tail, and the feet stained of a red or an orange colour. I could not get near to look at them till I had given something to those who had the care of them. They had a great carpet spread by them, upon which sat a gentleman who had the immediate care of them; and by him was a great golden hammer wherewith they were shod, and a trough of the same metal. But I could not, even for money, get into the hall where the feast was, and was obliged to take up with a place where I saw every thing pass by. During this festival there are great presents made to the King, and particularly by the Grandees of the court, the baffles and governors of places; their presents consist of rich goods, purses of gold, horses, camels, and mules; which are carried and conducted separately by citizens who are employed for that purpose by the King's express order. Around the great square of the palace they, at the same time, carry ten or a dozen veiheels full of straw, hanging by the end of certain poles, in token of a victory they formerly obtained over the Aesbeck Tartars; thus they give out, and then they lead a certain number of horses, covered with sills, but without saddles, into the court of the palace. However I thought nothing so extraordinary as to see such a number of the grandees cross the court in their return from the feast, amidst a vast crowd of spectators. During the course of this festival also, which lasts for several days, they present each other with eggs: The Maaer-eggs presented are even obliged to wait on the King with some adorned with gold and silver neatly painted, a present in very high esteem among them.

Upon the twenty third, we celebrated the feast of Easter at our Director's, and the next day the English Agent, with a numerous train, came to congratulate him thereupon. He was received after the usual manner, and it was late before they parted. We received several other visits the next day, which insensibly brought us on to the end of the month.

In the beginning of the month of April, Mr. Kaffelein had a present of young asparagus. It was even sold in the market the next day, but then you had not above sixty or seventy for a score of florins. This asparagus is always dear at the beginning of the season, and there are few that buy them, but to make presents to such people of distinction as they solicit. They sent us also some stalks and suckers of rhubarb, preferred in the gravy of lamb. They are very refreshing and laxative, of a delicious taste, and very much esteemed at this time of year.
The leaves of them are curled, green, yellow, and reddish, with a white stalk, inclining to the yellow; some of them are also of a fine red, and two or three inches in circumference: these stalks are for the most part a foot and a foot and half long, and they eat only the tender part of the belt; when they begin to shoot up, they cover them with earth, like asparagus, and that makes them grow big. They are cultivated for the King's table, in the neighbourhood of the town of Luer, whose governor is obliged annually to make him a present of some. The leaf of this is two or three fathom in circumference, and the root as well as itself, is like that of the common rhubarb, but it has no strength like what grows in the country of Usbek, between China and Muscovy. The Persians eat the tender parts of these young stalks raw with salt and pepper, as the Italians eat the suckers of artichokes; the taste of them is hot and biting, and very pleasant: of the same they also make a syrup which is very refreshing. I had the curiosity to draw this plant with its leaves and root, and I have met with leaves of a foot and an half long, and even some larger. The root of this had four slips, grey and mottled: they sent me from Julfa, where it had been nineteen years in the ground. On one side of this plant I have also drawn a certain fruit which the Persians call Badensoon, and the Europeans, Peckjesfochije. It is of a purple and sometimes white, commonly of the size of a cucumber, but sometimes as big again. It is excellent in broth, fried in butter, and several other ways. They transplant the shrub that bears it, when very young, and the fruit is the better for it: the blossom of it is white, purple and yellow, and it usually shoots a foot and an half out of the ground, with several small branches, the weight of whose fruit bend them down to the earth: you have one of these in number 73, together with the preceding plant. The letter A distinguishes the leaves of rhubarb; B the root; and C the Peckjefochije.

Upon the seventh of this month, at Julfa, there fell an heavy rain, with hail which covered all the country, tho' at the same time they hardly felt any thing of the kind in the city; an accident which had not happened for many years before. All the rest of the month we had wind, rain, and very uncertain weather.

Upon the fiftteenth, they celebrated the festival of Bairam-korbat or Feast of the Sacrifice of Abraham. Mr. Ka-the Saeclein, who knew my curiosity, ordered his master of the horse and two others of his servants to wait on me on horseback to the place designed for this purpose. The King's music had been heard the evening before, as the sun went down, and continued till the same hour of the next day, the musicians who are in great number, relieving each other by turns. At seven in the morning I went to the Chiaer-bag, where the King was to pass as he crossed the gardens, and he appeared in half an hour's time at the head of a train of Lords, above two hundred of them with the rich turbans we formerly mentioned. I had placed my self in the middle of the way, where this Prince was to pass, and having seen him, and his train, I galloped away to Babareek, a Persian burial ground, the place where the ceremony was to be performed, a good half league out of the city. It consists of no more than the bare sacrifice of a male camel, without any defect; if any it had it would be accounted impure. The Darogga or Bailiff of the city, and sometimes the King himself, gives him the first blow with a great lance, after which they dispatch him with sabres and knives. After this they cut him up into pieces, and divide him among the officers of the several districts of the city; and as every one is eager to have his share, disorders arise,
1704. sometimes many remain dead on the
spot, as it happened that day; for
every one goes armed either with
sabres or clubs, and there is such
a throng of horsemen it is impossi-
ble to move. For my part, I got
away one of the first, and returned
to the Chian-barg to see this mul-
titude go back again to the city.
At length when every one had got
what share he could of the sacri-
ifice, they returned in triumph, the
officers at the head of those in their
district, jumping and dancing sword
in hand, and with their clubs aloft,
bawling out, and striking upon ba-
soms and small drums. The first
piece that is cut off from this ca-
mel is for the King, and they car-
ry it to the palace upon the point
of a spear. For the rest, the re-
turn was very orderly, and with
great tokens of joy. First there ap-
peared the King’s guards, and then
the Prince himself on horseback,
under a great parasol, to shelter him
from the sun-beams, and followed
by the Lords of the court, and they
by twelve of his Majesty’s led-horses
and four elephants. There were in
all about one hundred thousand per-
sons on foot and on horseback, be-
sides those that were on the tops of
houses. I was the only European
that appeared drest after our mode.
As soon as the King drew near they
cleared the way for him by laying
it thick on with the cudgel, so that
many fell into the water with their
horses; others were quite over-
powered with blows, and I went
home very much fatigued: and yet
all was over before eleven in the
morning, notwithstanding they had
crossed the town in form and order
in their return. For ten days be-
fore this sacrifice they had led this
camel up and down the town co-
vered with thorns or the like, and
preceded by a lance, an ax, and
many instruments,

\begin{quote}
Abundance of sheep killed.
\end{quote}

That day they kill and eat above
fifty thousand sheep at Ispaban, and
those who have the very good for-
tune to get a piece of the camel,
are sure to dress it with their mut-
ton; tho’ others make a rellick of
it, and keep it all the year round. 1704.
For the rest, it is very certain, that
they every day in this city consume
ten or twelve thousand sheep and
goats, and that every body is oblig-
ed to eat mutton upon this day. I
met such prodigious flocks of them
some days before, that I had much
ado to get clear of them. They
here also eat an inconceivable num-
ber of lambs, from twenty to twen-
ty five or thirty days old. This be-
gins in the month of November, and
lasts till the months of April and
May, and particularly among people
of rank. The price of these lambs
is commonly seven, eight, or nine
mercades, seven of which go to a
crown of our money; and they
weigh from six to twelve pounds.
They are one of the greatest dain-
ties of Persia, and especially among
the better sort, who never eat beef,
but leave it to the meaner and poor
people, as well as the buffaloe which
is also publickly sold.

Some days after this festival the
King went into the country with his mistresses, and diverted himself
by seeing some elephants swim his mis-
eries a river which had been swoln
in an extraordinary manner by the
rains that had lately fallen.

Upon the twenty third they held the
festival of Aidikader, a day up-
on which the Persians will have it
that Mohammed declared to the peo-
ple, That Ali was to be his successor,
and enjoined them to acknowledge
him as such. They say this was
transacted in Arabia the Happy, near
the village of Skomkadier, whence
they derive the name of this festi-
val, which is observed by the Per-
sians only, the other Mohammedans
not bearing the mention of it.

At this time the trees began to
shoot, and the month concluded
with heavy rains, which damaged
some houses and washed away oth-
ers, which is not at all to be
wondered at; for the masons work
of this country is like a sponge, and
the houses are flat at top, so that it
is impossible to keep them dry when
it rains.

With
With May the weather began to recover itself; and I went into the country with Mr. Kaflelein designing to follow the course of the river, but it had so drowned its banks because of the rains which had fallen some time before, that we were obliged to strike across the country, by a road which in two hours' time carried us to a pleasure-house called Goeije, to the eastward of the city, upon the river of Zendiree. It has a large garden full of fens and fruit-trees; and here several that have been sent by the East-India company have stopped upon their arrival at, and departure from Istahan. This house has several apartments, some of which begin to run to ruin, and the neighbourhood about it is very pleasant. In this garden there are four great fena-
trees, at a small distance from each other, which cover a pavilion which you go up to by some steps. These trees are short, with a thick trunk, and two of them are sixteen foot in circumference. They hold them to be very antient, and tell you that Tamerlane once repos'd himself under the shade of their branches.

We thought here to have met with some game, but it suddenly coming on to rain we were glad to go back to Julfa where we staid till it was night. The following day the weather was very inconstant, and I was taken with an intermitting fever; I had only some few fits of it, but they weakened me to that degree, that I was sensible of the ill effects of them quite to the end of the month.

C H A P. XL.

Description of Istahan, and of what is most remarkable in that city, and the neighbourhood about it.

Istahan is a city of very great extent, and especially if you take the suburbs; and yet it does not make any great figure from without, whether with regard to molehills, towers, or large buildings, because it is generally shaded by trees in the summer. For this reason I staid till it was winter to draw a view of it, and even then I could do it but imperfectly because of the number of palm-trees, pines, fens, and cypresses which are ever green, and so high and so thick of leaves as to charm the eye. All the buildings of this city are grey, with platforms or terraces at top. There is no distinguish ing the wall which divides the city from the suburbs, because the houses are so close together there is no perceiving any division. All this makes it a difficult task to draw a view of this city, and the rather as it stands upon a level or plain, so that I was obliged to pitch upon an eminence a league from the town, from whence I saw Julfa, which is on the other side of the town, the city and all its dependences, besides the villages and gardens that surround it, and which take up a very great extent of country, the whole encompassed with mountains. That which is the nearest of all is a league and an half to the southward, and called Kast-joffa. Upon the side of this mountain you see a house built by King Suliman, the father of the present King, and therein are many fine apartments, whence you have a prospect of the city and country about it, a plantation of all sorts of trees, and a full of water which comes down from the mountains. This building is called Tagte Sullemoon, or the throne of
of Suliman, and they were repairing it when I was in these parts. You have a representation of it above, such as it appears from the foot of the hill. The other mountains are much further distant from the city, which stands in a plain of about twenty-five leagues from east to west. One would even say it was boundles to the eastward in particular, as well as the road to Shiraz, upon which you meet with many fine villages, and pleasant gardens; I travelled six leagues to the eastward and could perceive no bounds. It is also full six leagues broad.

This city has ten gates, which are all open and without any guard. In order to go round it, I went to the gate of Hassain-abat, so called from a certain person of great fame, who was one of the first who began to build on that side; from thence you go to that of Douzas-ekkaroon, or the Gate of the Deaf, this part having been formerly inhabited by deaf people. You leave it on the left hand to go through the bazaars, which are a quarter of a league from the former. The gate of Seyd-zech-nejed is at a like distance, and on the east-side of the town, where there is a double wall, the outermost of which is very low, and beyond which there is nothing but tombs and no houses. From this you go on to the gate Shoobarn, to the westward, from whence, at the same distance, you see that of Teget-thee. The canal which goes round a part of the city to the westward, quite to the gate of Karoon, which we have mentioned, rises or has its spring from this place. A quarter of a league from thence you have the gate of Dairidet, and at an equal
equal distance from Darwasjnow, or
the New-gate. Then the gate of
Darwarj Lamboen, and then that
of Douiet, or Prosperity, which is
that of the Chiaer-baeg. The tenth
is that of Hafishe near the gate of
the kitchen of the royal palace.
When I had got round again to the
gate of Hassan-abaet, whence I set
out, I looked at my watch, and
found I had been two hours and an
half in going from gate to gate.
They are all built of earth and with-
out any works for defence, and the
folds of the gates themselves are very
clumsy and secured by iron plates.

This city is divided within the
walls into twenty two principal
parts or wards, seventeen of which
bear the name of Mamber-olla-fee or
of Namer-bolladers, and the five oth-
ers that of Heiderrie; they are
like the Nicobli and the Cassellani
at Venice. These seventeen parts or
wards of the division have each of
them a particular name; the first
is called Bagaaet, or the Ward of
Gardens; because in the reign of
Abbas the first it contained nothing
but gardens: the second Kerton, or
the Ward of the Drives; the third Dab-
bettin, or of the Fruit-house of Me-
lous: the fourth Say-id Agmed-joen,
so called from one of their Doctors:
the fifth Letteer, the etymology of
which is unknown: the sixth Bajaer-
Agaet, or the Duck-market: the se-
venth Sbaer-joa Kota, or the Cross-
way of Kota; the eighth Seltoen-
jenfberie, from a Prince of that
name: the ninth Namo-jufig, or the
three incompatibles: the tenth Shoeb-
bar, the derivation of which I can-
not tell: the eleventh Derre-Babba-
Kafjin, or the District of the Father
Kafjin: the twelfth Goude Mazjfeet-
beek: the thirteenth Golbaer, or rich
in flowers: the fourteenth Meyden-
mier, or the District or ward of the
square of Mier, from one of their
Doctors: the fifteenth Niema-woort;
the meaning of which I know not:
the sixteenth Derre-koeck, or Place of
Plaistore. I am ignorant of the name
of the seventeenth. The four fol-
lowing are of the division of the
Heyderries; the first of them is cal-
led Maleynow, or the New Part:
the Derredof, or the Foraken: the
third Hoefsin-ja, or the District
of the Churchmen: and the fourth
Togt-frie, or of the Keeper of the
Poultry.

The chief parts of the same ge-
eral divisions without the walls are
to the number of four; the first is
called Abbas Abaet, founded by Ab-
bas the Great. This is the most
considerable of the out-parts, and
here live none but people of dis-
tinction; nor indeed is there any
difference made between this and
those within the walls: it is to the
westward: the second is Siems-Abat,
so called from its founder: the
third Bied-Abbat, and the fourth
Tiib-reen. There are two besides
these which belong to the division
of Namer-olla-bie, the first of which
is called Sheigj-joeffius-jibenna, or the
Mason of old Joseb, otherwise cal-
ced the District of Sheig-Sebbmaas,
and Tewawaii. Under these parts
are comprehended several smaller
subdivisions, which are all distin-
guished by particular names. These
two great divisions always oppose
each other in every thing, and this
is chiefly remarkable upon days
when they have processions, upon
great festivals, and in public places:
as and they never submit to each oth-
ner upon these occasions, they ne-
ever fail to commit disorders, and
some of them are often left dead
upon the spot; this we shall take
notice of hereafter. It is said that
the origin of this emulation, or en-
mity rather, is derived from two
ancient villages, that formerly joined
to each other, and that one of them
belonged to the Heiderries, and the
other to the Namer-olla-bie, names
since assumed by the two parties.

This city was at first called Hipsap-
ban, Jpsaban, or Jppaban, and was
no more than any ordinary town
till the reign of Abbas the Great,
and after he had conquered Laer
and Ormus, when he forsook Caxbin
and
1704. and Sultania to reside at Isphan.

The chief cause of this change was the advantageous situation of this city, which is now become the capital of the Kingdom, and seat of the Monarchs of Persia. It is in the province of Irak, part of the ancient Parthia, and in the latitude of 32 degrees 45 minutes of the northern hemisphere.

Persia. This country in general goes by the name of Persia, a great and famous Kingdom of Asia surrounded by the Caspian sea, Zagathoy, Tartary, the empire of the Mogol, the sea of India, the gulf of Persia, Arabia the Dejart and Turkey.

The King's palace. The King's palace is three quarters of a league in circumference, and has six gates, the chief of which is called Ali Kapie, or the Gate of Ali: the second Haram Kapie, or the Gate of the Seraglio; both of them come into the Meydow or great square, which is to the northward: the third is called Meerbeg-Kapie, or the Gate of the Kitchen, because all the victuals that are served up at the King's table go through that; the fourth Ghandag-Kapie, thro' which you go into the gardens of the palace; tho' that is what nobody is allowed to do but the King himself, and the Kapaters or eunuchs that have the guard of his women; this gate leads into the Chiiser-baeg: the fifth Ghajat-genna Kapie, or the Gate of Tavlers, because those in his Majesty's service have their abode there: the sixth Ghasma Kapie, or the Secretary's Gate: these two last come into the town to the northward. Most of the Grandees of the kingdom go into the palace through those gates when the King gives them audience, and particularly through the two first.

The citadel. The citadel, which they call Tabarah, is about half a league in circumference, and extends in length, eastward, quite into the city, and to the southward meets the wall of the same. It has a lofty mud wall, flanked with ugly towers, upon which there are some pieces of cannon mounted; but they dare not discharge them, for fear of throwing down the wall, which is in so wretched a condition that you may see through it in several places. They do not suffer strangers to go into it, but I am persuaded the reason is because it is in a more ruinous condition within than it is without; there is however a good deal of room and convenience within it. As for what remains to be said of the rest of the city, we shall declare ourselves concerning it when we have gone through the description of it, to the end that what we have to add may be the better understood.

Now here follows the description of it, such as it is represented in number 74, and as it appears from the southward. The figure [1] distinguishes a mountain; [2] the new royal garden, which I saw begun; it is of great extent; [3] the river of Zoramer; [4] the house of one of the chief Armenian merchants of Jufa; [5] the Dominicans church of the same place; [6] the church of St. John belonging to the Armenians; [7] the episcopal church of the same, with a small tower; [8] the market church; [9] the church of St. Mary, all this in Jufa; [10] the bridge of Alleverdi-Khan; [11] Mauvat or the royal moat; [12] that of Torfolia, one of their Doctors; [13] Menax-Kambristse, which is a lofty stone tower; [14] Keila Menax, or the pillar of beards heads; [15] Tabareek or the citadel; [16] Hazadar-berepp or the great royal garden; [17] and [18] the chief tombs belonging to the Persians, and their burial place called Baboroek; [19] the Christian place of burial; [20] the royal river; [21] the mountains of Choree, in part covered with snow; [22] that of Tafilia, a village of that name. The Meydow, which is one of the great chief ornaments of this city, is a great square or market-place which is seven hundred and ten paces long, from east to west; and two hundred and ten broad from north to south.
1704. It is to the southward of the royal palace, and to the northward of the Nachtre-chone, a building for the King's mutick. It consists of two lofty galleries distinct from each other, and between them you see the imperial gate, of a fine architecture, lofty, and built of fine stones, through which you go into the Bazar. Upon this gate you see a representation of the battle between King Abbas and the Usbeck-Tartars; it is in painting, by an artist of the country. Above it there is a striking clock, the only one in all Persia, and on the same side you have the pavilion of the machines or of the clock, which moves some wooden puppets in a wheel, not worthy to be seen by an European. A little farther to the eastward you come to the moquette of Shab-lof-olla, so called from one of their doctors, whom they reckon in the number of their saints. It is one of the chief in all the city, and is adorned with a fine dome, covered on the out-side with green and blue stones incrustated with gold, and with a pyramid, upon which there are three balls of the same metal. The front door comes into the great square, and you ascend to it by several steps; it is round, and forty paces in diameter, as I was assured by one I had desired to measure it; for it is unlawful for Christians to go into it.

The royal moquette called Shab-mazy, is on the west-side of this square, and is the most considerable in all Isfahan. It has a dome like the former, and two doors in front, on each side of which there is a pillar; they are more lofty than the moquette itself, the whole of green and blue, with an incrustation of gold, very charming to the sight. About it you see several Persian characters in white, and the dome has two columns. This moquette is round like the former, and is eighty-five paces in diameter. There is a fine fountain or basin in the court opposite to the entrance, and to say the truth of the matter, these two moquetes are the greatest ornaments of the meydoen or great square. The gate of Ali-kapi is but two hundred and sixty-two paces from this last moquette, and the whole square is surrounded with lofty buildings, and with porticoes full of shops and artisans. Thoseth in the service of his Majesty are on the side of the court; and besides all this, the greatest part of this square is full of tents, where they expose all sorts of things to sale; but they pack up their goods at night and leave a watch behind, which go the rounds in the night with dogs. Most of the buildings there are shaded with elms, and you there continually see a prodigious concourse of people, and among the rest, a great number of persons of quality going and coming from court. You have also here numbers of buffoons and mountebanks, but they sell no medicines, and do no more than divert the people with idle stories, which they are paid for by their hearers and spectators. Some of them have apes and monkeys, which play a thousand tricks to draw the people about them; for there is no nation under the sun so fond of the bagatelle as the Persians, and their coffee-houses, bazaars, and the like, are accordingly full of these buffoons. In the middle of this square or marketplace there is a large and lofty pillar for publick sports, and upon which they commonly fix the prize which usually consists of a golden cup or some such thing; the parties that contend for it, ride by it on full speed, and turning the body, at once fend away their dart or arrow, and stop at once; but none are allowed this but persons of distinction and men of the sword; and he that wins the prize lays hold on it, and puts it upon his head in token of victory; the King also makes him a present, more or less, according to the value he has for him; but it is commonly a golden quiver full of arrows. But these sports have been but little in vogue since the accession of the present King, whose inclinations carry him another way, and
are very different from those of his predecessors, under whom this pillar was erected. In former days they never failed to have a tournament upon the festival of Newroes or of the new solar year, a solemnity strictly observed by the ancient Kings of Persia, and, according to the annals of this country, even in the days of Darius. Upon these occasions they always struck and moved off the tents that usually stand here, and ploughed the ground with oxen twenty days before hand. The King was seated upon a kind of gallery or theatre, called Talael, over the gate of Ali-kapi, which is very lofty, and of a fine architecture. The races being over, there came on wrestlers and rope-dancers, and then they had fights of bulls and rams. Upon these occasions they had also jugglers, which the King at this day will no longer admit of, the directors of his conscience having informed him the toleration of them is sinful and immoral; nor do they any longer allow of dancing women and courtezans, who formerly abounded on all sides.

You have a representation of the Meyden or the great market-place in number 75. This first view was taken from the side of the house for the King's musick. The letter A distinguishes the talael or the theatre, over the gate of Ali-kapi: B, the royal moch: C, that of Shig-loo-alla: D, the Wagtis-sui-aet, or the pavilion of machines. The tents are there also represented, and the pillar for races. The second view represented in number 76, was taken from the east near the royal moch. The letter A distinguishes the Talael, Ali-kapi: B, the moch of Shig-loo-lla: C, the pavilion of machines: D, the house of musical instruments: E, the Derre-bar-ram, or the gate of the Seraglio, of which you do not see much. The pillar is there in the middle of the square. Along the portico of the palace there runs a balustrade of painted wood, on each side; this balustrade contains one hundred and nineteen pieces of small cannon 1704, whose carriages are much out of repair, and especially the wheels. There is a canal by these cannon, which were brought from Ormus, in the reign of Abbas, who made himself master of the place by the affiancement of the English.

You go into the palace by the gate of Ali-kapi, which is finely built, and ten paces broad; it is more in depth, with a lofty vault or arcade, with pretty niches on the sides of the wall. When you are got thro' it, you see lofty stone walls between which you get to the buildings and garden; the gate of the Haram is nearly like this; it was built while I was here, and gilt in the front. The first time I was at court, in the absence of the King and his women, I went through a gallery between these walls, and thought the entrance of it quite royal. From thence I went to the new Seraglio of the women, which is full of small magnificent apartments, with walls white without and painted with flowers. At the end of this building on the right-hand, there is a great apartment of the neatest sort, surrounded with rooms, which were then not finished, and upon which they were then at work. From thence you go into the hall of Tiul-setton, or of the forty pillars, where the King usually gives audience to foreign ministers; and twenty of these columns are of wood painted and gilt. This hall is very spacious, and the walls of it are blue adorned with flowers and foliages. You here see also some figures of Europeans, dressed after the Spanish manner, and otherwise, and eight other pillars in the back part of this building, four of a side, and four other in an apartment which was shut up. Before this apartment there is a great court full of fountains, and over-against it another smaller, behind which is the Seraglio, and between both a fine balao or fish-pond lined with great stones, with which also the court itself is paved. This balao is one hundred and eighty
with them is the *Kamen-fie*, a kind of violin. They have also the *Stenna* or hautbois; several sorts of flutes; the harp or the *Morgen*, a kind of a flat copper bason, upon which they strike and make a great noise. Besides all these they have several other instruments we know nothing of in our parts.

The chief exercises of this nation *Chisfexar* are riding and darting the *Aimer* or cane; shooting with the bow, and fowling; and their usual pastimes are tobacco and conversation. They are moreover great lovers of chefs, and play at it perfectly well.

Having thus said all we have to observe concerning the *Mey-deen* or great market-place; let us go to the *Chisier-baag*, or the fine alley or walk of *Ispahun*, which signifies also *bag* the four gardens, and is one of the principal ornaments of this capital. You go to it by the gate of *Dawr-woofey-doulet* or of *Prosperity*, built by *Abbas* the great, to the south. This Prince ordered some of his councilors of state, to build some houses at their own expense, at the entrance into these gardens along this fine walk. One of these Lords, called *Genshe Ali Khan*, accordingly erected a building in form of a tower, against one of the walks that runs along the river; the rest followed this example, and strove to out-do each other in adorning it with fine stone buildings, and among the rest with a pavilion at the entrance, whence the King as he came out of the gardens might see all these edifices.

At the distance of two hundred and fifty paces from the gate of the city, as you go along by these gardens, you see two buildings opposite to each other, with great gates that go into the gardens, and in the middle of this alley is a large octagon bason; two other buildings like these at three hundred and thirty eight paces from thence, with a square bason, and one hundred and seventy paces farther you come to a cross way, extending to the walls of the gardens. This cross-way is full of benches.
1704, benches, wooden-chairs, and tables, and here in the evening you always see a great number of Persians, smoking and drinking coffee; the ground here has a slope, where there are trees which afford the finest shade in the world; and accordingly it is almost always thronged with people on foot, and on horseback, who there divert themselves with racing and several other exercises. As you go still farther you come to a great stone-gate, belonging to one of these gardens, and a little farther is two other buildings, where they retire to smoke, and a little farther another cross-way; then two buildings like the former, and between them a square bason. Here they smoke also and drink coffee, and here you have a great number of bucklers, and bows and arrows, belonging to the Memor-bollades and the Heyderries we have mentioned before: At some distance from hence there is another octagon bason, which butts upon a way which is crossed by a fine river planted on each side with fena's. The great road extends above two hundred paces beyond this along the palace and the royal garden, where there is a kind of menagerie.

The bridge of Alla-wardi Khan, the name of its founder, is but eighty paces from hence. The road near it is one thousand seven hundred and fifty one paces long, and sixty eight broad, adorned on each side with fena's planted in the reign of Abbas the great, above one hundred years ago. The part where these trees are planted is five paces broad, and is raised one foot and an half above the way or road itself, which is full of sand. This raised way which runs between the wall of the garden and these trees is paved with large brick, wherewith also the canal that crosses the Chiter-baag is lined. On the sides of these trees which are regularly planted at the distance of ten foot from each other, is a conveyance to water them.

The bridge of Alla-wardi Khan is upon the river of Zenderoot, five hundred and forty paces long and seventeen broad, and built of large stones. It has thirty three arches, some of which stand upon sand, which is very hard in this place, and under them the water runs when it is high. There are ninety three niches upon this bridge, some of which are flopped up and some of them open, and the two ends are flanked by four towers. There are parapet walls of brick, with holes throughout the whole length from the one end to the other, so that you have here the finest sight in the world, together with pretty summer houset upon it at the two ends. Four hundred and sixteen paces from this bridge, there is a water-fall received by a bason sixty paces long and forty paces broad, and near this fall there are eleven large stone steps in a ruinous state, and not far off a great road, trees, and a slope-way, which afterwards becomes level. At some distance from hence you see two other houset of pleasure, and afterwards twelve others, two and two, at nearly an equal distance from each other, quite to the end of this fine alley or way, which is every where of the same breadth, and bounded by the King's great garden, which extends from the water-fall quite hither. There are on each hand one hundred and forty five fena's, and some mulberry-trees between them, and from the end of the bridge to that of the alley is two thousand and forty five paces, to which if you add the length of the bridge itself, which is five hundred and forty, and the way on this side which is one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, you will have in all four thousand three hundred and thirty six paces. This magnificent alley, butts, as we have already observed, upon the King's great garden, where there is a fine building painted without like the rest, and adorned with leafy trees and flowers and foliages. The entrance into the garden is delightful: the middle walk is adorned with a fine canal, with a sloping fall and several jets.
jets of water. This garden is extremely spacious, is full of fine walks and fruit-trees, which have a very charming effect; tho' it would be easy to heighten it with other ornaments. It is two thousand two hundred and eighty paces in length from north to south, and one thousand five hundred and forty-five paces in breadth from east to west; they call it Hasen-berich or the garden of a thousand paces. You have here several lofty towers of earth, which serve for dove-houses, with the dung of which they manure their melon grounds.

In number 77, you have the first representation of Chiaer-baag, taken from the west; it was drawn by the side of the river of Zendervat or Zanjandarvet, which rises from great springs or wells, called Cher-tesfme Aes, or the source of springs. This place is in mountains, five days to the westward of Isphahan. There are people who give it two places to spring from, the first of which is but three days from this capital, in the village of Dambina, and the second where we have already said it to be; for the rest it loses itself three days to the eastward of Isphahan in a marthy plain called Gou-bonie. In this representation every thing that is to be seen is distinguished by figures; for example, number 1 points out the gardens which run along the fine alley or walk of the Chiaer-baag, with the way that leads to the bridge; 2 the bridge of Adamerd-khan; 3 a building erected in the reign of King Sehit, to be an abode for a devisor who had been sent for from India, and who refused to come; 4 a house where they wash the bodies of the dead; 5 the buildings of the Chiaer-baag; 6 that of Gou-sib alli-Khan; 7 a dove-house; 8 the river of Zendervat.

The second prospect taken is the Chiaer-baag it self near the bridge in number 78. The letter A distinguishes the King's garden; B, the bridge; C, the house where they wash the bodies of the dead; D, the river; E, the mountains of 1704. Koe-staifi. The other buildings are represented to the right and left as they are in the Chiaer-baag.

The third representation was taken from the bridge, on the side where the garden gate is; where you see a tower to gather the wind to refresh the lodgings in summer, by means of certain pipes which come out of the roof and convey the air into the chambers. The fountain and the walks which go towards the building on the side of the city-gate on the left hand, and to the right of the wall of the gardens of the royal palace. This prospect is in number 79.

The fourth, represented in number 80, was taken from the other end of the bridge, and shews the way beyond it, with the buildings to the right and left; the water-fall and the basin, and the way which goes to the end of the building of the King's great garden.

The fifth is from the other end, and in number 81, shews the front of the building of this garden, and the canal which runs by the front gate.

The bridge of Shiras is also a bridge of fine building, a quarter of a league from the gate of Hasen-abace whole name it bears. It is on the east side of the city, and one hundred and eighty eight paces long by sixteen broad; it is built with free-stone, and has on each side forty two niches some of which are open, and some not. It has twenty arches under which the river runs, when it is high, and eight others on the sides, five to the right and to the left. The building on the middle of this bridge is open on each side, and you go through it to go to the bridge above. To the eastward which is the most proper situation for drawing of this bridge before its arches, you see a fine smooth way, which is eighteen foot broad. From hence, twelve steps, you go down to the river, when it happens to be low, which almost always is in summer, so that horses ford it with very great ease;
1704. ease; this is the more surprizing as
this river is sometimes so full and
rapid, that it throws down and sweeps
away whole houses, as happened in
the month of April of the year 1699.
These steps we have been speaking
of are divided into nineteen parts,
separated from each other by a pas-
fage or canal through which the
river runs; but it happens that some
of these divisions have but seven or
eight steps, and there is a fine build-
ing upon this bridge, under which
they walk, and cross it. That
which appears at the foot of the
bridge, serves for the front gate of
the King's garden on the city side;
there is on the other side another
like it, concerning which we shall
speak hereafter. This bridge is re-
presented in number 82. The fi-
gure [1] distinguishes the bridge in
general; [2] the garden of Bag-
the river of Zendervet. There is no
thing more pleasing to the sight than
the view to the eastward from upon
this bridge; and in the evening you
see an infinite number of persons of
both sexes, taking the air by the
river side, near the water-fall, and
in the fine way that runs along the
arches of the bridge, some on horse-
back, some on foot, smoking and
drinking coffee, which they there
find ready prepared for them. The
garden of Sadet-abad is to the south-
east of the city, and extends quite
to the westward of this bridge, so
that it contains a vast quantity of
ground; it has a fine Haram or fe-
raglio built of stone, by the river
side, where there is also another
bridge with a rail or balustrade in-
stead of a parapet; it stands opposite
to a garden, which you go into by
crossing it: This bridge has seventeen
arches. There was a loftier build-
1704. Ing above this feraglio, which was burnt this summer while the King was there. On one side of this building you see a fine *Talael, where his Majesty gives audience to foreign ministers, behind which there is a magnificent building forty paces long, by thirty three broad, and the Talael itself is thirty-fix by forty-two, with two steps in front, each a foot and a half high; in the middle there is a marble basin which is eight paces by fix. Going still farther, you come to a place raised three foot without steps, and another like it a little farther, on the side of the walls of the building from whence you go into the apartments, and here you have a basin of four paces by fix. Upon the walls are fix pictures in niches, as big as the life; they are of men and women, and four of them are represented in the Spanish habit, with each a glass of wine in the hand. You have here also two women painted on the two walls, beside each other, one after the Spanish manner, and one dressed after the ancient manner; but they are very indifferently done. The rest is all gilt from top to bottom, and adorned with flowers, foliages, and animals, and with twenty columns painted after the same manner, and striped with blue and red, which has an effect pretty enough. You have the whole in number 83, where the Talael is distinguished by the letter A, the Haram or feraglio by B, the bridge by C, and the river by D. When the King is there he stops the course

PONT ZIARESTON.

Vol. I. Fff of
1704. of the river by wooden dykes in the
1704. canals or openings of the bridge of
Hassan-Abbeet, to bring the water to
run by the Talata, near which there
are two or three poor vesseles in which
he diverts himself with rowing with
his concubines.

I drew another prospect from a lofty
summer-houfe in the garden, from
whence you have a prospect of the
bridge of the Chieber-bag, you have
it in number 84; the letter A, dif-
finiguishes the feraglio; B, the bridge
which answers to the garden, on the
other side; C, that of the Chieber-
bag; D, the river, and another
bridge at a greater distance from
the city; it is called Sharafton and
has ten arches, and a large building
on one side thro’ which you go to
cross it. The prospect here, on all
sides is delightful and the river full of
large rocks around which it sweeps.
Here I would add that at the di-
fance of five days to the south weft
of Isabhan, upon a lofty flat hill you
meet with the source of the Aeb-chier-
rav, whose water is most excellent
and produces good fish especially
trouws. It falls into the Euphrates.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the Kings of Persia, of their Affairs of State, and of the
great Officers of the Crown.

The monarchy of this great
kingdom is one of the most
definitive, and most absolute in the
world; the King knows no rule for
his conduct but his will, except with
regard to religious matters, which
they lay he dares not alter; he sove-
ereignly disposes of the lives and goods
of his subjects, of what quality or
condition ever. He is born in
the feraglio, which is guarded by
black eunuchs within, and by white
without, and there is brought up be-
tween four walls without education,
and without the least knowledge of
what is stirring in the world, like a
plant that languishes upon the face
of the earth, when deprived of the
vivifying heat of the sun. When
he has attained a certain age, they
give him a black eunuch, who is to
be his pedagogue; and teaches him
to read and to write; he instruits
him also in the Mohammedan faith
and law, and how to purify himself,
to wash, to pray, and to fast. Nor
does he fail at the same time to
fill his head with the great actions
and miracles of their prophet and
the twelve Imams, and to inspire
him with an implacable hatred of
the Mohammedan Turks, and the
Mogul, whom the Persians conternn
and curfe, thinking thereby they do
a meritorious action, and render an
acceptable service unto God; but
they take no manner of care to in-
sstruct him in history and politics,
nor to fire him with a love of vir-
tue; on the contrary, to take him
off from all sorts of useful reflection,
they abandon him to women, and
indulge him in every kind of fen-
suality from his most tender years. Not
satisfied with thus debauching and
perverving his mind, they make
him chew opium, and drink Kackmary
or Poppy-water, into which they put
amber and other ingredients which
excite to lust, and charm for a time
with ravishing ideas or visions, but
at length sink him into an absolute
insensibility. Thus it is that he
pauses his days till the death of his
father, when they take him from
out of the Seraglio or Haram, to
seat him upon the throne, which of
right belongs to him by succession
or by will. Then come all the court
and throwing themselves at his feet,
give
give him signs of submission. At first surprized at all he sees, he beholds the scene as a dream, not able to conceive what can be the meaning of so great a change; but by degrees he becomes accustomed to it. At last, he begins to have some idea of himself, and every one strives to please him and to obtain a share of his favour; but no one thinks of giving him any good advice or in the least to open his eyes; on the contrary their endeavor is to keep him locked up in such ignorance as may best turn to account; and when the Attentuad-doubt, who is his first minister, has any favour to ask of him, which he never fails to palliate under the specious appearance of public good, he takes his time when the King is in a good humour, and with the pipe in his mouth, and always obtains whatever he wants, either for himself or his friends, by filling himself his Majesty's Carbasen or victim. But when he talks to him of affairs of state and such business as may require a particular attention, he is deaf, will lend no ear to him, and turns his thoughts upon such things as are pleasing and suitable to his humour and inclination: Nor does this minister ever perceive anything of this kind in his matter, but he changes the discourse and calls for delicious meats, and sends for the musicians and dancing women, that are kept on purpose at court; then he exhibits to him combats of bulls and rams, and diverts him by all the means he can contrive. He fees the combats and the other exercises from the Talaber over the gate of Ali-kapir, which looks upon the great square of the palace, and all this is much more pleasing to a young and unexperienced Prince, than the puzzling his brain with the affairs of his Empire. At last when he is weary of these amusements he withdraws into the Serraglio in quest of others, and whatever business has been proposed to his consideration is put off to another time. So that this first minister is obliged to repair twice a day to the door of his Majesty's apart-ment, to watch a favourable opportunity to open matters to him, or rather artfully, to draw the Prince into a consideration of the same, and as it were by accident, but he takes care that he is in a good humour; for if he did otherwise, and abruptly accost him with his business, he might incur his heavy indignation, even tho' the welfare of the whole empire depended upon what he had to say. Hence he seldom fails to wait on this Monarch when he goes abroad, when he sometimes has the good luck to find him in a disposition to lend him an ear. For the rest his pleasures know no interruption, and they pick out the finest maidens of Georgia and Armenia to put them into the Serraglio. And even when the King goes out on his sports, he for several leagues around, turns the men out of their houses, to have the pleasure of hunting or fishing, or otherwise diverting himself with their wives. The King that reigns at present has also given himself up to wine since he has been upon the throne, and drinks sometimes for whole days and nights together. And thus is it that these Princes dream away the first years of their reign, without any the least concern for the welfare of the state, or their own glory; and the grandees of the court eagerly lay hold on the opportunity thereby to enrich themselves and procure employment for their relations and friends. The governors of the provinces follow the example, and make up a purport every fort of rapine and extortion, not sparing even the revenue of the crown itself; and they do it with impunity by communicating part of their plunder with the grandees, who are in favour and possession of the King's ear. And these disorders prevail till the Prince has made choice of an able minister to stop the torrent of irregularity, and repress this licence. Then he begins to open his eyes, according to the gift nature has blessed him with, but he frequently relapses
1704. relapses again into debauchery, and
1704.
gives a scope to his vicious inclina-
tions. At length when he comes to
be thirty-five or forty years old, he
seems to retrieve himself from
his former state of infirmity; he
begins to reflect upon things, and
to turn his thoughts upon the busi-
ness of his empire, and to compre-
hend it, in proportion to the degree
of his natural sense. He in confe-
quence of this applies himself to
the regulation of what he discovers
to have been amiss in the youthful
years of his reign, and to provide
for the necessities of his great King-
dom; but it commonly happens that
he begins too late, death steps in
between him and his good designs,
and the flate sinks again into its for-
ter misery.

First minis
fer.

The first minister of this potent
Empire, as we have already observed,
is called the Attenaud-doulct, or the
support or director of the Empire, who
is also called Vifer-axen, or the great
porter of the Empire; as he almost
sustains the whole weight of the
Empire. This minister who is over-
whelmed with business, is exposed
to a thousand ugly accidents, be-
Sides that he must be continually
upon the watch, for fear he should
either be supplant or fall un-
der his master's ill opinion. Ac-
cordingly his chief study is to please
him, to secure to himself the af-
cendant over his mind, and to avoid
whatever might give him un-
 easefulness or unbrigage; with this view
he never fails to flatter him, to lift him
up above all the Princes upon earth,
and to throw a thick veil over every
thing that might help to open his
eyes, or discover to him the weak-
ness of the state. He even takes
very particular care to keep him in
utter ignorance, to hide from him or
at least to soften all disadvantageous
news, and above all immoderately
to exalt every the least advantage he
obtains over his enemies. By this
fort of policy it is, that the minister
is able to aggrandize his family, and
to raise his friends to the first pofts
of his Empire. Nor does he ever want
a pretence for ruining some and
advancing others, and this is the
easier for him to do, because all in
mployment are guilty of malversation.
He has also a thousand oppor-
tunities of serving those in his
interest, and who give him a share of
their plunder; and to send them
royal robes by the officers of his
house, who are greatly rewarded for
the fame, and which serves them
instead of wages. The govern-
nors of provinces and cities endea-
vour for these presents of honour
by underhand practices, nor spare
for money to procure them, that
they may be the more feared by
those they govern, who must not
dare to complain of their middle-
meaners, when they see them so
much in favour at court as to ob-
tain these robes. After this manner
it is that the Attenaud-doulct is in
perpetual agitation, to support him-
self, to raise some and destroy others,
according as he is actuated either by
love or hatred. And yet with all
his arts and precautions he can ne-
ever be quiet in his mind, as we have
already observed; for he cannot af-
sure himself of the fidelity of any
one person, thofe he has been kind-
eft to, being often the first to hasten
his destrucion, when they find that
fortune has given him a shock.
In-

fidelity and ingratitude have taken
such deep root over all this coun-
try, that children make no scruple
to cut off the ears, the nose, and
to cut even the throats of their par-
ents, whenever the King commands
it; and this with the bale and mer-
cenary view of possessing their pofts
in the government; a cruelty suffi-
ciently pregnant of examples. In a
word, as the fortune of this first
minister depends wholly upon the
whim of a capricious master, who
blindly obeys the impulse of his pas-
sions, without any manner of regard
to right or reason, he is frequently
ignorant of the calamity that is to
befall him the very next day. More-
over, tho' he is first minister and
the greatest man in the Empire, he is
at the same time the most abject of
all
Cornelius Le Brun.

1794. all slaves; never enjoying a moment's peace within, and ever fearing to lose the good graces of his lord and master; he cannot please every body, and must answer for all the evils that happen to the state.

The next officer of rank is the Chief of the Cext, Koertje-bashí, or general of the Ceyts, a body of troops they select from among the Tzurcomans or original Tartars, an old race of hardy soldiers, who live by themselves under tents in the country, and lead a pastoral life with their cattle; they are scattered over all Persia, and mix not with the rest; they serve on horseback, and their arms are bows and arrows.

The next to him in rank is the Chief of the Chamber, Coudar-Aga, or the general of the Georgians and other white slaves, who are armed like the former with bow and arrow, and are an order of soldiery erected by Abbas the great, the rest are as follow.

The Tafigheti-agaf, or general of the body of Mufketeers, which are picked out of the country from among the most laborious and most robust of the people. They serve on horseback in the field, and fight on foot; these also were established by Abbas the great.

These three generals were formerly under the command of a Sepha-falaner or fixed chief; but they are now under a Server only, a chief appointed for any particular expedition, after which he is discharged and rewarded for his extraordinary service.

The Naasir or great master of the King's houehold, and chief of those who have care of the King's guests.

After him the Mirzitchar-bashí, or great huntman, and the Mirachar-bashí, or great master of the horse. Among the principal officers of state we must reckon also the Divan-beghi or chief of the council of justice, who judges ultimately in all causes civil and criminal, except of such contests as are of small consequence, which are referred to the Dervisi of the place where they happen.

The Muslaufe-chemenalik, or master of the accounts and finances, where there is an office to register the Persian troops, as well as certain officers, and the governments which the Beglerbegi, the Khans, and Sultans polutes for the maintenance of their houehold and dignity, but in return for these confections they are obliged to keep a certain number of troops on foot, and every year to pay a sum of money imposed upon them; besides that the Prince referees a part of their royalties to himself.

The Mulafe or chief of the chambers of accounts of the lordships which particularly belong to his Majesty, and the revenues which are appropriated for the support of the court.

The Vaka-movel, or the register of events, who keeps a journal of all that passes in the kingdom, and in the neighbouring provinces.

The Numzechman-bashí or chief of the King's physicians, who are in great credit with this Prince, and who formerly, in many respects had the regulation of his conduct, but their authority is no more what it was formerly. All these officers have a right to sit in the royal palace. The chief of those who do not claim that privilege is the Slaik-agaf-bashí, chief of the porters or great master of the court, who has the inspection of the palace, and the regulation of rank. This great officer has commonly in his hand a great golden staff adorned with diamonds, and has his eyes continually fixed upon the King, that he may know his will and pleasure. He himself executes his orders in the places where he happens to be in person, or has them executed by his Yasals or Uffers, when any thing is to be transmitted at a distance. It is this officer also that conducts foreign ministers into the presence of the King, holding them under the arm, and afterwards conducts them to the place where they are to sit, when they are allowed so to do.

G g g

The
The Megter or chamberlain, he no more than the former is allowed to sit at court. This officer wears a purse at his side, in which are handkerchiefs, a watch, antidotes, and soporiferous herbs for the use of the King. He also has the charge of the cloaths the King commonly wears. He is almost always an eunuch, because he often goes with the King into the Seraglio, or Haran, which reflects great honour and authority upon him.

We must not forget the Beglerbegs, which in Turkish signifies the lords or lords, who are governors of the great provinces or countries of the state. These have commonly Khans and Sultans under them, and confine the bulk of the revenue of their provinces, sending only a small part of it to the King in presents; but we have already said, they are burdened with the charge of maintaining a certain number of troops. For the rest they are as petty Kings in their provinces, allowing for the allegiance they owe to his Majesty.

There are fifteen or sixteen of these Beglerbegs in this Empire, and this post is so considerable that those in the enjoyment of it are invested with a rank in the royal palace immediately after the Taofentik-aga on the one hand, and the Nazir on the other, before the Miri-sultan-bashi, or the great huntsman.

The Khans and Sultans, who are also governors of provinces, differ but little from the Beglerbegs, and the Khan has barely rank above the Sultan. They enjoy also the revenues of the land in their department or district, and are obliged to keep up a certain number of troops, and make presents to the King, besides that some of them depend upon the Beglerbegs.

The Derwaishes are the governors of the countries called the King's domain, which are appropriated for the subsistence of the court, and certain troops, and these have the inspection of the revenues annually produced by these countries. These have salaries out of the revenues of the countries under their jurisdiction, and make presents to the King like the rest.

Besides these great officers of provinces, the fortresses and cities have their particular governors, which they call Derwasa. These in great cities, as Isfahan, and the like, answer to what the French call Lieutenants civil et criminel. When they execute their office they have no respect to persons, and indiscriminately punish all delinquents, and keep the fines for their own use.

The Caluntaars or chief of the Caluntaars, or chief of the common people, are the principal magistrates in villages and towns, but their authority extends over none but the common people in great cities, and particularly at Isfahan. They are properly speaking their protectors and plead their causes before the tribunals. These are the officers that fix the ordinary and extraordinary taxation, in which they have regard to the means and ability of the several inhabitants, and send the money they raise to the proper offices for the reception of it.

These have under them certain Kerch-bade officers called Ked-chodates or masters of parishes or the inferior districts, who execute their orders, and much after the same manner with their chiefs protect those under their care, and gather what they are taxed at.

The chiefs or magistrates of small villages, exercise the same authority as the Caluntaars in the great ones, and in towns. They call them Rogies or regent.

The office of Shabander or receiver of the duties upon all merchandise in the sea-ports is more considerable. He keeps an exact account of what he thus receives, and sends it to the Mujasfya-cassa who specifies the sums in his register, they being appropriated for the subsistence of the court. These collectors or custom-house-officers have fixed salaries, and have no part of the duties they collect; their office was formerly annual; but the duties are now farmed out for a term of seven or eight years, and
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

1704.

1704. even more, and hence they yearly levy twenty-four thousand Tomans which are at least a million of Livres, and sometimes twenty eight or about twelve hundred thousand.

There is another considerable office which is that of the Meliktu-sziszaer or Prince of the merchants, so called because it is he that judges and decides in all cases between merchant and merchant. He has also intire inspection of the weavers and taylors of the court under the Nazir, and the charge of providing the clothing and things of that nature for his Majesty's use. Besides all this, he is the inspector of those who are employ'd to dispose of the merchandize folks and other effects belonging to his Majesty in foreign parts.

The Raachdaers or surveyors of the roads, who have the care of the highways, come next after this prince of the merchants. These form a certain extent of the roads, and in virtue of that receive certain duties laid upon goods that travel within their limits; these duties are called Raagdarie, and they keep an account of them. This office obliges them to make good the roads, and to secure the highways, and binds them to reinstate such as have been robbed or deprived of their effects within their district, according to the value of the same, if they cannot be recovered. But when it happens that they do recover them, they take the third part for their own use, and deliver the rest to the owner. And for this reason they are bound at their own expence to keep a certain number of people armed, who are to patrol in the night, in times of danger, to prevent robberies and to detect them as much as possible. This is a most admirable regulation, but it were to be wished it was better executed than it is, that the traveller might perform his journey with more safety than he does at present.

They have governors, called Kootewael, in great castles, and in all the fortresses of the Kingdom, as at Ormus, Candelaer and so on. Their power is commonly limited and they depend upon the governor of the province. This word of Kootewael signifies also the chief of the watch, and with his officers every night he patrols in the streets, to prevent disorders and thefts, by seizing on robbers: At Isphaban and other cities of Persia this officer is called Agbdaas.

Nor must we forget the Maktishe, inspector of the mercantile or inspector of the markets, who regulates the price of provisions and whatever else is brought to market for sale. He examines also the weights and measures, and punishes those who are defective therein. Having settled the price of provisions and goods, which he does every day, he carries a lift of them sealed up to the palace gate, and they regulate the ordinary accounts according to this valuation.

It is now time to speak of the Mehemander-basli, or the chief of those to whom are committed the King's guests. His office is to go out of town to receive ambassadours, envoys, and strangers of quality or distinction; to take care they want for nothing, and to order them the usual supply of necessaries. For the rest they leave it to the choice of foreign ministers, whether Christian or Mohammedan, who are treated upon an equal foot at the court of Persia, to lend for what they want to the King's stores, or to receive every day or once a week, as they like itself, the value of the same in ready money. The business of this officer is also to carry their messages to the King and the ministers, and to conduct them to audiences when they are to be admitted. He also visits them from time to time, and talks with them, and endeavours to get out of them the reason of their coming, and why they reside at court, to give an account of all to the ministers. But when there comes an ambassadour from the Porte or the King of Indostan, or other Mohammedan powers of the higher rank, they more over send one of the grandees of the Kingdom,
1704. Kingdom, to wait on them as Maitre d'hôtel and guest-keeper, and he acquires himself of all the functions of the Melchander-bajbi with regard to other ministers.

Besides all these offices there is a Mammur-bajbi or surveyor of the King's buildings; he sets a price upon most of the houses that are sold, in order to prevent the disputes which sometimes arise upon the sales, or upon the presence of a right to annul the contract, as if the party had been taken at a disadvantage in the bargain, and that the sale was not according to form, a practice allowed by the Mohammadan law when the price has not been ascertained by this intendant or surveyor. As for the ecclesiastical employs the first is that of Zedder, or great pontiff, who is the chief also of all the wealth and emoluments consecrated to the public worship. This office was formerly exercised by one man only, but the late King Salim man divided it, and appointed two Zeddars, the one with the care and charge of the legacies bequeathed to the churchmen by the Kings of Persia, whom they call Zedder Cems; the other with the disposition of what has been bequeathed by private persons, and he is called Zedder Memachick. These two pontiffs have each of them a court apart, where they judge in civil causes according to the directions of the canon-law. They dispose also of most of the church benefits and particularly of the offices of the Sjeb-el-jaan, and of the Kajbo-muteneh or inspector of the mochs and consecrated burying-grounds and the like. These offices are of very considerable, that when it happens that those possesse of them are present at royal asssemblies, they take place of the Attemaeddoulet. The Sjeb-el-jaan and the Kazs differ but little from each other, with regard to the truf they have of monies; but the former is nevertheless the most considerable. For the rest, their functions are pretty nearly equal, and they are mutually a check upon each other. All contracts between private parties must pass through their courts, and they must authorize all mandates and other writings of confession.

The Musafib or Legis is above all ecclesiastics not only on account of his learning, but because by virtue of his office he is accounted sacred. It is he that settles and explains all points of faith, the meaning of the Alcoran, and the Hadj of their prophets, and the Imams. The veneration they have for him runs to that length, that their learned men make no scruple to give our, that the government of the Mohammadan belongs of right to him, and that the King is only the executor of his orders, in virtue of which he has the wielding of the sword, wherewith he is obliged to chastise those who are obstinate or disobedient, tho' he has the power of doing nothing by his own bare authority. The reason they give for this point of doctrine is, that all true believers are directed by the will of God, which is revealed to the Musafib in the absence of an Imam; that it is impossible for God to declare such his will to temporal princes, who are left in the pleasures of this world, and think of nothig but the gratification of their passions, regardless of the salvation of their souls; who far from knowing God are quite unacquainted with themselves, and neglect to seek after the path which leads to eternal life.

The opinion the people have of the clergy is the reason they all, most of them affect a profound dissimulation, with the double view of keeping them in error, and themselves in the reverence they profess for them. So that altho' they are actuated by the most boundless ambition they discipline themselves in the presence of the people; they humble themselves that they may be exalted, and would seem to despise what they most eagerly grasp at; in short by their exterior one would imagine they aspired at nothing but the joys of Paradise. They, when at home, gather about them a number of young people to instruct them in the
the way that leads to heaven, and to affect them strongly with the seeming zeal that fires them, they use their stupid youths with a most extraordinary tenderness and forbearance; they are never in a passion; their words are few, and they have such an air of wisdom and sanctity as is quite rapturous. Their clothing is white and of camels or goats hair; and they wear large turbans which make them look meager and low. When they appear in publick they affect a great simplicity, and are attended by one servant only who carries a book after them; they go gently along, and keep their eyes fixed upon the ground. They are great frequenters of the mosques, where they pour forth long prayers with an affected zeal, and often withdraw into a corner, where they instruct young children, and sometimes they preach sermons to the people. By these artifices it is that they win the hearts of men, and infect a terror into the King himself, who would not dare to be guilty of the least innovation in the practice of their religion for fear of the heavy wrath of these holy ones. Many examples there are of this, nor can a stronger proof be given of the reverence they have for them than the privilege they have of sitting at a small distance from men of the sword at royal assemblies.

The manner how the nobility live at court is very different from theirs; the courtiers affect a very extraordinary civility, and an engaging freedom, but then the tongue and the heart never travel together. They entirely give themselves up to sensuality and pleasures; their habits, their equipages are magnificent, and they are so excessively fond of money, that there is nothing to be obtained of them but by bribes and presents. For the rest they are very affable and seem to be very good natured; but their behaviour is quite low and mean to those of whom they expect any favour, and they morally hate those that cross them in what they solicit, or sue for what they want; and these they use with a degree of bar

ority quite inhuman, when it happens they have an advantage over them; they fling no opportunity of hurting them, and have the art of giving a bad turn to the qualities for which they are most valuable; in a word, they can never rest till they have destroyed them. On the other hand they are the most abject flatterers of those who are in the good graces of fortune, and in great employ, and attribute to them all the perfections they can possibly think of; but these even are no sooner fallen into disgrace, then they insult over their misfortunes, and most shamefully abuse those who in the days of their prosperity, they were wont to lift up to the skies; and to these thus fallen it often happens that those who stand deepest in debt to them for favours, are the very first to tear them to pieces.

And much after the same manner it is that their men of letters, or of the press, as they call them in this country, behave in general. They are proud and self-sufficient, envious and jealous of the merit of others, carelessly and cajoling those they abominate most when they meet them; but no sooner is their back turned than they most unmercifully abuse them. Diffimulation is their favourite vice, and their vanity is such as to prompt them to applaud themselves upon every occasion, and without scruple to throw out panegyricks upon their own great merit. And yet, to all appearance, they are religious and devout, and affect to seem greatly distressed with all worldly vanities; they have the joys of Paradise eternally in their mouths, tho' at the same time in private, they swallow in the most enormous and most unnatural sensuality. For the rest they have an utter aversion for the Christians of Europe, and for all that differ from them in matters of faith; nor would there be any safety for them in this country did not the laws of nations keep these infidels in awe.

H h

Utury
1704. Usury prevails here more than in any other country whatsoever, tho' it must be confessed there are good men here, as well as elsewhere; but in general we may say the Persians are ungrateful and void of all shame and modesty. Persia consists of three orders like the states in Europe: The first consists of the nobility and men of the sword; the second of men of the robe, and the third of merchants and artificers.

C H A P. XLII.

Funeral of the Kings of Persia, qualities of the present King, his Picture, habit of the Persians.

They never publish the King of Persia's death till his successor has been seated upon the throne; and yet King Suliman, the father of his present Majesty, had no sooner given up the ghost, than the news of it flew over all parts by the indiscretion of his first physician. This Prince died upon the twenty-ninth of July 1694, in the forty-eighth year of his age, after he had reigned twenty-nine years. The officers of the crown and chief men of the Kingdom, immediately seized on the palace, and took care that every thing was quiet on all sides. The inhabitants shut up their houses and shops, and no people of rank appeared in the streets. Upon the first day of August his Majesty's body was placed upon a wheel carriage, covered with a most magnificent pall of gold cloth, and conveyed to a chapel a league from Isphahan, from whence it was carried to Sam, there to be interred in the sepulchre of the King his fathers. All the grandees of the Kingdom followed him on foot, excepting one of the officers of the crown, called Mierfa-taber, and an ecclesiastic of dioces, who, on account of their great age, were allowed to go on horseback. These lords were followed by the men of the robe and pen, lamenting and singing, and these were succeeded by a great body of soldiers, who attended the corpse to the chapel, with flambeaux smoking but not lighted. When they had reached the chapel, all that and attended tore their garments, had returned to the city, leaving some of their friends or relations to follow the body in the night. They double the guards of the palace to prevent the disorders which are be to feared upon these occasions, in a town so populous and crowded with strangers. In the mean time the officers of the crown ordered the astrologers, according to custom, to acquaint them with a favourable or auspicious time when they might inaugurate the new King, persuaded that in that case the King would attempt nothing to their prejudice, and especially in the beginning of his reign. 'Till the astrologers had thus declared themselves, there was no noise of drums or trumpets to be heard, nor any other sound that might interrupt the solemnity of the mourning, and this congratulation, which continued to the sixth of August, when the astrologers unanimously declared they had found the auspicious moment. They laid hold on it for the coronation of the deceased's eldest son, who had been taken out of the Seraglio immediately upon the death of this prince, and locked up in another apartment, where he remained till he was conducted to the throne, where all the grandees of the
the court came to throw themselves at his feet. Then they opened all the houses and shops, which had been shut up till now, and had bonfires and illuminations on all sides. The next day after the coronation, the new King called Soltan-bißen, sent royal robes to all the Lords and Chief of the court, who till then wore their cloaths they had rent and torn, and there was an end of the mourning. After this the drums and trumpets were heard on all sides, and these rejoicings lasted forty days, according to custom.

The King was about four and twenty years old, not large, but well made, and handsome of face. I looked attentively upon him several times, when I was at Isphahan, to imprint a full idea of him in my mind, that I might draw his picture, in which I succeeded tolerably well. He was in a summer dress, but I chose to represent him in a winter suit, which is much more magnificent. He is easily distinguished by a jewel he wears in his turban, with three black herons feathers; you see him in numb. 85.

This Prince takes so great a pleasure in building, that they reckon he has that way expended four or five millions in the ten years he has been upon the throne, tho' the Gardens and the houses of pleasure cost him nothing. When he has a mind to build any where, proclamation of such his intention is made by sound of trumpet, that those who love him may come and work for him. Upon this the artificers repair to him from all parts, without claiming the least reward; nor do the grandees of the Kingdom fail to lend others at their own expense. The Armenians are bound to contribute in the same manner, and I know it for certain that a large garden which was made in my time cost them three hundred Tomans, which amount to one hundred and twenty thousand livres.

This Prince is so given to women that he knows no bounds of his lewd practices, and is quite careless of the welfare of the state, and his evil example is the cause that justice is ill administered in his great Empire, where licence reigns, and vice is unpunished. And hence it is that the high roads which were once so well secured, are now so full of robbers.

And hence also it is that the clergy Eunuchs in have a very great ascendant over the Prince as well as the eunuchs, the outscafts of human nature, and quite unworthy of high posts and honours, seeing they are no better than the guard of the Seraglio, a place devoted to the basest pleasures of the King; besides that their air and mein has something shocking in it. But notwithstanding all this, they are the first in favour, insomuch that the counsellors of state are obliged to pay court to them, and flatter them, a very mortifying circumstance for persons of birth and consideration, who could not possibly affure themselves of the King's good graces, or of the possession of their employ, without submitting themselves to such a lowness of behaviour.

There are some, however, who have a heart too big for such an unbecoming submission, and who know, not how to disguise their thoughts. Some years ago there was a Georgian Nobleman, called Rofian-khan, a man of merit, and in possession of one of the first employes of the state, being Captain General of the King's Armies and Governor of Tauris, the ancient Beshatan, the capital of Media, who had the boldness to tell the King, at a great feast, and in presence of the first Grandees of the court, That he was an ignorant Prince, and that he never would know any thing; and that in short he could not prevail on himself to serve him any longer. Upon this, he was the next day despoiled, and received orders not to stir out of his house, which he obeyed. Mean time, his friends solicited so strongly for him, that they promised to restore him; but he was so far from thanking them for this officiousness, that he was angry with them for concerning themselves with his affairs, and declared that he absolutely
solutely would not serve such a
Prince, and persisted in this his re-
solution to the day of his death.

A certain grandee called Medfa-beck,
an Armenian originally, but whose
grand-father had embraced Moslem-
dom, drew a more severe censure upon
himself in the year 1704, while I was
at Isphahan, for speaking his thoughts
too freely. This nobleman, who had
been raised to the first posts, and to
the government of the same city of
Tauris, after he had been general
of his Majesty's Georgian and Circas-
ian slaves, came to Isphahan, where
the King asked him his business, and
commanded him, without presuming
to make any ansver, to return to his
government, and repair from thence
to Efterabad, a town of Mazanderan,
and there put himself at the
head of his army and therewith to
march against the Turkomans, who
inflicted that country, and carried
off the inhabitants and the catt
le. He answered the King, He
was very sorry he could not obey
his Majesty's commands, because he
had been well informed that at court
they did not act as became them,
and that he had been given to un-
derstand they only wanted to send
him away to destroy him; that if
it was necessary he should be sacri-
ficed to the malice of his enemies,
he had rather submit to his fate
that instant, than have it fall upon
him after his departure. This
he said in a dry careless manner,
and adding some reasons and argu-
ments upon what he had said, he so
exasperated the King against him,
that they went to his houfe upon
the sixth of September to seize him,
and having bound him, carried him
publicly to prison upon a mule, and
clapt a seal upon all that belonged
to him; but notwithstanding all this
outrage, they releafe him a few
days afterwards, upon condition he
should confine himself to his houfe.

Many other examples might be
exhibited of the violence and weak-
ness of this Prince, who thereby fo
exposes himself to the contempt of
all his subjects that they publickly
fay, They have nothing of a King
but the name. And indeed it may
with reason good be said, Unhappy
is the country which is ruled by a child.
They say his younger brother, who
is kept in the palace, and who has
both sense and merit, when he hears
of the conduct of the King his bro-
ther, often cries out, I cannot imagine
what he does with the Crown. This
Prince one day sending him a bottle
of wine, the other lent it back to
him, disdainfully saying, He did not
want it. These things so different
from the manner of other countries,
must appear strange and incredible
to those who know nothing of the
customs and maxims of this. For
the rest, the weakness of this Prince
is such that when he loses a tribe at
play, he begs of the party that won
it of him, to say nothing of it to the
Nazir, who is to pay him.

It remains that we speak of the Habit of
manner of dress among the Persians, the Per-
ians.

whereupon we have to observe that
their dress is shorter than that of the
Turks, and different according to the
rank and quality of the Persian that
wears it. The dress of the men of
the sword, for example, is quite dif-
ferent from what is worn by the
men of the robe, and the same it
is with regard to their wives. There
is also a wide difference between
the dress of the married and the
unmarried women; of women ad-
vanced in years and young women.
The habit of the most considerable
of the men of the robe is represen-
ted in number 86. The Mandiel
or turban they wear upon the head
varies also; they are of all sorts of
colours, some striped, some wrought
with gold and silver, and some white;
The churchmen wear them much
larger than any others, but extreme-
ly neat, and very nicely folded up;
in a word their dress is very magni-
ficent, and their garments mostly
flowered, which in my mind how-
ever, does not so well become the
men as the women; and to say the
truth, the habits of the Turks are
more modest, are better understood,
and have a more masculine air with
them.
1704. them. For the rest, the Persians never alter their fashions, and have preferred that air of grandeur which prevailed among them in the days of Alexander. Persons of condition never go on foot, but on horseback, with runners on one side of them: Those of less consideration imitate them, and are obliged to incur debts to support them in this extravagance, but what they thus incur they never think of paying. The grandees and such as are rich adorn the bridle of their horses with maffy gold, and others follow them in proportion. They have always their Callies, or pipe carried after them, which is properly speaking, and chiefly, a bottle of water, through which they draw the smoke of their tobacco. This Callies is adorned with gold, and is extremely neat; those of inferior rank adorn them with silver, and have them carried

Femme Persienne.
1704. after them in the same manner. Our director had a golden bridle and his Callion adorned with the same, and so had his second, as well as all that appear at court, where they are only considered in proportion to the grandeur of their appearance.

The dress of the women seems to me to be still more agreeable; the wives of the men of the robe wear a forehead-band adorned all over with pearls and precious stones; it is four fingers broad, and goes but half way round the head; but the wives of the counsellors of state, wear it all round the head, in the nature of a crown, and call it Borfl-borne; and upon it they have several plumes of black herons feathers, aigrettes, and bunches of flowers with golden leaves. To this band or diadem they have a jewel which falls upon the forehead, and they fasten it on with a rope of pearl which comes under the chin, and their hair falls down in several tresses. They wear also a white veil, embroidered with gold which falls over their shoulders, necklaces of precious stones and pearls, and golden chains which fall down to their girdle with a box of perfume. Their upper garment is of brocade of gold or silver, it is also sometimes quite plain, and under it they wear a veil which falls down beneath the girdle; their shirts are of satin, or some other fine silk embroidered with gold. They wear also drawers and under petticoats made in the loom; buskins which come up four fingers above the ankle, which are of embroidery, velvet or some richer stuff. Their flippers are of green or red thagreen, pointed, and with a heel raised of the same colour, lined, and adorned with little flowers. Their girdle, which is two or three inches broad, is adorned with pearls and precious stones, and upon the breast they wear certain ribbons which fall down to the girdle. One of these ladies is represented as going abroad in number 87. Over all this, in winter, they wear a gown lined with a cotton-cloth, which falls down a foot below the girdle, and when it is very cold indeed, they wear a gown of gold or silver brocade, lined with fables or some other fur. When they go abroad they are from the head to the foot covered with a white veil, which shows nothing but their eyes, as may be observed in the figure above; this veil is commonly all of one piece; they wear also bracelets of precious stones, and have their fingers loaded with rings. The women of a middling rank, dress themselves in proportion to their means, and the wives of the nobility and men of the sword wear over their clothes a silk net, or something of the kind, which has a very pretty effect.

To this I shall also subjoin the habit of the Yafoids or royal porters who serve also in the quality of slaves at the court. These wear a loftier turbant than the rest, with feathers, and great mustaches, like the nobility, and a beard upon their chin, which reaches to the ears. Some of them also wear beards after the Turkish manner. This Yafoid is represented in number 88.

In number 89, you have the representation of a male black slave belonging to our director, with a great poniard of a particular make, in his girdle, and in number 90 you have a female of the same complexion, with a tea-board in her hand.
Funeral pomp instituted in honour of Husein. The manner how the Armenians at Julfa receive their Friends. Arrival of an Ambassador from Turkey:

Upon the sixth of May, the Persians began the mourning ordained for the commemoration of the death of their great saint Husein, the son of Ali and Fatima, the only daughter of Mohammed, and this they enter upon as soon as they perceive the new moon. All the city puts on mourning, and great lamentations are made on the sad subject of his death, which happened, as they say, in the year 1227, when Mohammed, according to their computation, was obliged one thousand one hundred and eighteen years ago to fly from Mecca to Medina, to save himself from the persecuting fury of his enemies. It was in Arabia, the desert that this saint lost his life, as he was flying with seventy-two of his companions, near a place called Kierbila, where there is his tomb, and whither the Persians, who account him their true Imam or chief, repair from all parts with very extraordinary devotion. And, indeed, King Abbas the great boasted it as the most glorious circumstance of his life that he was descended from him, tho' that is an honour the Turks will not allow him. This mourning continues for ten days together; they appear in the streets in small companies of ten or twelve persons half naked, who blacken their faces, and are not very unlike our chimney-sweepers; a frightful sight! they affect a mortified air, and sing out lamentations to the sound of certain casks signed, we have formerly mentioned. The murder of this saint is represented by persons in arms, and by his image which is very large and hollow, and put into motion by a person inclosed within it, and whole legs are plainly to be seen. Those concerned in this mummerie and who carry this image about, receive a reward from the spectators, who give them certain small pieces of silver of very little value; tho' indeed there are some who are more generous to them. For the rest, during this time, they preach publickly in the streets morning and evening, and especially in the cross-ways, and the other more frequented parts, which they inclose with tapestry and spread with carpets. They adorn also the walls with bucklers, and other pieces of armour and arms, and the pulpits for the preachers are raised up five or six steps; they hold some written papers in their hands, upon which they often cast their eyes, pronouncing the elogy, and reciting the actions and wonders of the saint. A second preacher some steps below the first, pours out, in his turn, the praises of Husein, singing out with a loud voice. The places where they have these sermons are full of seats and benches; and as I had the curiosity to go to one of them with some friends, they no sooner saw us than they ordered us seats, for the respect they bore to our director, who was in great esteem at Isfahan. I stayed there a good half hour, and observed that all the auditors were so affected by the eloquence of their doctors, that they were dissolvled into tears. At the corner of the wall of the place where we were, they had placed a great figure indifferently well counterfeited, and stuffed with straw, to represent the murderer of Husein, called Omar, whom they burnt at night in several parts of the city. These sermons or discourses are delivered also in the night in many great places, upon theatres erected for that purpose, with laths, upon which they place above a thousand lamps, but so awkwardly
wardly and carelessly that the wind blows out the greatest part of them. For the rest, the number of spectators is inexpeRefible.

Upon the Sunday following we celebrated the feast of Whit and at our director's, and thither came two bands of young lads, nearly of the same height, and very neatly dressed, to dance according to custom. They had certain small sticks in their hands, which they struck against each other as they danced, and they were attended by two or three men of their district who sung. These dancers were continually throwing their arms over their heads with wonderful celerity, and assumed such attitudes and motions as were quite charming. These were to have been followed by a larger band, but upon the way they met with a band belonging to another district, which attacked them and retarded them, so that they could not come; besides that they were to go to court that night.

But to return to our subject, the chief solemnity of this mourning or funeral pomp, was a grand procession which was exhibited the next day. I fared to see it in a shop in the Bazar, by which it was to pass.

This procession opened with some of the Deragd's officers on horseback, who were followed by some fingers with each a taper in his hand, and in veils either of purple or black, agreeable to the nature of the solemnity and the lamentations that were made; some of them were also half naked, and others carried a great black standard furled up. After these, there appeared three camels, upon the first of which there appeared two boys almost naked, three upon the second, one behind another, and upon the third, the image of a woman covered up, with a little boy. Then five other camels, upon each of which there were seven or eight little boys, who were also almost naked, in cages of lath, and two enigns followed them. Then a chariot with an open coffin containing a dead body, followed by another covered with white and some fingers. After this there appeared a chariot laden with incense, with two persons, and four little boys, with each a book in his hand, and with a table before them. This chariot was surrounded with what looked like tinned lamps, and was followed by a great standard furled up, and by twelve armed soldiers, with each an helmet on his head; and these by two little boys comically dressed up, with feathers and bells. Then came a young prisoner on horseback, followed by sixteen others chained one after another, and five others pinioned. After these appeared a chariot covered with sand, out of which appeared six bloody heads, but the bodies were not to be seen, so that one would have said they had been cut off: There were two persons dressed in this chariot, which was followed by that which carried the body of Hasein, represented by a man in armour, with a sabre in his hand. He was all over covered with blood, to stir up the people to grief and lamentation, and indeed their sighs, and groans, and outcries are not to be expressed; and it must be confessed there can be nothing more moving than this sight, which we had it not in our power to laugh at, though we were very sensible of the ridicule and idle superstition of the whole. This chariot was followed by a number of young persons, some of them pinioned, and some with their arms free, attended by a guard armed with flaves, with which they, from time to time, threatened them, upon which they would stoop and bend down their heads the most naturally in the world. These were followed by a great chariot, drawn by men, like the rest, covered also with bloody sand, upon which were two dead bodies, and other persons, of which there appeared nothing but the head; six young turtle doves went backwards and forwards in this chariot, after which there appeared another, from which came out legs and arms, and in which there were two lighted tapers; then a third with six heads and two persons dressed, followed by another with
1704. with a dead body in armour, and a person as it were sick. Then two ensigns, and an horse with the fiddle on one side, attended by two drums and some fingers, and then another chariot upon which there were two coffins, and two little boys, with each a book in his hand, who, from time to time, embraced them, and acted their part wonderfully well. This went before another of extraordinary size, containing ten or twelve dead bodies, of which nothing was to be seen but their bloody legs and arms, with five or six prisoners, followed by a young man on horse-back, wounded with arrows; he was all over blood, seem- ed to be a stranger, and seemingly so faint he was ready to fall. After him appeared a coffin covered with a black cloth, attended by fingers and dancers who seemed to conduct it in triumph, and after them were carried three lances adorned with precious stones. Then came an horse laden with bows and arrows, a turban, and a great standard; then five or other horses, laden with bucklers, bows, and arrows; and three javelins upon the points of which appeared an hand. At last, this procession was closed by an horse richly caparison'd, upon which there were three pair of pigeons; but this horse was not in his place.

After I had seen all this fight, an ecclesiastick was so good as to explain the whole mystery of it to me: He told me, the turtle does I had seen upon one of the chariots, represented those which appeared upon the body of Husein when he was killed, and that these same turtle does, daubed with his blood, flew away to Medina, where lived this saint's sister, who upon fight of them knew of his death, as she had foretold it beforehand. That the chariot with the two coffins, attended by two little boys with each a book in his hand, represented the two sons of Husein, Ali-Asher and Ali-Exkhor, whom they give out to have been slain with arrows. That the young man wounded with arrows was design'd

also to represent Ali-Eckher; that the coffin covered with black was that of Husein; and that the chariot with six heads, by which there were two persons dress'd, represented his children. That the steel or iron hand fixed at the point of the javelins, was the signal of war which the leaders or partisans of the Persians Moham- medans wore formerly upon their standards, and that the five fingers of that hand represented Mohammed Ali Fatima, the daughter of Moham- med and the wife Ali, Hassam and Husein: So that every part of this procession refers to some circumstance or other of the death of Husein and his seventy two friends slain with him, and canonized for martyrs by the Persians.

It is to the last degree surprising that the persons whole heads, legs, and arms appear in the chariots, should be able to contain themselves without the least motion, for the whole day together that this procession last'd. Most of the heads had even long beards, and their necks were so squeezed, that the head seemed separated from the body, besides that their eyes moved hardly at all. But I was told upon this occasion they make them swallow down a kind of drink which deprived them of their senses, and of all motion during the time. For the rest, there is no being imposed on with regard to this, for I pinently distinguished the only head of wax which was among the rest; and indeed it must be acknowledged the Persians are very artful in these sorts of representations.

On the morrow, by break of day, we went to the same place, to see the sequel of this solemnity; but the King did not come till two hours afterwards.

It was a kind of parade of the two divisions of the city, who in the same procession carried several ornaments prepared for the purpose. First, the city, as the day before, there appeared some of the Deroga's officers on horseback, followed by some young people armed with flaves, and crying

K k k

out,
out Hussein, Hussein, skipping and dancing. After these came some that plaid upon instruments, and some drums, followed by the citizens of several districts; the first company of them was armed with drawn fables and shields, and the others with staves perfectly well painted. They were all very neatly dressed, with velvet vests, and fine sashes, and extraordinary turbans, and marched in good order, differing in nothing from each other, but as they were more or less magnificent. A party of these citizens, of nearly the same degree of fortune had prepared a pretty machine or refting place, not very unlike a coach, and embellished with looking-glass, hung with fables and parasols, and other arms mounted with gold or silver, a sight very acceptable to see. There were others lofter without tops or coverings, open within and more adorned with looking-glass. The greatest and most considerable of these companies goes on before. There were five machines or resting-places of the kind we have been speaking of, and a sixth at the Chiaor-baey between two buildings. This was all garnished with or composed of looking glass, in form of an altar, with two doors, which when they opened showed all the ornaments. It was very lofty, and a preacher mounted it as soon as the King appeared at the building of his second garden, which has a long gallery. This structure or stand stood there three or four days. It consisted of pieces which fitted each other, and which were put together on the spot, for it had been impossible to have moved it whole through the gates of the city.

This fine procession was succeeded by another, which opened with some standards, and a great number of horses, some of which had their heads adorned with great plumes of white feathers, and others were richly dressed out, and laden with fine vestments, fables, bucklers, bows and arrows, and other arms. Some of them had even turbans, larger plumes, and other ornaments; they were followed by some fingers, musicians and dancers, waving certain flags over their heads as they danced; others carried pikes adorned with ribbons and tufts. The procession appeared afterwards as the day before, tho' it consisted of halted from time to time, and as they sung threw chopped straw over their heads crying out, Hussein, Hussein. Some of them had a drawn fable in one hand and a shield in the other; the rest had staves nicely painted and gilt, and ten foot long, and seemed to breathe nothing but war; but the Derega who was present with above a thousand horsemen, takes a very particular care to prevent their coming to blows, positing his people in the van, the center and the rear of this procession. He posts others also upon the way they are to pass, and suffers not the districts to advance but the one after the other. In a word he omits nothing to prevent disorders, and the quarrels which might arise with regard to rank in a march, where there are narrow passes, and where for that reason they, at certain distances, post soldiers provided with fire-arms. These precautions are strange to much the more necessary, as the Persians have a notion, that those who perish upon this occasion go directly to Paradise. And accordingly they make no enquiry after murders committed at that time, those who bear malice against others, fail not to take advantage of, much as the practice is in Italy in the time of the carnival. Hence it is that prudent people who are not obliged to be abroad upon this procession, keep for the most part close at home for the last days of the festival, and especially the Turkifs Mohammedans, who are known; for they are enemies to Hussein, and friends to Omar, whom the Persians most warmly hate. Their hatred is not near so great for other nations, no not for the Indians, who are heathens, to whom they say nothing; there is however an unspeakable concourse of people upon this
this occasion, as well strangers as inhabitants of the city. It happened that every thing was transacted this time without any disorder, which is somewhat extraordinary, considering the great animosity of the adverse parties, who never spare each other whenever they chance to meet.

Upon the nineteenth, I went to see the Christian place of burial, where we laid till break of day, and from thence went to the King's new garden, which is of great extent, and surrounded with a wall of earth. We there saw the fish ponds, ground advanced, and a fine plantation of young trees, roses, and parterres full of flowers, but of the common sorts. We then went to Juffa to Mr. Sabid's country house; this gentleman was our company's interpreter, and we have made mention of him before. He received us and entertained us perfectly well, tho' we were above forty in number. The walks of his garden, which were full of candles, appeared most delightfully beautiful. The next day we went to pay visits to our director's friends; for he was to go away the next month and to return no more to Juffa. He there took leave of the principal Armenian merchants, of the patriarch, and most of the Europeans. We had above forty of these visits to make and they took us up three whole days, for you are treated everywhere with confreres and all manner of sweets, which are presented to you in painted wooden boxes, of great beauty, and adorned with all sorts of flowers, of which the Persians have at 1704; times all been great lovers. Then they bring you incense and rose-water, wherewith they perfume the company. Nor do they fail to present you a Callion to smoke with, coffee, Bemus, and other pheasant hot liquors; and after dinner, fruits and other dainties of the season. The Christians also give you brandy and other liquors in the morning, and wine in the afternoon: So that each visit could not possibly take up less than an hour.

Having acquit ourselves of this duty we returned to the city, where they told us a minifter from the grand vizier of the Ottoman-Port had arrived the day before, with but six or seven persons in his train; that it was thought he was come to demand a passage of the King, for the march of some Turkish forces, which the Grand Signor wanted to send into Georgia, where the inhabitants had for some years refused to pay the subsidies which the people of that country are obliged to remit to the Port. The Turk has frequently sent forces upon this account; but they have been interrupted by the straits and passes which the Georgians knew how to make the most of. The Turks call them Bassin-pregar or Bare-anz. beads, because they wear only a small cap open at the crown, thro' which they have some treffles of their hair to keep it tight on. The same they call the country they inhabit, which is between Turkey and Gurgilan.

CHAP.
Persian paintings. Their customs at births, marriages, deaths, and burials. Coins current in Persia. Great consumption of sugar at Ifapahan.

I ought here to have treated of the Persian religion, but as several travellers have done it amply before me, I imagined it might be unnecessary, and even troublesome to repeat what is so well known. I shall then only observe that it bears a very near relation to the religion of the Turks, except with regard to the aversion these last have for painting, seeing the greatest part of the Persians have pictures in their houses, and especially representations of horses, hunting-matches, and of all sorts of animals, birds and flowers, wherewith their walls are also filled, as hath already been said. They have even professed painters among them, the two best of which, in my time, were in the service of the King. I had the curiosity to pay a visit to one of them, and I found his works far above the idea I had conceived of the matter; they consisted only of birds in distemper, but extremely neat. Indeed I cannot say he knew anything of lights and shades, and in this all the country are ignorant, whence it is that their paintings are very imperfect. This painter was busy, for the King, in copying a printed book of flowers which came from our country, and in the colouring of which an European ecclesiastic had instructed him the best he could; and for this purpose they have most admirable colours; and I there met with lake which came from our parts. They themselves make ultramarine which is the finest blue in the world, for they have the stone in their own country, or else they buy it of the Armenian painters. There are also painters among them, who paint canes with a certain gum which has a very pretty effect, and flan-
We had a glaring example of this in the year 1652, with regard to Mr. Cueneus, counsellor in ordinary, in the service of the Dutch East-India company, who sent him to this court to negotiate some business. Among other presents they sent by him to the King, there was a fine picture of warriours on horseback, which they thought would be very acceptable to the Persians, who are great lovers of horses; but instead of receiving as expected, they coldly asked what the price of that picture was. The minister thinking it improper to value it at any high rate, appraised it very moderately, upon which they were so good as to resolve to keep the picture, and to give him the price he had valued it at. To these we might add many other examples of the kind, which we shall refer to another opportunity, and shall now speak of their births, marriages, and burials.

Three or four days after the birth of a child, they send for a churchman, to whom they declare the name they intend to impose on the child, which he blows into its ear three times, and then performs certain ceremonies, after which the Parents spend the rest of the day in mirth and jollity with their friends.

It is not the custom with them to circumcise till a child is seven or eight years old, and even sometimes later according to the whim of the parents, and never upon the eighth day, as the custom is with the Jews. Then they entertain the company, and endeavour to exert the greatest visible joy upon the happy occasion of having initiated a child into the number of Mulsens or True believers, according to the law of Mohammed, as it is revealed in the Koran or Alcoran.

As for marriages, when a man has a mind to take a wife he does not address himself to the party he would have, but to her parents or relations; and when they have agreed upon terms, they send for an ecclesiastic, who asks the man, if he will have the woman to be his wife? to which answering in the affirmative, he then proposes the same question to her, who answering in the same manner, this done, the same churchman draws up the marriage articles, for they have no notaries in Persia, by which the married man affixes a certain sum of money to his wife, who, by virtue of this contract, signed by the husband, is for ever^potfiefled of this dower, even tho' her husband should part with her, a custom allowed of in this country; and when he dies, his heirs are obliged to pay her this sum, together with the eighth part of the moveables he left behind him. Moreover if the woman dies first, and leaves children behind her, the husband, in case he marries again, and has children by a second ventur, is obliged to give the first wife's children their mother's dower, and an equal proportion of his own fortune, which they are to divide with the rest.

When a Christian, or any other person who is not of the Persian religion, embraces their faith, he inherits all his father's fortune, and the fortune of all his relations, exclusive of all others who have not apostatized like himself. And in case two Christians enter into the Persian infidelity at the same time, the next heir of the two of course enjoys alone all the fortune of his Christian relations that die.

It is lawful for the Persians to concubine as many concubines as they please, or as many as they can keep; and when it happens that they put away one of these, it is not lawful for her to have commerce with a man, till forty days are past and over, for fear she should be with child. For the rest, all the children of these concubines are reputed legitimate, and have their share of the father's fortune like the rest.

When parents give a daughter in marriage, they give her such a portion as they think fit, and she engages herself, by a proper writing for that purpose, to claim nothing thereafter of what they shall.
shall leave behind them, of which she has already received her part, and so disclaims all right to share with her brothers and sisters in what they are to divide in the sequel.

When they deliver this portion to the husband, they put all her clothes and moveables upon horses, and the rest is carried by several persons, who are laden also with conserves and other dainties. This ceremony may be called a procession, which is more or less splendid according to the quality of the persons, and it is always transferred with the sound of instruments. This is performed some days after the consummation of the marriage, and upon this occasion they prepare, as it is always in the night, a well illuminated apartment in the husband’s house. The men go in first, and the women follow them in great form.

The Grandees have also a wife who is commonly served by the husband’s concubines, and honoured with the title of Khana, which corresponds with that of Khan, assumed by their husbands. They eat alone, and are attended at table, as the custom is with others, by some of the concubines. The children of both are equally legitimate, and equally partake of the father’s fortune; and when it happens that one of these concubines produces a child, it is remarkable that the lawful wife rejoices mightily upon this occasion, in consideration of the honour that thereby accrues to her husband; who, when he has a mind to be with one of them, first sends one of his eunuchs to her apartment, for they have each of them one apart, and he orders her to bathe and purify herself; she immediately obeys and decks herself out to receive her Lord. These concubines eat together without any other company.

The King takes to him as many wives as he pleases, and chooses them from amongst the finest Georgian, Armenian, and other Christian maidens he can possibly find; there is a perfect equality between them, and the first son that is born of them, is heir to the Crown, without any regard had to the mother he is born of; nor does this give her any preeminence over the rest. When this Prince turns one of them out of the Seraglio, if she has had no children, he marries her to whom he pleases, and often to a person of very inferior rank.

What follows is what I observed with regard to their deaths and burials. Two or three hours after the decease of a person, they send for a Mola or ecclesiastic, who goes through certain prayers and ceremonies. Then they put the body into a coffin, which they carry to the washing-place, without the house, in a place appointed for that purpose, there to wash and purify it. It is carried by common porters, and preceded by fingers and other persons, with flames in their hands, and witches and streamers; the relations follow the body, rending their cloths, tearing their hair, beating their breasts, and performing other acts of despair. The bodies of persons of higher rank are surrounded by churchmen and other persons who bawl out mournful dirges. The friends that attend them make woful lamentations, but perhaps more out of custom, than for any grief that affects them to that extravagance. Neither the relations nor friends differ in dress from what they commonly wear, except those that go before the corpse, and some that let down one end of the folds of their turbans. For the rest, they do not go two and two, but promiscuously, and without any order.

When they have been at the washing-place, and have washed the body, they take cotton and therewith stop all the apertures, as the mouth, the nostrils and the rest. The whole difference in what is practised with regard to the dead bodies of men, and those of women is, that men wash the men, and women those of their own sex, and follow them to the grave; for they carry them directly from the washing place to the tomb, where they again perform a service of prayers and ceremonies. Then
Then they wrap up the body in a
winding sheet, and commit it to
the earth, observing that it rests up-
on the left side, with the head to the
east and the feet to the west, and
with the face turned toward the
tomb of their prophet, Mohammed.
Then they raise a vault of earth or
clay over the body, and fill up the
ground, upon which they place a stone,
or erect a tomb, and frequently a
dome, when the person is of distin-
cction. The King even sometimes
honours them with a royal sepul-
chre, which is accounted sacred,
and for which they have a very ex-
traordinary veneration. Some of
these tombs are also in form of a
temple, crowned with fine blue
glazed domes, which have a most ad-
mirable effect upon the eye.

As for their money, the greatest part of their silver coin is the Hadsan-
denari, or a piece of ten Mamooljes,
which are worth about eight-pence
of our money. They have Duexziaije
or pieces of five Mamooljes; Paen-
ziaije, of two and an half; pieces of
two Mamooljes, called Aabafries,
and others of one Mamoolje, of which
there are two sorts, coined by the
predecessors of his present Majesty,
The call them Mamooljes-barofije;
the country abounds with this coin,
because the merchants do not find
it worth their while to carry or send
it into foreign parts. It is current
all over this Kingdom as well for
foreign goods as for their own, nor
do they use any other. They have
also Zaexijes or half Mamooljes. The
King coins but few or none of the
two first sorts we have mentioned,
and them only for the poor, and
at certain times of the year. They
are also so scarce, that they are hardly
any where to be seen but in the hands
of the curious, because they differ a
little in value and weight from the
Mamooljes, and the Zaexijes which
they coin at present. The reason of
which is, that these three last
coins were reduced to a just standard
in the years 1684, and 1685, but
the officers of the mint have never-
theless diminished the value of them,
out of their inelastic desire to en-
rich themselves, to which the ne-
ligence of the government itself did
not a little contribute. Nor had
the grievance at all been remedied,
if the people, who murmured at it,
had not made their complaint to the
ministers, who, to satisfy them, broke
a part of these officers, and appoint-
ed others in their stead, who re-
formed what had been amis in their
predecessors; nor can this be won-
dered at, seeing they were discharged
without any concomitant punish-
ment for their malversation. These
coins are not at all current in trade,
in which they use none but the
Mamooljes-barofije, a coin under the
ancient Kings. This obliges the
merchants to be diligent in looking
out for them, and to give sometimes
one, two, and even fix per cent. for
them, beyond their intrinsic value,
so that they transact a very great
trade with this coin, which the
traders of the country hoard up
as soon as it comes out of the mint,
and send them away to Suratt, where
they find them to turn to better ac-
count than if they bought Ducca.

They have two sorts of copper
coin, the largest of which, and which
is the tenth part of a Mamoolje, is
round; the other, which is worth
no more than the twenty fifth part
of the same, is long.

There is little or no gold coin to be
seen in Perje; I have, however, seen
Duccies there, but they are scarce and
light.

All the goods brought from Gum-
ron, and the money lent thither by
bills of exchange, are negotiated by
the Banians or Indian brokers, and
the money is carried in Duccies to the
East-Indies.

The King of Perje is, by con-
tract, obliged to deliver every year
to our India company, one hundred
bales of silk, each bale containing 408
pounds of Dutch weight, amounting
in the whole to the weight of 480
pounds. And the company, by way
of return, send twelve hundred cheifs
of sugar to Isphaban, each chief con-
taining one hundred and fifty pounds
weight, in all eighteen hundred thou-
sand
1704. pounds weight; which is consumed in the city of Isphahan only. When the director and the other officers of the company have received this silk, they sort it, and make it up into bales, which they send by horses to Gammen, and from thence by shipping to Batavia.

CHAP. XLV.

Description of several Birds; of certain Trees; of Fruits, Plants, and Flowers. Price of Goods. Famous Gum or Mummy.

HAVING spoken of the nature and customs of this country, I proceed to its productions, and shall begin with the birds, which are represented in number 91. The Angers, distinguished by the letter A, is a sort of bird we have already mentioned in the course of these travels. I painted it from life, and found it somewhat different from those of the kind I had seen before; for this had a black collar about its neck, and more green upon the wings than the rest I had seen. The birds distinguished by the letter B, are turtle-doves, which have also a kind of black collar about the neck, and which, for that reason, they call Fargter-tog-begerde, or turtle-doves with collars. Those distinguished by the letter C, are called Fargter, and the bird marked by the letter D, is called Claegfes, or the green crow. The E, distinguishes certain yellow birds called Gvijer-zerde, which appear when the corn begins to sprout, there to build their nests, and retire as soon as the husbandmen begin to reap it; they are of four or five feet. The bird distinguished by the letter A, in number 92, is a spotted turtle-dove, with streaks of white and black upon the neck; it keeps commonly in the mountains; the B, points out an Alles-fagter, or green turtle; the letter C, distinguishes a bird spotted with black and white, and called Mabi-gieek, or the father, because it never leaves the banks of the rivers, or waters, like the gull. The D, shews two other Mabi-gieek, which are small birds, blue and green behind, of an orange colour on the breast, and so called because they are generally upon trees near the water. The letter E, points out a bird with green body and a yellow neck. The letter F, points at a bird which is black and grey mixed with white, spotted with yellow, and called Dreghen, or wood-pecker, because it is always pecking at the trees it perches upon, so as to be heard afar off. The letter G, distinguishes a bird marbled before, and behind, and called Macje-infbir, or the Becca-fico, with his breast striped with grey and white. He loves heat, flies sweetly, and tastes deliciously; but is very scarce.

Number 93, represents a bird called Backer, commonly Backer-Kara, or Kara, over Turky, and in the island of Cyprus. He is of a exquisite flavour, and his flesh is whiter than that of the partridge, before that he is larger. For the rest, he has colour upon his back, but is grey and white before, and has a streak about his neck, as may be observed in number 94. The two birds represented in number 95, are called Bol-bol, and have nearly the nightingale's song. They are taken from the life, their heads are black and white, and the rest of their feathers are grey, except upon the belly, where they are yellow quite to the tail, the tip of which is white.

Let us now proceed to describe of trees, the fruits, and the plants, The Sena. The tree of greatest esteem in this country is the Sena, unknown in all other
1704. other parts. They pretend that
the first of them which was brought
hither, came from the town of
fezul, which is seven or eight days
journey from hence. Some of these
trees are twenty or twenty-five palms
in circumference, and particularly in
the Cbian-baeg, and in many other
gardens where I have been. They
are commonly forty or fifty foot
high, and are as upright as a mast,
with few or no branches but at the
very top. The bark is of a bright
grey, and the leaves like those re-
presented in number 96. The planks
of it are proper for gates and doors,
shutters and the like, and the tree is
yellow marbled within, which is very
much esteemed in this country. The
largest and most robust of these trees
are worth one hundred Rix-dollars.
The Pitschlio tree is also of a good
size there, and has a fine head, laden
with fruit. The leaves of it are not
very unlike those of the laurel, ex-
cept that they are a little rounder
and larger; you see a branch of this
tree in number 97, distinguished by
the letter A. The bark of it is red
and yellow, when the tree is in full
vigour, otherwise it is bright, green
and yellow. Most of the leaves of it
are upside down, red and yellow.
They make a comfit of the shell of
this nut, which they esteem very
much, and pickle the kernels of it
before it is ripe, just as we do green
cucumbers. There are wild Pittac-
blo trees in the mountains, which
bear a very small nut. They produce a
gum, which the inhabitants receive in
a small cup of clay, from a wound
they make, either in the body of
the tree or the branches of it. This
gum has the scent and colour of
terebinth: They collect it in the
month of August, and put it up in
little leathern pouches for sale. It
is a wonderful remedy or unguent.

This country produces another
tree called Semaeg, not very unlike
an alder, except that the leaves of
it are shorter and more full of fibres,
beside that they are pointed in their
roundness. The fruit, you see dis-
stinguished by the letter B, and
which is sourer than verjuice, is 1704.
like a cat's tail, and full of small ex-
crescencies. They use it in saucers, and
when it is dry they reduce it to a
powder, and eat it with roasted
meat; it is medicinal also; they
use it together with rose water to
rinse the mouth and gums, and pre-
vent the scurvy.

Persia also produces a shrub cal-
kale-
led Kakinnets or Akekinbo, which
rises two foot above the ground,
and shoots out branches which
can hardly support themselves.
Each of them bears four, five,
fix or seven of their fruit, which is
like a bell closed in, and of a fine
red orange colour within and without;
you have a branch of it, laden with
its fruit, in letter C, this fruit when
dry is used to staunch blood. They
make it up into small cakes, which
they call Trafshelf-Allkeingi, which
they again convert into small pills,
having previously boil'd them in water
and terebinth, and they take them
in a glass of wine or water.

The Annasb is a tree of pretty Annasb.
tolerable growth, whose fruit is like
the olive before it is ripe, and be-
comes red afterward. The taste
of it is admirable, and this they use
also medicinally. There is a branch
of it distinguished by the letter D,
and they are all after the life.

The chief fruits of Persia are Fruit of
almonds, pistachio's and peaches
of these last there are four or five
forts, great and small, some of which
part from the stone, and some do
not. The former are called Sheft-
aloe, and those whose stone opens
with the fruit, Hoo-loe; they have
some blue like plumbs, others are like
apricots, and there are small ones
that are yellosith.

As for apricots they have eleven
or twelve sorts of them, each of
which have a particular name; but
in general they call them Zarda-loe.

There are, however, but few Cherries.
cherris in this country, some of
which are like thofe of Spain, and
the rest are like black morella's; the
former are called Gielas, and the lat-
the Aloe-baloe.

Vol. I.
1704. But they have many apples, and of several fruits, which, in general, they call Sien, and many sorts of pears, and among the rest, the Bérganote, winter pears, and summer pears, of which some are very large, and especially they have some of the former which keep all the year round.

Pomaceous. They have here also two or three sorts of quince-trees, called Do-bbé, the fruit of which is admirable and eaten in the hand. It is very large, and very good to preserve. They have also store of walnuts and small nuts.

Pomegranate-trees abound here also, and bear a delicious fruit; tho' some are of them that bear no fruit at all, and only a great red flower like a poppy. Some of them have their leaves streaked with white, and are most charmingly beautiful, and others of them are yellow. I had the curiosity to paint some of them as you will find them represented in number 98, and in number 99 you have a pretty tree, all the branches of which hang down to the ground; the leaves of it are fine, long and thin, and they call it Biede-mahalagie. They have but one sort of figs, and those none of the largest.

Grapes. But they have ten or twelve sorts of grapes, which in general they call Anger, tho' each sort has a name peculiar to itself. They have three or four sorts that are blue, some of them round, others long, and all very large. They have also two or three sorts that are white, and some of them very sweet, and without stones. They have another sort, whose bunches are a promiscuous mixture of large and small grapes, different from all I had ever seen elsewhere. They dry them every year, and making them a kind of comfit, they put them into earthen pots, and send them to Batavia and elsewhere. In this manner it is they do it; they pick and pull the grapes very nicely, and cover them with dry rose-leaves in a stone jug, which they then stop up so close, that no air can have admission, in this state they leave them for some days, after which they break the neck of the vessel and take out the rose-leaves, and separate all the grapes, which they put into another vessel, and being thoroughly dry, they send them into foreign parts. The rose-leaves are only intended to give a pleasant flavour to the grapes, but care must be taken that none of them remain with the grapes, for fear they should cause a rot. At the same time they send to the Indies almonds and pistachio's, from whence in exchange they receive sweetmeats and other dainties.

Plants and roots abound as much in Persia as the fruits. They reckon they have above twenty-five sorts of melons, which in general they call Garbe-fa, tho' each of them, most of which are excellent, has a name peculiar to itself. There are some of them that weigh twenty pound, and which they keep all the year round in cool and close places, and especially in the summer, to save them from the violent heats. Nor do they ever want snow for that purpose, and they there know how to condense it into ice to refresh their wine. These great melons are called Garbe-fa-belgicize. The first melons that appear are the most insignificant, but then they are the most wholesome; they are almost all white. The water-melons abound there no less, and they have four or five sorts of them, as well red as white, and which they call Hindoo. The small Citrus are there also in the same plenty, some of them striped with green and black, and very beautiful; others of them marbled with several colours, and not larger than a China orange. I have filled a picture with these fruits, intermixed with peaches, and another fruit called Obamama or woman's breast, of an admirable red. I have preserved the stone or seed of this, and
1704. and a bunch of the grapes I mentioned to consist of great and small upon the fame stalk; you have the representation of these fruits in number 100.

Parsley also produces all sorts of carrots, beet-roots, and parsnips, horse-radish, radishes, turnips, to-pinambers, mushrooms, colly-flowers of extraordinary size, some of which weigh thirteen or fourteen pound, favous, asparagus, artichokes, celery, leeks, onions, shallots, cressels, dragon-wort, parsley, chervil, favor, mint, coriander, Ananice, forrel, purflane, marjoram, fage, borage, cabbage-lettice, succory, and Roman-lettice, with a long leaf, and which they eat in the hand, which is sweet and very pleasant to the taste. Nor do they want for spinage and rue.

This country also produces very common tulips, and ugly carnations, the lily, the tuberofe, narcissus, several sorts of juncquils, the hyacinth, the marvel of Persia, the mallow, the sun-flower, the musk-flower, violets, and marigolds, most of which have been brought from Europe, for the flowers of their own are very indifferent. They have also the flowers of saffron, the finest sorts of which come from Maxanderan. Though roses both red and white are there very common, they make a prodigious quantity of rose-water, which they send to India, and elsewhere; and they use a great deal of it themselves, for they are great lovers of perfumes, and never fail to sprinkle their friends with rose-water whenever they entertain them, but it never spots their cloaths.

They have also two sorts of jessamine, the best of which is very much like the Italian, the smell excepted. The other is more common, and runs up very high upon trees, and has a particular love for the Sera; nothing can be more charming to the sight.

Abundance of fruit.

Beside all this, Persia is productive of every necessary of life, and particularly abounds with poultry and game. You there do not commonly giveabove five pence for a hen; four pence or five pence for a pullet, and ten or twelve pence for a partridge. Of these there are some not bigger than quails and pigeons. Wild ducks are there worth about seven-pence or eight-pence a piece; a good tame goose forty or fifty, a large turkey seven or eight, and the young ones in proportion. Their capons are excessively fat, and not very plentiful and indeed they are seldom purchased but to make presents of.

Besides all this, they have plenty of snipes and woodcocks; many sorts of wild ducks, teal, cranes, wood pigeons, turtles, larks, thrushes, and partridges with red heads, which can only be shot flying, or taken with the hawk.

However, every sort of deer is here scarce enough, but cattle, and especially beves, abound; you may have twelve pound of beef for the value of twenty pence, tho' the Persians eat but little of it, if you except the dregs of the people: It is almost all sold at jafsha, and among the Christians. They likewise do not give above fifteen or sixteen pence for twelve pounds of mutton; but they raile the price of it as winter comes on. The same it is with regard to goats flesh. There are many wolves and foxes in this country, but they are very small.

They also commonly give but a price of eight or ten pence for twelve pounds of bread, and twenty pence or four and twenty for the same quantity of rice, eight or nine pence for as much wheat, and seven or eight pence for as much barley when it is not winnowed. They give it to horses, because they have no oats in Persia; but they haveiore of Spanish wheat, which they dress before it is quite ripe, and sprinkling it over with salt water, cry it about the streets to sell.

The butter they use in their sauces, Batat, and in several of their difhes, is sold after the rate of five or six Florins for twelve pounds, and their fresh butter, which is admirable, for seven or eight Florins.

The oil they use for the same oil, purpose, is made of the seed of Kougat,
1704. Kousjar, and is not very unlike our olive oil, except that it has a stronger smell with it. You have twelve pound of it for fifteen pence. They have, however, another sort which is better, and extracted from the seed of Kousijit, which costs as much again.

The seed of Maisse, which, in the East Indies, they call Kajang, is also of great use in sauces. Besides all this, Persia produces small red and white beans, not unlike those of Turkey; peas, white and grey; small black beans for hovses, and green peas of the growth of Europe.

Wood is very dear in this country, and sold by weight; they give you but twelve pounds of it for four pence or five pence, and the same is with regard to coals. Whence it is they are obliged to make use of turf, made of camel's dung, cow dung, sheep's dung, horse dung, andafs dung. The chief Armenians of Julian do so as well as the rest, or else the fire would cost more than the victuals; whereas they give but thirty pence for two hundred and twenty or two thousand and thirty pound weight of this turf. They use it more particularly for heating of ovens, in which they bake most of their meats in this country, without trouble and at a small expence. The use they make of this dung contributes much to the cleanliness of the highways, whence they are careful to remove the sith as well for this purpose as to manure their lands. They even apply human dung this way.

I forgot to speak of the root of Ruggat, which the Indians call Soliman-doffyn, and which they find in the province of Stubwan, and in the neighbourhood about the city of Tauris. They trade greatly with it to the Indiei, whither, one year with another, they fend three hundred packs of it, each pack of about one hundred and fifty or one hundred and fixity pound weight. The Manusias, or twelve light pounds of it, is commonly worth above twelve Mannooyes, which make about two Rix-dollars or five Florins.

They every year also, from Tauris 1704, and Cabins, tend to the Indies seven or eight hundred Hampers of Auripigmentum or Orpiment, which the Persians call Zerang. These baskets, each of them, contain one hundred and fifty or one hundred and fixty pound weight, and a pound of it, according to its degree of goodness, is worth from three quarters of a crown to three half crowns. They use it much for painting in this country, and for several other purposes. I think they also fend it into Turkey.

Persia moreover produces a precious drug, unknown to many people even of the country itself: it is a kind of gum they call Mummy, which they find in the neighbourhood of the city of Laer, in certain ruins or grottoes. It is soft and black as pitch, but finell makes pleased, and drops from the rock. That which affords the best it is locked and sealed up, and none but the Governor of Laer, and some other Grandees are allowed to go in and collect for the King; and they do not get together above eight or ten ounces of it a year, so that it is a very great rarity. This gum is admirable for fractured bones, and they assure you that let the human body be bruised and broken ever so much, it restores it in twenty four hours time. To this purpose they melt it, to the quantity of a pea, with butter in a spoon, which they make the patient swallow down, and then apply the fame quantity of it, or a little more to the afflicted part, or in proportion as the case requires, and then they bind it about with linen, and use splints, for a broken leg. They attribute the discovery of this medicine to a hunter who had broke the leg of a stag, which nevertheless got from him. The story relates, that the hunter returning the next day to his sport, shot, as he thought, at another stag, but was much surprized to find it was the same, whose leg he had broken the day before, and especially upon observing the fracture was almost cured.
1704. cured. The rumour of this accident spreading round about, they attributed the suddenness of this cure to the virtue of this gum, the affair happening near the place where it drops. They made experiments of it upon other wounds, and it failed not of exhibiting the same effect; nor was there more desired to give it a great reputation.

In the country of Lorestan, they find another sort of it, which produces much the same effect, but it is three or four times as long in perfecting a cure. The difference between these two sorts, is known by putting some of each upon burning coals; the smoke of this last has the smell of pitch, whereas the smoke of the first is much more pleasant; but the best proof is by breaking the leg of a fowl, and then applying it as directed above; this is a proof that has been made several times. For the rest, as this mummy belongs wholly to the King, and as there is but little of it produced, it is very difficult to get any of it, and especially for money. Those, however, who have the charge of it, do sometimes send some of it privately as a present to the first ministers of state. That of Lorestan is not quite so scarce to be met with, I flatter my self I have some of each sort; if I have not I am very much mistaken.

CHAP. XLVI.

Description of Julfa. Dress of the Armenians. Customs observed by the Armenians at births, marriages and funerals. The education of their children and their manner of living. Of the Europeans that live there. Of foreign ministers.

The town or suburb of Julfa is divided into several parts, and particularly into the old and new colony. The old one, which they call Sheng-an, is inhabited by the principal merchants; and they lay their ancestors thither from several parts, and even from the frontiers of Turkey, in the reign of Abbas the great, and that this Prince afforded them certain lands for their support. The Gouries, the ancient followers of Zoroaster, settled there likewise with some strangers, we shall speak of in the sequel.

New Julfa is higher up, and subdivided into several districts, (1) that of Gaif-rabaet or of Koots, inhabited by stone-cutters, who work for buildings and tombs; (2) that of Tadjije, full of weavers and artificers in stuffs, among whom are some Frenchmen; (3) that of Teof

Vol. I.
into execution by the burgo-master
and chiefs of the districts.

The old Jufsa properly belongs to
the King's grand-mother, whom they
call Nawash-aï, a title they com-
monly confer upon persons of great
power and condition: But all the
other districts we have enumerated
are under the Nagase-bahii or chief
of the King's painters. They have ne-
evertheless their particular chiefs, and
they had formerly a burgo-master.

The first district of Jufsa, which
is the southward, consists of a large
street, inhabited by Guébres, that
is, by those who have embraced
Mohammedanism within three years;
their wives, by ancient custom, go
with the face bare. I never was
able to get a thorough under-
standing of what these people were
till after my return from the Indies,
and therefore I shall defer what I
have farther to say of them till that
time.

The principal buildings of Jufsa
are the churches, the chief of which is
that of Anna-bacot or of the bishop,
concerning which, we shall declare
ourselves when we are to speak of
the baptism of the cross. The second,
which has a fine dome, is that of
Surpa-brop or of St. James, full of
paintings, representing sacred stories,
like that of the bishop; it has some
vacant places on the right-hand,
and the women are there divided
from the men. The third, which
is the largest, is that of Surpon-
tomada, or of St. Thomas. It is long,
and, on each side, supported by three
square columns. This church has
no paintings, and all the walls of
it are white; the dome of it is very
low, and you go up to the altar by
three steps on each side. Beside
these churches, there are eleven or
twelve smaller, and less adorned.
There are also thirteen or fourteen
in the new Jufsa, but they are small,
and not at all remarkable.

The principal Armenians have
some tolerably fine houses in the
old Jufsa. The chief of them is
that of Hodjhe-minares, whose great
hall is all gilt, and painted with
flowers and other ornaments, and 1704:
has several looking glaffies. The
ceiling of it is vaulted, and divided
into four compartments, in the
middle of each of which is a golden
star, intermixed with some colours,
and the walls of it are cribbed with
marble to the height of two or three
foot. At the two ends of this hall
there are niches full of festoons and
foliages interwoven, of unspetable
beauty. Through the front-gate,
which leads to these houses, you
come into a court, in the middle
of which there is a fine round par-
terre, and a court in the same form
behind the house, with a building a-
part for the women, after the man-
ner of the country.

When I had examined into what
was curious and remarkable in this
house, the master of which ent-
tained me very splendidly, I went
to see that of the burgo-worker Ho-
gas or Lucás, which I found to be
as large as the former, but not so
gaudy. From this, I went to that of
Arjét-Aga, before which there was
a great garden; it is also very large
and full of fine apartments. That of
Hodjhe-Saffras has also a large garden,
and all the walls of the house are pain-
ted and full of figures as big as the
life. Among others there is a Tur-
kish man and a Turkish woman,
and several other figures dressed after
the Persian and Spanish manner, at
some distance the one from the oth-
er. Upon the top of this house
there is a fine terraces, whence
you have the most enchanting pro-
spect in the world, in which King
Abbas took a singular pleasure in his
time.

The house of Hodjhe-Agamaet is one
of the loveliest and best adorned; it has
a beautiful apartment next to the
street, with fine large windows, and
the terraces of it is charming. The
houses of Hodjhe-Ocarnis, of Hodjhe-
Murja, and of several others yield in
nothing to these. Some of them have
an elegant marble fountain with a wa-
terfall in the finest apartment, or at
the entrance without.

All these houses are extremely neat and well kept; the rooms of the houses.
them are covered with fine carpets, and full of cushions of gold and silver brocade. The front-gate of most of these houses is very small, partly to prevent the Persians from riding in on horseback, and partly to avoid any show of the magnificence within. The chief streets are adorned with fine fens, planted on each side.

The dress of the Armenians differs but little from that of the Persians, except that they are not so near, nor are their turbans so nicely folded: besides that, they are not allowed to wear them of the Persian mode any more than green flippers.

As for the better sort of the Armenian women, they, like the Persian women, wear a half band upon the fore-head, adorned with precious stones and pearls. Under this band they have a golden Chambara, adorned in the same manner, and two fingers broad, and down the cheeks they have a score of golden ducats, and other ornaments, enriched with pearl, which comes underneath the chin, and the lower part of their face, quite to the nose, is covered with a veil, fastened behind the head. Besides this, they wear another veil about the neck, the ends of which are embroidered with gold and silver, and this is also fastened behind the head, and these two veils are never taken off. They have a third embroidered, which covers their neck, and goes over the two others; this also is fastened upon the head and falls down to the bottom of their upper garment, which is commonly of gold brocade, and lined with fables. The garment they wear under this is of a flowered stuff, and they have a third which does not fall below the knee. Their skirt is of embroidered taffeta, or some other rich stuff, and a little shorter than their upper garment. Under this they wear drawers of fine striped satin, buskins or boots after the Persian mode, and flippers either yellow or red, for green they are no more allowed to wear than the men. The girdle is made of thin plates of gold or silver chased, and is four or five fingers broad, and under this they have a filken one with a buckle; for the rest some of them set them with precious stones. They have commonly two or three gold chains about the neck, by one of which hang small boxes of perfumes, and ducats by the rest. These chains they wear with the addition of a coral necklace, to every third head of which they hang either a single or a double ducat. They wear also golden bracelets, and have their fingers laden with rings. Instead of the furred gown, they, in summer, wear another garment, shorter and without sleeves, which does not fall down below the knee. You have this dress represented in number 101.

The maid's dress nearly after the manner of the married women, excepting with regard to the head, as likewise the veil which covers a part of the face, and the other which covers the neck and breast; so that they wear none but that which the women have about the neck. For the rest, they wear a band, or rather a diadem, upon the forehead, embroidered with gold and silver and enriched with pearls. In short, when the Armenian women appear abroad, they differ in nothing from the Persian, except that they are obliged to cover their faces, with their cloaths which they hold in the right hand, to prevent their being seen.

But it is now high time to proceed to the custom or ceremonies observed by these people at births, marriages, and funerals.

When they have a child born, among them, their first care is to give it a god-father, and at the end of some days, a woman carries this child to church that it may be baptized; she delivers it into the hands of the priest, who dips it three times, naked, into a bucket of water, which serves them for a font; the priest all the while pronouncing a certain form of words, as the custom is with us. He then anoints the child with holy oil, upon the head first, then upon the mouth, the breast,
1704. breast, the neck, the hands and feet; after which he wraps it up in its cloaths, and carries it up to the altar, where he crams the sacrament into its mouth. This done he puts it upon the arms of the god-father, who covers it with a tituit, he presents it; after all this they return, preceded by some priests, who have a crosf in one hand and a taper in the other, and singing the Gospel to the sound of some instrumens. The godfather, in this manner, follows them to the house of the child's parents, holding also two lighted tapers in his hands, and having delivered up the child to its mother, he diverts himself the rest of the day with the friends and relations. For the rest, they have here commonly the same godfather, for their children, and when a child happens to be born a little before Easter, or the festival of baptism the crosf, they are obliged to have it baptized upon that same day. It must here also be observed, that neither this godfather, nor any of his near relations, can marry with any of those of the child to the third or fourth degree of consanguinity. And even when it happens that a girl and a boy of different families have been represented by the same godfather, they may not marry together.

Marriage ceremonies. Their marriages have something odd enough in them; the parties do not go through a courtship as elsewhere: The parents on each side make the whole agreement among themselves, and draw up the marriage contract. Upon the wedding day the bridegroom sends for music, and invites some friends to his house, and they put a taper into the hand of thofe so invited. In the midst of this appear a group of young girls, who dance in the streets to the sound of drums and hautboys, and are followed by women laden with wearing apparel and jewels. These girls when they are got to the bridegroom's habitation, fasten a crosf of green fattin upon his breast, and the men and the women retire into separate apartments, where they are entertained with conterves, and choice liquors. Then they bring the cloaths of the bride and bridegroom in two baskets, with some trifles to be presented to the young people who assist at the wedding; and the priests perform certain ceremonies by way of blessing this apparel, which when done the intended couple put them on. The bridegroom being thus dressed, goes with some of his friends, and two or three of his relations, to the apartment of his spouse that is to be, where he is received and complimented by his father, or brother, or nearest of his relations, who gives him some exhortations, and wishes him all forts of joy and happiness. The young girls, formerly mentioned, then fasten another crosf of red fattin, upon the first, and the women bring him a handkerchief, which they give him to hold by one corner, and the bride by the other. The bride is now covered with a fine embroidered veil, thro' which, however, you may see her cloaths, and her face is covered with a red taffety, which hangs down to her feet; and thus the follows her husband accompanied by several women veiled, while he is preceded by all the men, and thus they go to church, with each a lighted taper in hand. As soon as they are got thither, the relations take the handkerchief from the bridegroom, and then go each to his place. As soon as mass is begun the confessors appear, and confess the young couple, who then go up to the altar, where the priest asks the man, if he will have the woman offered to him to be his wife, and if he will honour and cherish her, whatever may happen to her for the time to come, whether she be taken blind, or lose the use of her limbs, or whether she be afflicted by any other accident of the kind? The man answering in the affirmative, the priest asks the woman the same question, the answering in the same manner, the priest first joins their
1704. their hands, and then their heads, which a bridesman keeps together with a handkerchief, and then he covers them with a crost. In the mean time they read over the office for the occasion, and say the usual prayers; then the priest takes the crost from off them, and ad- ministers to them the sacrament of the altar, and every one returns to his place. When mass is over, they go out of the church; the priests walk before the new married couple, to the sound of drums, hautboys and the like, the couple continuing to have the handkerchief, already mentioned, about their necks, and being followed by all their friends. At the bridgegroom's door, they meet with a great bacon full of sherbet, with which they entertain the priests and all that are invited, whom they perfume with rose-water, which they take out of a silver pot. Then they conduct the men and the women to two opposite apartments, in expectation of dinner, which being ready, they set about it; the women still apart from the men. This dinner is placed upon a large carpet spread upon the ground, upon which they sit after the manner of the Orientals. They first serve upon conserves, with all sorts of liquors, and then the meats.

But we must not forget that when the bride and bridegroom have received the sacrament at their marriage, they keep them separated for three or four days; but when they havenot, they conduct them that same night to the bridal chamber, where, having perfumed them with rose-water, they leave them to themselves.

Some days after the wedding, they bring the bride all that had been promised for her dower, which commonly consists of apparel, of gold, silver and jewels, in proportion to the means and condition of her friends. Thereunto they also add sweetmeats and fruit, and the whole is brought in fine wooden pails, to the sound of several instruments, as has already been observed with regard to the Persians. This, however, is sometimes deferred till the birth of the first child, and then they add a cradle and every thing else necessary for the infant. The couple also, sometimes, go to church on horseback, and return in the same manner; they even marry them in private upon certain occasions, and in the night, in the presence of a small number of relations.

But of all that is practiced among the Armenians, nothing seemed more extraordinary to me, than their custom of marrying their children in their most tender years, so that there are but few that have not been married at the age of ten or twelve years. They betroth them even when they are not above a year old, and frequently while they are as yet in their mother's womb. The reason they give for this is, that when girls are unmarried, they are in danger of being taken away and locked up in the Seraglio, a misfortune they hope to avert by this way of marriage, the there are not wanting instances to prove that this rule is not without exception.

As I have already made mention of the ceremonies they observe at their funerals, in the account I formerly gave of my voyage upon the Wolsa, I have here only to add, that the women are present upon these occasions as well as the men, and that the priests and deacons sing hymns and other funeral chants by the way. Four persons carry the body upon a bier, and they have sometimes eight or more to relieve each other by turns, when they have far to go. These bearers are always of the common people. They put the body into the ground without any coffin, with the head raised a little up, and the priest throws three times earth upon it in the form of a crost.

When they return from the funeral, the company goes to the house of the deceased, and are there entertained both at dinner and supper. The same ceremony is continued for forty days together, with regard to two priests and two deacons, who every morning go to
the grave of the deceased, and read over it certain portions of the Gospel, and sing some verses of the Psalms of David: They are paid for this, and have commonly ten pence a time; so that funerals are very expensive among these people.

Tho' the Armenians are very superstitious in exterior things, they are almost quite careless of such as are more solid, and which they ought to have more at heart, and especially for what concerns the education of their children, who are oftentimes men before they can say the Lord's Prayer; nor is this to be wondered at, seeing they are married so very young, that they have frequently children before they themselves are well out of the state of childhood. So that they are so taken up with family affairs when they come to an age when they might be fit to learn something, that it is impossible they should make a proper use of it. In a word, there is no likelihood that a mother, who has never been taught any thing herself, should be able to instruct her children in any thing. And indeed the women are destitute both of wit and genius, and entirely void of all charms; this is an observation I had made, and particularly at funerals, where there are sometimes two or three thousand of them together, and who look like so many aged matrons, past all their bloom and beauty, however young they may be. This is so much the stranger as they have every day before their eyes the Persian women, who are well shaped, beautiful and agreeable, with a noble gait, and a charming air in every thing they do and every thing they have upon them, which appears even in the manner whereby they adjust the white veil that covers them. Nor are the Turks and the Greeks less taking in their air and all their motions; while, on the contrary, the Armenian women are quite disagreeable and dignify you. The linen with which they hide themselves contributes not a little to this, and makes their cheeks swell; nor to say that they are generally small of stature, and clumsy of make. When you meet them in Julfa, they always turn the back upon you, a piece of rudeness the Mohammedans are never guilty of, and they are to the full as unmannerly in company with their nearest relations, when they offer them a glass of wine, which, turning themselves to the wall, they never fail to tos off, let the size of the glass be what it will. From the care they take to hide themselves from the eyes of men, it might be imagined that they are invincibly chaste, and most rigidly veracious; but he that should conclude thus would be most egregiously mistaken; for there are a number of them who prostitute themselves for money, and who, disguising themselves as men, go on horseback with their mothers to Julfa, where they drive on a little trade, while the poor husband thinks them proof against all temptation, only because they never unveil themselves; but men were not thus to be deceived in ancient times; for Judah took Tamar to be a prostitute, because she was covered with a veil.

The men for their part, think of nothing but heaping up money, and how to make it turn to account when they have got it; their whole study is so bent upon this, that they are unmindful both of the other duties of life, and of what passes in the world. And yet they cry up Persia above all the other countries under the sun, and imagine it to be the source of all arts and sciences, tho' they are as little able to judge of the matter as a blind man is of colours; for tho' they continually travel in Europe, and carry on a great trade there, they never give themselves the trouble to examine into what is curious and remarkable there; nor, indeed, would they sit a step out of their way, or be at the least expense whatsoever, to see what is fine even in their own country. They know nothing but what they have heard from others, and I took notice that those who travelled with me,
1704. me, took no notice of what I inquired into with so much care. For this reason when I had a point of curiosity to satisfy, I always had recourse to strangers and the efficacy of my money, and had nothing to do with the Armenians but in the Bazar, where they trade; for all manner of things, out of the common course of their business, are above the reach of their understanding, which is altogether uncultivated. As soon as they have learned to read and to write, their masters, who live at Jufia, send them about, and when they go to, or come from Isaban, they commonly ride double upon an horse, a mule, or an as, which is to be seen in no other country.

When they trade with the Persians, upon their market days, in their little shops, in the city, where they sell cloth by the yard, they dare not drink wine, or any other strong liquor for fear they should be smelt; so that they groan under a more heavy slavery than even that of the Greeks under the Turks. And this slavery so presses them more and more every day by frequent additions of weight, that it is to be feared they may one day or other be stripped of all their privileges, if they do not embrace the errors of Mohammedism. And this misfortune in their situation must, in part, be imputed to the disputes which rage among them, not only between several of the Bishops and the two Patriarchs, but even between the two Patriarchs themselves, who cannot agree upon points of discipline and other particulars. Nor do the Persians neglect to make the most of these their differences, or to fish in these troubled waters, by summoning them to appear before them, and overwhelming them with impositions, two instances of which happened while I was in Persia; whereas if discord did not inflame and divide them against each other, they might do great things, since they are in no want of money, which commands all things in this country; but it is impossible to express the natural bent they have to disagree with each other; a judgment, however, may be formed of it by an example I was a witness to. Two brothers had had a dispute together upon some transaction in trade, which is in a manner the soul of an Armenian; they failed not to go to law together, and the eldest, who was in possession of what was disputed, implacable and able to make large presents to the judges, failed not to gain them over to him; and being blind, he, one day, said he was heartily glad he had lost his sight, that he might not have the vexation of seeing his brother, and that he should not be forty to be taken dead as well as blind, that he might never hear of him again; a monstrous effect of hatred!

His brother who had married in France, where he had left his wife, and whence he had brought two little girls he had by her, came every day to our director, to implore his protection against the injustice of his brother, who wanted to have him seized by the Mohammedan judges, as he had served him once before, and from whose clutches he could not be free but by a sound bastinadoing.

Many of the chief of them have already renounced their Saviour, and abjured the Christian Faith, for the sake of Mohammedism, and particularly with a view to enrich themselves, and to amass great fortunes.

One of these renegades, who had been upon the pilgrimage to Mecca, to visit the tomb of Mohammed, returned from thence while I was at Isaban; most of the Armenians went out to meet and pay him a thousand compliments; whereas not a soul goes out to welcome the Christian pilgrims that come from Jerusalem, no body carresse them.

The authority of the Mohammedan authority is so great in this country, that the two Portuguese Monks were obliged to embrace Mohammedism, the one in the year 1691, and the other in the year 1696.

The first, whose name was Emanuel, assumed that of Hujfien Celiache, or the slave of Hujfien, and the other, whose name was Anthony, was called Ali-Celiache, or the slave of Ali.
The convent of these Portuguese fathers is in the city, and is a fine and a large building, well stored with apartments; but there is but one of them there now, namely father Antonio Delfino, whom we had occasion to mention formerly.

There are also two French capuchins, whose convent is likewise in the city.

The Carmelites also have a fine convent there, and a large garden; but there is now only one of them, who is, by nation, a Pole. There are however two others, either French or Dutch, who came from Italy, and live in a little house they have in Jaffa; where four Jesuits have built them a pretty chapel after the Italian manner, by the side where they have a very fine house with a beautiful well-kept garden. Beside these there are three Dominicans, who have lately built them a new chapel.

There are several other Europeans at Jaffa, most of them French, and three of Geneva, one of whom is a goldsmith, and the others are watchmakers; their names are Storde, de Finot and Batar, and two physicians, the one a Frenchman called Hermet, and a Greek born at Smyrna. They are all of them, except Finot, married to Armenians of low birth, so that they have much ado to live; for there is no busiess here for strangers, as has already been observed. Moreover, the Persians have able physicians and tolerable mathematicians among themselves, but they know nothing of surgery, and make any account of foreign surgeons. Nor indeed have they any great regard for those in the service of the King, whose allowances are paid them in bills upon other cities, which they are obliged sometimes to discount at a third, and sometimes at an half los.

For the rest, it is impossible to expect an advantageous match with any woman here; seeing there is hardly one example of an European married into a rich or a considerable family. Nor are they sooner married than they conform to the customs and manners of their wives, whom they shew to none of their countrymen; but to say the truth of the matter, this change is chiefly seen among the French; for the English and Dutch adhere to the practices of their fathers. A signal example I saw of this in Mr. Kaffstein our director, whose wife, a Lady of birth and merit, was esteemed by everybody, and regretted by all. She appeared always, with her daughter of ten years old, at her husband's table, which was open to all the Europeans; but whenever he went to visit those in Jaffa, their wives were not to be seen. And upon the whole they retain nothing of their country but the language.

It is not so with the strangers who reside at Constantinople, Smyrna, and other places under the dominion of the Turk, where the Greek women they marry, make no difficulty to submit to the customs and manners of their husbands, or to conform to their religion, in which they train up their children; whereas those of the Armenian women we have been speaking of, follow the religion of their mothers.

I am not ignorant that I might be here confronted with the example of della Valle, a Roman Gentleman, who married at Bagdat; but beise that love is apt to triumph over prudence, one single example can never be exhibited as a rule. For the rest, I hope I may be here allowed to stop my hand, with regard to this adventure and this marriage, which was transeated in the same convent where I lodged in my return from the Indies, that I may not be under a necessity of hurting the reputation of that illustrious Roman, who has left us such fine remains behind him.

Nor have the Armenians at least been very ready to embrace the Gees-Mohammedim; the Georgians have trod in the same path, the great among them as well as the small, as may be seen by daily examples;
soldiers, against whom they would have been put to it to defend themselves. Besides all this, they supported the dignity of his character by a great magnificence, and by a constancy proof against all obstacles, articles absolutely necessary in so haughty and disdainful a nation.

And indeed they paid such regard to him that they never failed to make room for him wherever he appeared; and even the King and the court esteemed him as much as the Europeans, and they still honour his memory.

CHAP. XLVIII.


The Persians at this time solemnized the death of Babajoude-Je-adier, that is, of the incontestable father of the divine Service, a title they confer upon one of their saints, who was put to death by Omar. A little after this, there was another Korog in the neighbourhood of the royal palace, with orders for all who lived within the limits of it to go out of their houses, and the Caravanserai's. The same thing happened again two days afterward, the King having a mind to recreate himself with his concubines without the walls of the palace. The music of this was heard in the evening and played all night, and the next day to the setting of the sun, because the festival of Mohammed was to be celebrated upon the seventeenth.

Upon the twenty-fifth, Mr. Owen, the English company's Agent, died, in the fortieth year of his age. He was a man of worth and honour, and very much esteemed by everybody. The next day, we paid him the last honours, and he was carried to the place where they bury all the Christians, in the manner following.

Our director's deputy (the director himself was ill of the gout) went at break of day to the house of the deceased, with all our directors' family, and fourteen horses, among which there were two which we led, covered with black cloth, and preceded by a trumpet and thirteen runners. First, before the body appeared the deceased's master of the horse, with the interpreter and some others, followed by three led horses covered with black cloth, and with plumes of white feathers upon their heads; then fourteen persons on horseback, attended by ten or twelve servants on foot, and a trumpet before the led horses, after which appeared those of our director, and then the body, covered with white silk, and over that with a black velvet pall. It was upon a bier, and carried by four persons, who were, from time to time, relieved, because of the length of the way.

The deceased's deputy followed next after the body, attended by ours, and all the Dutch, of the number of which I was; and likewise by father Antonio D'Alfrigo, the Resident for the Crown of Portugal, and the English Armenian merchants of Jafja. In this order we proceeded through the Cbiaer-borg, each with a scarf of white silk over the shoulder, knot-
1704. is the twenty sixth, a day upon which the Armenians celebrate the feast of Starsegnaetz, or of the cross, in commemoration of the cross of Christ, discovered upon mount Caleury by Saint Helen, the mother of Constantine the Emperor.

In order to this, their wives go two or three hours before day to the burying ground, where they inter the Christianns, and thither they carry wood, coal, tapers, and incense. When they are got to this place they kindle fires by the tombs of their relations or friends, and upon those tombs they place burning ta-

3 pers; and continually throw incense into the fire, making great lamentations, and addressing themselves to the dead that rest there, with more or less vehemence, according as they are more or less affected with sorrow. They even throw themselves upon these tombs, which they embrace, and bathe them with their tears; and persons of the better sort light up even five or six large tapers, and cry and bellow enough to frighten one. As I was desirous to be present at this solemnity, I went to the burying-ground two hours before it was day, with the son of our interpreter, with whom I lodged. I was surprised at the sight of these tombs, and of many objects that offered themselves to my sight; and when I was at some distance, the whole appeared to me like the ruins of a town that had been burnt, and where those who had escaped the flames, were come in the dark night with lights to look for their friends and relations, and the fragments of their wealth, at the same time weeping and bewailing their hard fate. Tho' the husbands stay at home while their wives are performing this service abroad, there are some men however to be seen, and priests who pray for those who pay them for it; some give them five pence, others ten, and the better sort twenty; and being drest in black they make an odd kind of a figure among such numbers of women in white. The number of women who thus resort

Strange marriage.

Some days after this, I saw all the bazaars adorned with little bands of paper of all sorts of colours, tinsel, many small figures, and other little trifles. In the evening they illuminated all the shops with little lamps, and the burghers in several places appeared under arms. This was upon account of the marriage of a young Princeps, the King's daughter, who was but three years old, with the grandon of his Majesty's aunt, who was but five years old, and these rejoicings were upon the conducting this young Princeps to the palace of this Lady, where she was to be brought up. This is perhaps the only example of a marriage of the kind, between such young children, among the Persians, tho' the same be common enough among the Armenians. This Princeps his Majesty's aunt, and sister to the King his father, is called Zynab-Beggun, and had been married to the son of Sultan Gallifio, a confidant of Abbas the second's.
1704. to these tombs commonly amounts to three thousand, and the number of little fires they light up, and the incense they continually feed them with, raises a smoke which spreads quite to Ippabon. Tho' this solemnity was in the night, I nevertheless traced out a representation of it in the best manner I could, taking my stand by the tomb of our director's wife, with my face turned to the city; you have it in number 102. It lasted till about two in the morning. As I returned, I found the ways crowded with people, and met with several women who were going back again to the tombs. When the sun was up, the common people returned to the same place, but it was only to smoke and divert themselves.

Upon the last day of the month I went in the evening to our director's, in order to go that night with his deputy to the mountain of Kosofa, where there are the ruins of an ancient fortress. We set out at four in the morning, and at seven reached a part of this same mountain, where we were obliged to alight, because our horses could carry us no farther. My companion, who was no very good walker, left me there, and went to wait for me at the Christian burying ground. At eight of the clock I went up the mountain, attended by a huntsman and a servant, provided with fire-arms, and at ten we came to an old gateway, by the side of which were the ruins of a wall, which formerly extended to the northward quite to the foot of the mountain in the place where it is steepest; this gate was much more worn away on the left hand than the right, you have it represented in number 103. A quarter of a league from hence we met with the remains of another building, destroyed to the very foundations, tho' they pretend it to have been a stable. From thence are discovered several fragments of an old wall, which extended far to the southward upon the top of the hill; from east to west, and to the northward toward the city, 1704. which is not far off. It might even have passed for a fortress without the assistance of art, being very steep from top to bottom, and indeed it never had any wall on that side. About eleven of the clock we with great difficulty got to the top of the mountain, where you have the ruins of a building, which has been twenty eight places in length, tho' but little or nothing of it be now left. The wall of it was full four foot thick, and is still pretty lofty in some places, where within are the remains of arcades. The top of this mountain also is but twenty eight places broad from north to south, and sixty four in length from east to west, and goes sloping away to the eastward. For the rest, it extends in length to the southward, from whence you may still see the ancient walls of the fortress which was there formerly, as they appear to the northward, in number 104. I took a draught of all this with all the care I could, because they will have it that Darius was in this fortress when Alexander attacked his army the second time in the plain. I went down thither about noon, and there to the southward drew the outward ruins that remain of this building, where are still to be seen two half rounds in the form of towers. Upon the rock also you see the place where this fortress was begun, as may visibly be seen in number 105. The huntsman, who was my guide, would have gone down on the north side, because it was the shortest way, and did all he could to persuade me to follow him; but the rock seemed to me to be so much upon the precipice, that I had not the courage to venture my self, for fear of breaking my bones. However I could not prevent the other servant from following him, which he had soon cause to repent him of; for I had scarce lost sight of them, when I heard the last call out to me to take care how I came down after them. He had stopped, not being able to follow
follow his companion, and could now neither get up nor down. I encouraged him to endeavour to get up again by laying fast hold on the rock; for he had now no other chance, and he had the good luck to succeed, while the other went down like a cat. For my part I was obliged to take a round-about sweep of two leagues to the eastward, between the mountains, so that it was past three of the clock when I reached the Christian burying-ground, where my friend waited for us with our horses. After I had rested and refreshed my self a little, we returned back to the city, with design, the next day, to visit the rest of the antiquities near us, being determined to go from hence toward the latter end of this month.

We went early in the morning to the mountain of Togte-Ruflan, a league and a half from the city, and upon the top of it we met with the ruins of a certain building, founded by a warrior, of whom they relate wonders. Beneath this mountain there is a grot, in which there are two or three springs, whose water continually drops from the top of the rock. Every year, in the beginning of the month of April, a great number of the Indians, called Banians, repair hither to celebrate a festival, in honour of a certain hermit, who for a long time took up his abode here; and indeed here is commonly one of their dervises or saints. This grot is full of slips of stuffs of all colours, brought hither by persons afflicted by illnesses, who come hither for relief, after the manner of the orientals, as we have already observed. This grot is represented in number 108.
1704. Half a league from hence, on the
side toward the city, is a mountain
which affords the very hard blue
stones, with which they build their
tombs. We saw several of them
thrown from the top of this moun-
tain into the plain without break-
ing; but the stones of larger size
they roll down the sides which are
not so steep.

From hence you have a fine pro-
spect to the westward, between the
mountains and the plain, where you
have a sight of beautiful villages and
a great number of gardens. I have
here exhibited the representation
of it, with the mountain, upon the
top of which is the house of Rustan.
Having thus satisfied my curiosity
I returned back to the city.

CHAP. XLIX.

Famous Plantations, or fine walks belonging to the King.
The India Company's House. A fine Caravansera. Indians
or Banians. The Author prepares for his Departure to
Persopolis.

Some days after, I went ordering, three leagues to the west-
ward of Ispahan. We went by the
fine plantation of the present King's
gardens of the suburbs, and left
Vol. I.

R r

Julfa
1704. Juske on the left hand. Having crossed the plain, we, at five of the clock, arrived at the entrance into these fine walks. The trees had hardly budded at this entrance, because they had not been able to conduct water enough to them; but we found them farther advanced as we went on; and at a small league from the entrance, we came to a very low moat on the right-hand side of the way, and a bath near it. They are to have four gates to this fine plantation, which divides itself in the middle into four walks, and forms a round, open on all sides, with a most charming perspective. The mountains are two leagues to the southward of it, and a league to the northward, where they have already begun the wall which is to inclose this pleasant place. It was about seven of the clock when we got to the o-
In 1704, the end of it; for this plantation is two leagues in length, and proportionable in breadth, and the walks of it are bordered with senna's, between which they have planted willows and other trees, which are to be plucked up as the senna's spread. On all sides you have also rose bushes, which produce a most charming effect in the season. All the lands, at the distance of half a league round, belong to his Majesty, and the rest to the public, at least what is there planted and grown; for the King is proprietor, and they pay him so much a year. The old walk, planted in the reign of King Abbas, is at the end of this new plantation; and you enter it by a large gate, where this walk has but half the breadth it is of at the other end; and it extends a good half league in length. It is also planted with senna's, at the distance of eight paces from each other, whose branches meet at top, and whose roots are watered by a small gutter or canal. Upon the sides of this walk are fine large gardens walled in, and at the end a royal house, which makes no great figure. About eight of the clock we went into the garden of a public house, where we feasted ourselves, and there my friend heard that Mr. Oets, who was to succed him in quality of our director's deputy, was arrived from the Indies at Isphah. From hence we went to the King's house, which is not worth seeing, and from thence to the old plantation, called Chisoo-baag Naabd-shof-Abas; and having passed thro' the village of that name, we met with another walk, almost all planted with willows, and which is nearly a league, and an half in length, and extends to the westward. There is another again on the left-hand, whence you see the mountains about a league off, to the right and left, and on the west a plain which reaches beyond the fight. The plate above represents this old plantation. About three leagues from hence there is a hill which the King has surrounded with a wall that incloses a great number of deer, wild affes, rams, and other creatures peculiar to the mountains in these parts. The gardens here are full of fruit trees, and vines whole grapes, as well black as white, are sent to Isphah to be pressed into wine, which they were very busy about when I was there. To the right and left of the old plantation, are five great gardens, which annually bring in to the King the sum of twenty-five Tomans, and two smaller, in proportion. From hence, at one in the afternoon, we went toward the mountains to the southward in order to see some villages; but we were obliged to go two leagues about, to pass over the bridge of Poelie-vergen, where the country was covered with rice, ready to be cut; and here we saw great plains full of water-melons. The King has here another house, in the village of Kojshol, upon the river of Isphah, which in this place is very narrow. There is nothing remarkable in this house tho' the King is often there. We also saw a lake full of all sorts of ducks and other game, of most exquisite beauty, near the village of Karlik. None are permitted either to shoot, or frighten them away. From thence we returned to the city, where we arrived about eight at night.

Let us say a word of our company's house, the residence of our director, and the other officers belonging to the company. It is surrounded with a high wall of earth, the gate of which is large and lofty, and from thence you proceed between two walls, to the stables, but the horses are often tied to racks without. You leave the stables and garden on the left hand, to go to the house itself, in the midst of the court of which is a canal which runs on the side of the place, where they receive strangers; behind which is a fine apartment, spread with carpets and full of cushions to sit and rest upon, after the manner of the country. On one side are the apart-
ments and office of the director's deputy, and other of the company's servants. From thence you go to the part belonging to the director himself, passing through a small passage to it, and it consists of three or four apartments, without reckoning the hall, where they dine, which looks upon this part; this house is represented in number 107. It has a very agreeable garden, in the midst of which is a Tulist of wood, and a fine fountain with jets of water which, from thence, flows into a canal, and serves to water the garden, by the means of a machine, which conveys it to every part. Here also are great numbers of fens and fruit trees, flowers and plants, as appears by number 108. And I often amused myself in this place with catching of butterflies, flies, and other insects, I had a mind to preserve. The bees here are of an extraordinary size, and sting very violently.

In the canal of this garden I took notice of small fish, whose hinder part resembles that of a frog. There are of the fame in Turkey, in a lake about a league from Smyrna; which lake is half a league in breadth, and two leagues in circumference; it is upon an eminence, and its water is salt-petrous and foul. It is nevertheless full of fish, and especially of this sort, which they sometimes catch with a line, but very seldom. I did my utmost to take some of them, but to no purpose. They are said to be larger than those I saw in Persia.

It now remains that I speak of the Caravaners or public-houses at Ipaban, and I shall begin with the description and representation of that of Feddes, which belongs to the Queen-mother of the King, near the Meidan or great square, where I lodged all the time I was at Ipaban. The gate which opens into this square, is a large vaulted portal, under which are small shops kept by Armenians, and other strangers who sell cloth by retail. There is one of the same structure on the other side where they sell glass. In the middle of the court of this building is a wooden barrack full of such sort of shops, and a little beyond it throughs for horses to drink at. This caravansera is surrounded with warehouses full of goods, which belong to the Armenians and other merchants, who come hither every day from Jaffa to negotiate their trade. Above these warehouses there is a large gallery full of chambers, with a great hair café to go up to them.

Among the foreign merchants who take up their abode here, there is a good number of Indians of several sorts, whom they there call Banians. The chief of them are possessed of great wealth, and yet work like slaves to heap up immense and useless riches, without any regard to honour or decency, infomuch that the most wealthy of them shall not think much to run up and down the street but to earn a poor penny. There are some of them, and the most considerable too, who are brokers, and in that quality serve the English and Dutch East-India companies, whose favour and good graces they by all means endeavour to obtain, that they may enjoy their protection and get by them. Upon the whole, they are very much trusted, and it is no uncommon thing for them to have the cash of these two companies in their hands. Nor is there a less confidence reposed in the Armenians, who have also always a kind of bank in their possession, because money is there secure, and you may draw it out as you please, and in what specie you think proper. The whole trade of Gamren in like manner passes through their hands by bills of exchange. When I was at Samafti, the Banians there asked me, by the means of some Armenians, if I had no letters for our director at Ipaban, and if I did not want money, offering, in that case, to lend me what I would. I was surprised at this great civility to a stranger whom they knew nothing of, and who was not even recommended.
mended to them; but they told me this was done with a view to oblige the officers of the India company, and to intimate themselves into their good graces.

As several authors have before me treated of the belief of this people, and of the worship they pay to idols, I shall only add, that they abstain from taking away the life of any thing whatsoever, not excepting lice and fleas, and that they think they do a meritorious action when they prevent their being destroyed. I have even observed that they went away from me with an air of chagrin, when they saw me busy in catching of certain insects in a garden, well knowing what I intended to do with them.

Nor do the Turks, the Persians, or even the Armenians care to kill a louse or a flea, they only throw them upon the ground, as I have frequently observed. There are also several Armenians who abstain from the flesh of certain animals, and particularly will not taste of an hare, because they reckon it unclean; but they are not all so superstitious.

As the dress of the Benians has something remarkable in it, I have drawn the habit of the chief of our Indian brokers, who was so obliging as to dress himself after the manner of his country for that purpose; you see him represented in number 109. They have no regard to the colour of their dress, but their turban is commonly white, to which they fasten little red bands or fillets, which fall upon the forehead, and come down to the nose; they are commonly
1704. commonly of sandal wood, and serve them as an ornament of a kind with the patches worn by our Ladies. Most of them are of a fallow complexion, their stature is fine. At their leisure hours they divert themselves and entertain each other with fruits, sweet-meats, and other dainties, and upon these occasions, they often invite the Christians of their acquaintance to be of the company, and send also for dancing girls and jugglers to amuse their guests.

Upon the eighteenth of this month, there came some couriers from Gaan-
ron, who informed us there were as yet no ships arrived from Batavia.
This advice prevented our director from setting out for that place as he had designed, but five or six days afterward he sent his deputy, Mr. Bakker, thither. I began also to prepare for my departure; and having received and paid some visits among the Baqels, I went to take leave of all my friends in the city and at Jufje, not forgetting Mr. Sabid, our interpreter, to whom I was indebted for a thousand obligations. He had done me considerable services, and had permitted me to draw all the curiosities in his fine gardens, by furnishing me with all the lights necessary to attain that end. And as he was a perfect master of the Persian tongue, he took the trouble of instructing me in all the nicety of his orthography, with regard to which most of our travellers are guilty of very extraordinary mistakes. Hence it is that I write the word King in Perjjan, Sjar, and not Schach, Scib, or Siab; Zje-raz, instead Schieras; Mey-don instead of Medaun, which is a Turkof word; Mu-zjzit, or Ma-zjzit in speaking of their mohchs, and so with regard to other words, wherein, as to orthography, I differ from other travellers; in which I have followed the instructions of Mr. Sabid, and in which he was perfectly well skilled, tho' an Armenian by Nation. He also spoke French and Dutch perfectly well; for his father had lived a long time in France, and he himself had been brought up in the service of our company. He had a perfect knowledge of the customs and manners of the country, and as he was pretty well advanced in years, he was also well versed in the affairs and intrigues of the court. These fine accomplishments had gained him the friendship and esteem of every body; nor did he fail to bestow a good education on his son, who, as well as himself, was interpreter to our company, and in like manner understood French and Dutch, tho' he was but twenty three years of age.

As I had formed a resolution to set out with Mr. Bakkor, of Flushing, the first factor of Gaanron, in order to go to Perjjeboth, where I designed to make some stay, to examine with care into those famous antiquities, and to take a draught of them, I went upon the twenty-fourth, to Mr. Kaf-
telen, our director, who was so good as to lend me an horse for my journey, and a courier to attend me. He was also so kind as to furnish me with all the provisions I might stand in need of, and loaded me with favours, as he had during all the time I was at Jopbnan, where he had always honoured me with a seat at his table from my first arrival. He even had often pressed me to come and lodge with him, but I always excused myself, that I might be the more at liberty, and do several things I employed myself in morning and night. Befide this, he had always been so obliging as to provide me with an horse and an interpreter to attend me wherelover I went. Nor am I less indebted to him for a great insight into the Perjjan affi-
s; for he had lived in Perjjan one and twenty years, during which he had made himself a perfect master of the affairs and language of the country, and intrigues of the court; nor shall I, as long as I live, fail to make the most profound acknowledgments for his many favours.

The End of the First Volume.